STANDARD DUTCH GRAMMAR

HUBERTUS EFFEERS
THE

STANDARD DUTCH GRAMMAR
THE STANDARD DUTCH GRAMMAR
FOR SOUTH AFRICA

A GRAMMAR FOR PRIVATE STUDENTS, CIVIL SERVANTS,
BUSINESS MEN, AND FOR USE IN COLLEGES
AND HIGH SCHOOLS.

[Superseding the Practical and Commercial Dutch Grammars]

BY

HUBERTUS ELFFERS

AUTHOR OF
THE "ELEMENTARY GRAMMAR OF THE DUTCH LANGUAGE"
"LEESBOEK VOOR ZUID-AFRIKA", ETC., ETC.
SWORN TRANSLATOR TO THE SUPREME COURT OF CAPE
COLONY FOR THE DUTCH, ENGLISH, FRENCH, AND
GERMAN LANGUAGES.

J. C. JUTA & CO.

CAPE TOWN. JOHANNESBURG. PORT ELIZABETH.
EAST LONDON. GRAHAMSTOWN. STELLENBOSCH.

1910
PREFACE
To the first New-Spelling edition.

This book was written for South Africa more than twenty years ago, and published under the name of "The Practical Dutch Grammar". When, some ten years later, I overhauled the volume, and brought it up to date, the new issue was styled "The Commercial Dutch Grammar". The necessity has now arisen for introducing into the work the simplified spelling, and I have decided that once more the name of the book shall be changed. Trusting that it may be found worthy of the leading position it has occupied for so long a period, I have called it "The Standard Dutch Grammar for South Africa". As such it is issued as a first edition, which in reality is the twelfth.

The book has been thoroughly modernised. While the student will note the same completeness which has marked the work from the beginning, the large number of business men who patronise my book will find much in it that is attractive. I refer here especially to the Speak-and-Act Exercises, which cover the same ground as those introduced into my Elementary Dutch Grammar, but advance rather more rapidly. The effect of these exercises has been found to be truly marvellous; and I entertain the hope that they will be of very great advantage to future students of this volume.

The Chapter on Business Terms and Correspondence has been omitted, it having been transferred to my "South African Letterwriter".

The Standard Dutch Grammar represents all that is accepted as official in the way of simplified Dutch, and bears the stamp of University and Education Office sanction and approval. The Kollewijn spelling has been adhered to throughout.

HUBERTUS ELFFERS.

"Rustica"
Wynberg, near Cape Town,
1st May, 1907.
INDEX.

A.

A, not translated with honderd or duizend (177), Note 6.

Aan, uses of (308).

Accent, where to place (352-354).

Adjectives (152) et seq.

- "ending of when placed before noun (124), 4.
- "plural endings (125), 5.
- "used predicatively, not declined (152), II. and Obs.
- "agreement with noun (153), III.
- "when form not changed (153), Obs. 1, 2; (154), V, 1-6.
- "difference of meaning between inflected and uninflected, after een, etc. (153), IV.
- "Degrees of Comparison (155-157).
- "which are not compared (157), Obs. 6.

Adverbs (287), et seq.

- "of number, derivation of (175), XIV.
- "formation of (292), Obs. 1, (203), Note 2.
- "comparison of (292), Obs. 2, 3.
- "exercises on (297, 298).

Af and neer, renderings of (295, 296).

Af and toe, use of (295).

Alphabet, vowels in use with pronunciation (15) 2, 3.
- "consonants in use, with pronunciation (16, 17), 4-8.
- "diphthongs, with pronunciation (17), 9.

Analysis, terms used (370, 371).
- "additional rules (371) 1, 2.

Anderhalf, rendering of (175), XV.

Any, idiomatic renderings of (172), 1-5.

Article, The, (47), et seq.
- "de- and het-words (48).
- "obsolete declension of (48, 49).
- "rules for correct use, repetition and omission of (49, 50),
  IV, 1-5.
- "where used in Dutch and not in English (50, 51), V, 1-4.
- "rejection in both languages (51, 52).

Auxiliaries, (215).

Averechts, meaning of (295).

B.

Beide, declined forms of (171).

Bij, uses of (309).
INDEX

C.

Comparison of Adjectives (155-157).

use of meer and meest (156), Obs. 3, 4.

irregular (157), Obs. 7.

exercises on (157-161).

Comparison of sentences in English, old Book Dutch, and Simplified Dutch (138).

Composition Exercise, “Planting a tree.” (26).

Conjugation of the Verbs hebben and zijn (107, 108).

of Weak Verb leren and Strong Verb stelen (139-142).

of Weak Verb dansen and Strong Verb lezen (162-166).

Weak and Strong (212, 213), III.

complete form of (213-215).

of hebben (216, 217).

“zijn (218, 219).

“zullen (219).

“worden (220, 221).

“Auxiliary Verbs of Mood (227-229).

Conjunctions (321), et seq.

Construction (358), et seq.

Principal sentence—position of predicate, object, adverbial extension, etc. (358-361), II-XI.

Sub-ordinate sentence—position of predicate (361), XIII.

when auxiliaries are joined to principal verb (362, 363), XIV, XV.

Inversion in Principal sentence (363, 365).

Sub-ordinate (365, 366).

Conservation, Dutch-English, general (23).

about trees (46).

“Time” (57, 58).

“Meals” (83, 84).

“Forms of Greeting and Address” (118, 119).

“The weather” (150, 151); “To go shopping” (151).

“Family Relations” (181, 182).

“Travelling by land and rail” (209, 210).

“Travelling by Sea” (285, 286).

“About various Artizans” (303, 304).

“Trades and Occupations” (319, 320).

“Teaching and School” (332, 333).

D.

Dan, use of after comparatives (157), Obs. 8.

Declension (120), et seq.

Nominative case (121), II.

Genitive case (121), III.

Dative case (122), IV.

Accusative case (122, 123), V.

Observations on use of cases (123, 124), VI, 1, 2.
INDEX

Declension of Demonstrative Pronouns deze and die and Possessive Pronoun onze (124), 3.
  " Obsolete (125), et seq.
  " of Adjectives when not preceded by defining word (129, 130).
  " of Adjectives placed after Noun (130)
  " Strong and Weak (130-132).
  " of Compound Pronouns (132).
  " exercises on (135-137).

Degeve and dezelfde, declension of (194), 2.

Dezelve, use of (193), Obs. 1.

Diminutives, formation of (66, 67), XIV; (339, 340).

Door, uses of (308, 309).

E.

Een, when declined (170).

Er, use of (195) Note.

Etymology (336), et seq.
  Formation of Nouns (337-341).
  " Adjectives (342, 343).
  " Verbs (343-346).
  " Adverbs (347).
  " Compound Words (349, 350).
  List of words explained according to derivation (350-352), XII.
  " exercises on (354, 355).

G.

Gender of Substantives (85) et seq.
  Real Gender Distinctions (85), II.
  Natural Gender, Feminine suffixes (86, 87), III.
  Common Gender (87, 88), IV.
  Rules distinguishing de-words (88-91), V, 1-24.
  Rules distinguishing het-words (91-94), 1-14.
  Gender of Compound Nouns (94), VI.
  Words belonging to both classes (de and het), with difference of meaning (94), VII.
  List of het-words not included in Rules (95-101).
  " exercises on (105, 106), (115-118).

Gerund, translation of (232). XIV, 1, 2.

Goed and wel, use of (295).

H.

Halve and wegen, use of (305), II, Obs.

Heen, henen use of (294).
INDEX

I.
If, as if, renderings of (166), (206, 207).
Immer, nimmer, use of (294).
Interjections (334, 335).

J.
Jij or je, jullie, use of (72), (185), Obs. 1 (a-c).

K.
Kwantsuis, meaning of (295).

M.
May, might, might have, rendering of (204).
Men, translations of (191).
Met, use of, as Adverb (295).
Moeten, translations of (282).
Mood, (229) et seq.
" Indicative (229), XII a.
" Subjunctive (229), XII b.
" Imperative (230), XII c.
" Translation of Infinitive (230, 231), XIII
Multiplicativals, how formed, meaning of voudig and vuldig
(174), XII.

N.
Na, nadat, daarna, rendering of (299).
Naar, uses of (310, 311).
Names of Countries with inhabitants and corresponding Adjectives
(63), (318).
Niet, position of, in Negative sentences (179), (361), XII.
Noch, nog, meaning of (293).
Number (237), XVI.
Numeral Adjectives (109) et seq.
" " Various idiomatic expressions (173,174), XI.
" " List of Cardinals and Ordinals (175, 176),
XVI.
" exercise on (177).

O.
Official and Documentary Language, List of terms (372) et seq.
Om, uses of (311).
" when used to strengthen te before Infinitive (230), Rule 2.
Onder, uses of (309, 310).
Ooit, nooit, use of (294).
Op, uses of (310).
INDEX

P.

Parsing and Analysis (367) et seq.
  abbreviations used (367, 368).
  example of (369).

Participles, translation of (232, 233), XIV, 3, 4.

Parts of Speech, Dutch names of (47), (367).

Person (237), XVII.

Plural, formation of (59) et seq.
  ending ers or eren (61), VII.
  different meanings of, according to termination (61), VIII.
  words with irregular (62), IX.
  of words ending in heid (62).
  man (63).
  words having no singular (66), XII.
  words having no (64), XI, 1-3.
  words with no proper, plural borrowed from synonyms (64), XI, 4.
  Dutch singular forms for English plurals (65), 5.
  formation of as regards final consonants (67), XV; when final
  consonant not doubled, 1; when final consonant doubled (68), 2; exceptions (68, 69).
  of words ending in f or s (69), 3.
  exercises on (71, 72), (75, 76), (80).

Prepositions (305) et seq.
  relations pointed out by (306-308), IV.

Preposition-Verbs with unlike Prepositions in English and
Dutch, List of (312-315).

Pronouns (183) et seq.
  Personal, with declension (183-185).
  use of old Possessive Case (187), 8.
  use of gij, u and jij (184, 185).
  Reciprocal (185), 5.
  Reflexive, with declension (186), 6, 7.
  Possessive (188, 189), V.
  Interrogative (189), VI.
  declension of (190), Obs. 1.
  compounded with Prepositions (190), Obs. 2.
  Indefinite (191, 192), VII.
  Correlative (193), VIII.
  Demonstrative (194-196), IX.
  Relative with Declension (196-198), X.
  exercises on (199-202).

Pronunciation, Exercises on (19, 21).

Put (to), to put on, etc., various renderings of (300, 301).

R.

Reading Exercises, (26), (45), (56), (82, 83), (104, 105),
(114, 115), (149, 150).
INDEX

S.

Scholen, different meanings of (246), Note.
Should, rendering of (204).
Should, ought to, rendered by behoren (251).
Some, idiomumatic renderings of (171), X, 1-7.

Speak-and-Act Exercise, No. 1.—“Een boom planten” (24-26).
“ No. 2.—“Een huis bouwen,” the
“ Interrogative, Negative and Neg.-
“ Interrog. forms introduced (34-37).
“ No. 3, plural forms introduced (42-45)
“ No. 4.—“De lamp aansteken”
“ (54-56).
“ No.5.—“t Paard schoonmaken” (70),
“ Imperative form introduced (71).
“ No. 6.—“De was doen” (76-78).
“ No. 7.—“De doden begraven” (81.82).
“ No. 8.—“De klok opwinden”
“ (102, 103).
“ No. 9.—“Uit rijden gaan” (112).
“ independent sentences (113, 114).
“ No. 10.—“Brood bakken” (133);
“ Progressive form introduced (134);
“ exercise on continuous composition
“ (135).
“ No. 11.—“De schoorsteen vegen”
“ (147-149).

Spelling, when pronunciation differs from (18, 19), 1-10.
“ general rules for (27, 28), I-VI.
“ use of single or double vowels (28-30).
“ exercises on (31-34), (38-40).
“ of Compound Nouns (41).

Syllables, division of words into (21), 1-4.
“ open and closed (22).
“ exercises on (22, 23).

T.

Tense (234-236), XV.
Then, when translated by dan, when by toen (167).
Translation Exercise No. 1. (52, 53).
“ No. 2, introducing jij and julie (72-74).
“ No. 3. (78, 79).
“ No. 4, introducing—
“ First Rule of Construction (109).
Third “ “ “ (110).
Interrogative, Negative and Neg.-Interrog.
forms (111).
INDEX

Translation Exercise No. 5, introducing—
Fourth Rule of Construction (142, 143).
Translation of Pres. Participle (143, 144).
Use of willen (144, 145).
Translation of certain Infinitives having no equivalent in English (145, 146).
Translation of “when” (147).
No. 6. (161-168), introducing—
Translation of “if” by indien or als (166).
Various translations of “then” (167).
Fifth Rule of Construction (168).
No. 7. (178-180), introducing—
Sixth Rule of Construction (179).
Translation of Pres. Participle by terwijl (179).
No. 8 (202-209), introducing—
Various translations of “may” (204).
“will” and “would” (205, 206).
Various translations of “if” (206, 207).
“to know” (207).
“used to” (208).
Seventh Rule of Construction (208).
No. 9. (270-283), introducing—
Certain idiomatic expressions (280, 283, 284).
“Should”, “ought to”, translated by behoren (281).
Translations of moeten (282).
No. 10. (298-302), introducing—
Various renderings of “after” (299).
translations of “to put” (300, 301).
No. 11. (315-318).
No. 12. (328-332).
No. 13. (356, 357).

Uit, uses of (311).

Van, uses of (308).

Variatives, formation of, meaning of lei and hande (175), XIII.
Verbs, (211) et seq.
“ Weak and Strong (138, 139).
“ determination of stem (211, 212), II.
“ when conjugated with zijn, when with hebben (215, 216).
“ Transitive and Intransitive (238), XVII.
“ Reflexive (238-241), XIX.
“ Mixed, list of (242), XX.
“ Anomalous, list of (243-244), XXI.
“ Impersonal (245-247), XXII.
INDEX

Verbs, Causative (247), XXIII.
  "  Intensive (247), XXIV.
  "  Frequentative (248), XXV.
  "  Compound (248-249), XXVI.
  "  Separably compounded (250).
  "  Inseparably compounded (250).
  "  List of Compound, with different meanings according to accent (251-252).
  "  List of Strong (252-257), XXVII.
  "  exercises on (258-270).
Vocabulary, English-Dutch (386) et seq.
Voice (221).
  "  Comparison between Active and Passive of bijten (221-223), X.
  "  Observations on Active and Passive (225-227).
  "  Transposition from Active into Passive—use of men (226, 227), 5 (a-f).

W.
When, when translated by toen, when by wanneer (147).
Whoever and whatever, translation of (192).
Will and would, rendering of (205, 206).
Wijlen, meaning of (294).

Z.
Zelden, zeldzaam, use of (294).
Zijn, comparison between its use as Copulative and Auxiliary of Passive Voice (224, 225), X, b.
THE

STANDARD DUTCH GRAMMAR

CHAPTER I.

I.—THE ALPHABET.

(Het Alfabet.)

1. The Dutch alphabet consists of the same letters as the English, but the letters c, q, x, and y are not used in words of Dutch origin. C and h are used as a compound consonant (ch). See p 17, § 7.

2. The following are the Vowels (Klinkers) in use: A, pronounced as in English father; E, pronounced as in English convey; I (written "ie" for double "i"), pronounced as in English knee; O, pronounced as in English woe; U, pronounced as in French mûr; OE, pronounced as in English pool; EU, pronounced as in German öde.

Note.—For the correct pronunciation of O, OE, U and EU, it is necessary to bring the lips forward. This done, for the O-sound leave a larger, and for the OE-sound a small round opening; for the EU-sound a broad slit, and for the U-sound a narrow slit between the lips.

3. Five Vowels, viz. a, e, i, o, u, have each a double sound. When written with the double sign, aa, ee, ie, oo, uu, or when occurring at the end of a syllable, or when forming a syllable by themselves, their sound is full, as indicated in § 2; but when single, and enclosed between consonants, their sound becomes imperfect; e.g. man (as
in German *Mann*); *lcs* (as in English *test*); *lip*, pronounced as in English; *hop*, pronounced as in English; *rust* (slightly less broad than *u* in English *rust*).

Note.—The *e* has a third sound, approaching that of the imperfect *u*. It occurs in the article *dc*; in the flexion-endings of the adjective; in the verbal prefixes *be, gc*, and *ver*, and suffix *en*; in the plural ending *en* of nouns, and in unaccented syllables before *m, n, l, p, r, t*. The sound of this *e* is heard in the second syllable of the English word *bundle*.

The *o* likewise has a third sound, more imperfect than that heard in *hop* (*vide* 3). It resembles the *o*-sound in *on*, as against that in *horse*. It chiefly precedes or follows the letters *m* and *n*, e.g. *romp, tromp, rommel, drom, mos, dom, modder, lomp, kom, om, onder, long, zong, drong, wrong, krom*, as against *hop, top, stop, drop, rot, hol, los, tros, ros, jol, tol, solien, tornen, dorsen*.

Imperfect *i* sounds almost like *u* in the suffix *lik*: *men-se-lik, dier-lik*.

4. Of the **Consonants (Medeklinkers)**, *B* is pronounced as in English *bailiff*; *D*, as in English *dainty*; *K*, as in English *caprice*; *P*, as in English *pale*; *R*, as in English *error*; *T*, as in English *take*; and *Z*, pronounced *zett*, as in French; *F, L, M, N*, and *S*, as in English; *H*, like English *hal* and always aspirated; *J*, like English *yea*; *G*, like *ch* in Scotch *nicht*, and *loch*; *V*, like very soft English *f*; and *W*, materially like English *v*.

Note.—*G* always has a guttural sound (p. 17, §7), except when occurring after *n*, when it sounds as in the English word *ring*.

5. The English *Y*, when used in Dutch words of Greek origin, is pronounced like English *ee* or *i*, as in *synode, syntaxis*. The Dutch *IJ* is originally a double *i*, now written *i* and *j* combined. The sound represented by this combination, which is foreign to the English language, lies close to the sound of *ay* in the English word *pay*.  


the teeth, when pronouncing the Dutch word "pij", being less widely apart than for the pronunciation of the English pay.

6. The letters e, q, and x are only met with in words introduced into Dutch from other languages, and are there pronounced as in English, e being like k before o, o, u, or a consonant, and like s, before e, i, and ie; t, in such words, occurring before the ending ie (Eng. ion), is pronounced like s, e.g. natic, nation, pr. na-sie. The ending atie is by some pronounced aatsie: for instance, for predikatie (predikasie), sermon, one may hear predikwatsie. This pronunciation should not be encouraged.

7. C occurs in Dutch in combination with H, ch being the representation of a guttural sound, rather sharper than that of g. SCH, when found at the beginning of a word, or as the initial letters of a stem after a prefix, should be pronounced as a combination of s and the guttural ch; as schaap, pr. s-ch-aap; geschapen, pr. ge-s-ch-a-pen.

Note.—This sound of sch is retained in the suffix schap.

In certain Proper Nouns and geographical names, where this composite consonant occurs otherwise than initially, it is invariably pronounced like s: Stellenbosch, pr. Stellen-bos; Visscher, pr. Vis-ser.

8. TH is pronounced as single t, and PH like f, by which sign it is now superseded.

9. The Dutch language has the following diphthongs: Ei, formerly ai (ay), pronounced exactly like ij; Au, pronounced as in English stout; Ou, pronounced softer than au, though by many the difference is disregarded; Uij, no equivalent in English, softer than German eu, pronounced in the same way as u and eu (see § 2), but with a yet wider opening of the mouth; Aai, like ay in Scotch pronunciation of McKay; Ooi, full Dutch o-sound with i-sound attached, like oh-y; Eeu, full sound of Dutch e, ending in the sound of w; Ieu, full sound of Dutch i, ending in that of w.
Broadly speaking, Dutch should be pronounced as it is spelled. The following are the cases in which pronunciation differs from spelling:

1. Final \( b, d, \) and \( g, \) are respectively pronounced like \( p, t, \) and \( ch, \) e.g. \( \text{bed, pr. bet; pad, pr. pat; lag, pr. lach.} \)

2. The guttural sound of \( g \) is lost whenever \( n \) precedes it, e.g. \( \text{ding, ring, hing.} \)

3. The initial \( z \) of \( zestig, \) sixty, and \( zeventig, \) seventy, is pronounced like \( s. \)

4. The \( t \) before final \( ie \) in words of French origin, is pronounced like \( s, \) e.g. \( \text{konsideratie, pr. konsiderasie.} \)

5. The sound of \( th \) is that of a single \( t, \) e.g. \( \text{thermometer, pr. ter-mo-me-ter.} \)

6. Final \( t \) is usually left out before the diminutive ending \( je. \) \( \text{kwast, nest and vest make kwasje, nesje, and vesje.} \)

7. The diminutive ending \( je \) is colloquially pronounced \( ie, \) except when preceded by \( d \) or \( t; \) e.g. \( \text{koppie (for kopje) boekie (for bockje); but mannetje, handje, etc.} \)

8. The pronunciation of the endings \( de, der, \) and \( den, \) is often \( je, jcr, \) and \( jen, \) in colloquial speech. \( \text{De goede man (the good man), is pronounced de goeie man; likewise does breder (broader) sound brejcr, and sleden (sledges), slejen.} \)

This is the case in:

(Adjectives) \( \text{goede, goeie (good), brede, breje (broad), rode, rooie (red), dode, dooie (dead), kwade, kwaaie (angry), etc.; whereas, oude (old), and koude (cold) change their \( d \) into a \( w: ouwe, kouwe.} \)
(Nouns) laden, laaien (drawers), leden, lejen (members), kleden, klejen (carpets), smeden, snejen (smiths), sneden, snejen (slices), etc.

(Verbs) laden, laaien (to load), snijden, snijen (to cut), lijden, lijjen (to suffer), leiden, leien (to lead), rijden, rijen (to ride), etc.

9. In loose speech final \(n\) of the ending \(en\) of Nouns and Verbs is dropped. The men were speaking together, de mannen spraken met elkaar, sounds—de manne sprak met elkaar.

10. The Pers. Pron. \(hij\), he, is often shortened into a single \(i\)-sound in fluent speaking, heeft hij (has he) becoming heeft-i, and had hij (had he) becoming hat-i, etc.

Note.—These deflections from grammatical forms are not commendable, though really universal. They, however, find no place in the written language.

EXERCISE ON PRONUNCIATION.

Pronounce according to the hints in the undermentioned paragraphs of Section 1.

2.

Paar, taal, haas, maat, va-der, ma-len, ta-fel, za-del; meel, reet, geel, le-pel, ze-dig, le-ven, we-zel; diep, stier, sliep, iets, ieder, vie-ren, hie-len, wie-den; kool, roos, pook, troon, mo-len, wo-nen, ko-per, sto-ven; uur, muur, uw, sluw, vu-ren, ju-bel, du-wen, mu-ziek; koek, woest, poel, troep, moe-der, loe-ren, woe-dend, roe-ren; neus, heup, deur, kneu, sleu-ren, leu-ze, steu-nen, kleu-rig.

3.

(Full Vowels.) Baat, ba-ten, aap, a-del; zeef, ste-len, eer, e-del, vee; dienst, wie-len, iep, ie-ren, drie; roof, do-ren, oor, o-pen, stro; stuur, stu-ren, u-ren, ruw.

(Imperfect Vowels.) Kar, slap, plat, man, stam, land, stal, want, plan, lam; vel, mes, wet, test, net, spel, ren, stem, pen, kers; dik, mis, lip, ik, bril, stil, kin, pit, krimp,
dirk; mul, hulk, rum, kunst, lust, hurk, muts, dun, ruk, wuft; bre-de, ka-le, blaf-fen, de, ge-loop, ver-haal, be-derf, ko-pen, be-ren, val-len, rom-mel, de-det, de-sem, re-ten, lo-pen, wan-de-len, krab-be-len, re-ge-ren, dof, dot, dom-mel, los, lot, glun-dert.

4.

Baas, bas, buur, bus, boel, boek, beek, bek; daar, dorp, deur, doel, dek, dak, dwaas, dwars, diep, dik, dis-tel; kaal, kap, koor, rok, kwee, kwast; kist, kiel, ko-ren; peer, paard, pronk, proest, pis-tool, pest, pret; raam, ram, roes, rust, rank, rit-se-len, riet; teer, turf, treep, toorn, to-ren, trap-pe-len; zak, zaak, zieke, zink, zulk, zool, zeem, zoet, zwal-ken; haan, hoop, hop, hak, haal, help, hulp, hoed, heup; jaar, jas, jood, jank, joel, jeuk, jong; goot, grot, geul, gaas, gas, groef, gist, grim-men; vaas, vroom, voelt, vleug, vlag, vlok, vinnen; waan, woest, wier, wraak, wrok, worst.

5.

(Foreign Words.) Synode, tyrannie, hypokriët, chrysoliet, symptoem, mythe, fysiek, fysies.

(Dutch Words.) Rijm, vijl, stijf, grijp, wrijven, lijvig, blijken, wijzen.

6.

Cato, koncept, recentie, canto, promotie, akceptatie, garantie, Curacao, (pronounced Ku-ra-sau), Clemens, cipier, provincie, Corinth, Worcester.

7.

Lach, kuch, zucht, kracht, licht, ge-zicht, ver-licht, ge-lucht, macht, wacht, ge-dacht; schaap, schip, schut, schop, schom-mel, schim, sat, schol, schram, schrik, schrijn, ge-schaamd, ver-scholen, her-scha-pen, ont-schieten, blijd-schap; Rondebosch, Loubser, Grootschuur, Wolwasch.
8.

Thuis, thermometer, methode, theologie, theosophie.

9.

Lei, wei-de, reis, stei-ge-ren, fon-tein, lei-den, stei-ler, rein; paus, kous, saus, lauw, flauw; rauw, dauw, vrouw; huis, rui-ken, tuin, wui-ven, dui-nen, muis, ruim, pruik; taai, zaai-en, haai, maai-en; hooi, mooi-er, strooien, tooi en; dooi; eeu-wig, leen-wen, spreeuw, geeu-wen; nieuw, nieuw-we, krieu-wen.

III.—SYLLABLES.

(Lettergrepen.)

1. The pronunciation of Dutch words is a simple and easy matter, after the sounds have been mastered. On the pronunciation depends the division of the words into syllables.

2. This division has no connection with etymology. No matter how a word has been derived, compounded, contracted or abridged, its syllables depend on the opening and closing of the mouth when it is pronounced.

3. Perfect articulation gives perfect division into syllables. There is no other rule.

4. Students should observe:—

(a) That one consonant found between two vowels goes with the vowel which follows it: hazen = ha-zen, leven = le-ven, ademen = a-de-men.

(b) That of a combination of two or more consonants, one is retained by the first vowel, whereas the remainder go with the vowel following them: dampig = dam-pig, schande = schan-de, korsten = kor-sten, — unless such division should stand in the way of pronunciation: ernstig = ern-stig, instead of ern-stig, ambten = amb-ten, and not am-bten.
Note 1.—These rules have no reference to compound words, which naturally keep their parts intact: *plaatskaart* = *plaats-kaart*, *slagaar* = *slag-aar*. Likewise do the suffixes *aard*, *achtig*, and *rijk* retain their own letters: *luf-aard*, *blauw-achtig*, *gunst-rijk*.

Note 2.—The compound *ch* is not divided: *lachen* = *la-chen*; *pochen* = *po-chcn*, though in both cases the imperfect vowel sound is retained, the spelling having once been *poch-chen*, and afterwards *pog-chen*.

Note 3.—The other compound *ng* is divided, on account of the *g* having been formerly sounded. This division, however, is not in accordance with pronunciation.

Syllables—Open and Closed.

In Dutch a syllable is termed (a) open (*open*), when it ends in a vowel; (b) closed (*gesloten*), when it ends in a consonant.

Examples of (a) — *vre-de*, *be-te-ren*, *ga-de-lo-ze*.

Examples of (b) — *lan-den*, *won-der-daad*, *on-ein-digheid*.

EXERCISE ON SYLLABLES.

Break the words of the following exercises into syllables, noticing which of the syllables are open, and which closed:—

1.

Laken, monster, paarden, stallen, dochters, zonen, handen, paneel, kapstok, brandwacht, kapoen, vinger, planten, struiken, bomen, pennen, hazen, eenden, vinden, stokpaard, ketting, wartaal, ganzen, spiegel, vragen, denken, klinken, mengen, marktplaats, slokdarm, wasmand.

2.

Bederven, gedenken, ontvangen, stamelen, regeren, vergelden, hagelen, hergeven, oorlogen, droefenis, latafel,
ouderdom, gestorven, lessenaar, schuifgordijn, akelig, inktkoker, plaveien, instrument, onttrekken, uitvinding, overlast, blikslager.

3.
Betoveren, gedachtenis, goedhartigheid, nauwkeurige, bedelende, nadrukkelijk, onloochenbaar, monsterachtig, wellevendheid, anderhalve, onaangenaam, milddadigheid, haveloze, tandpoeier, horlogekast, overnachtig, voorwereldlik, ontstentenis, kompanjieën, vergiffenis, dialektiek, professoraat, regulatie, landarbeid, Zaterdag, blijmoedige, bruiloftsdis, edelmoedigheid.

4.
Keukengereedschap, kousefabriek, katoenspinnerij, overeenkomstig, houtzaagmolen, koninginnemantel, Israelitisme, spoorwegmaatschappijen, testamentbezorger, filosofieën, meteorologische, onderwijzersverenigingen, horlogemakerswinkel, primitiviteit, invalideinstituut, zeilmakerswerkplaats.

**KONVERSATIE.**

1. *Hoe heet u?*
2. *Ik heet Jan.*
3. *Waar komt u vandaan?*
4. *Ik kom van school.*
5. *Hoe oud is u?*
6. *Ik ben twaalf jaar.*
7. *Is de school groot?*
8. *Ja, er zijn zes kamers.*
9. *En ook zes onderwijzers?*
10. *Nee, zeven of acht.*
11. *En hoelcel leerlingen zijn er?*
12. *O, meer dan honderd, geloof ik.*

CONVERSATION.

What is your name?
My name is John.
Where do you come from?
I come from school.
How old are you?
I am twelve years old.
Is the school large?
Yes, there are six rooms.
And six masters also?
No, seven or eight.
And how many scholars are there?
Oh, more than a hundred.
I believe.

Note.—In familiar speech the questions of 1, 3, and 5 would be:

*Hoe heet je?* *Waar kom je vandaan?* *Hoe oud ben je?* See p. 36

In South Africa *Wat is uw naam?* is the only current expression for, *What is your name?*
SPEAK-AND-ACT EXERCISE No. 1.

Een boom planten.—To plant a tree.

1. Ik ga naar de tuin. I go to the garden.
2. Ik neem een graaf in mijn hand. I take a spade in my hand.
3. Ik spit een gat in de grond. I dig a hole in the ground.
4. Ik zet een boom in het gat. I put a tree into the hole.
5. Ik vul het gat met grond. I fill the hole with soil.
6. Ik trap de grond vast. I tread the soil down.
7. Ik haal een gieter. I fetch a watering-can.
8. Ik tap water uit de kraan. I draw water from the tap.
9. Ik gooi het water bij de boom. I throw the water round the tree.
10. Zo wordt de boom geplant. So the tree is planted.

REMARK.—The above exercise, and all following Speak-and-Act Exercises, should be made the subject of action while speaking, or speaking while acting. They are founded on the fact that children learn to talk by rehearsing sentences expressive of their actions, while these are in progress. Languages are best and most quickly learnt in the same way: What are styled "Subsequent Exercises" are derived from the "Speak-and-Act Exercises", and should be looked upon in the light of Grammar work founded on the knowledge obtained by actual experience during the practice of the latter. They are meant to be written as well as spoken.

TO BE MEMORISED:—

Ik ga, hij gaat. Ik neem, hij neemt. Ik spit, hij spit.
I go, he goes. I take, he takes. I dig, he digs.

NOTE.—The 1st pers. sing. present tense of all Verbs represents the verb-stem. The 3rd pers. sing. of the same tense adds t to the verb-stem, if it does not already end in t.
THE ALPHABET

Verbs—Werkoorden.

gaan, to go.  
*ik ga,* I go.  
*ik (hij) ging,* I went.

nemen, to take.  
*ik neem,* I take.  
*ik (hij) nam,* I took.

spitten, to dig.  
*ik spit,* I dig.  
*ik (hij) spitte,* I dug.

zetten, to put.  
*ik zet,* I put.  
*ik (hij) zette,* I put.

vullen, to fill.  
*ik vul,* I fill.  
*ik (hij) vulde,* I filled.

trappen, to tread.  
*ik trap,* I tread.  
*ik (hij) trapte,* I trod.

halen, to fetch.  
*ik haal,* I fetch.  
*ik (hij) haaide,* I fetched.

tappen, to draw  
(from a tap).  
*ik tap,* I draw.  
*ik (hij) tapte,* I drew.

gooien, to throw.  
*ik gooii,* I throw.  
*ik (hij) gooide,* I threw.

worden, to be  
(become).  
*ik word,* I be-  
*ik (hij) werd,* I became.

*ik ben (hij is) gegaan,* I have (he has) gone.  
*ik heb (hij heeft) genomen,* I have (he has) taken.  
*ik heb (hij heeft) geospit,* I have (he has) dug.  
*ik heb (hij heeft) gezet,* I have (he has) put.  
*ik heb (hij heeft) gevuld,* I have (he has) filled.  
*ik heb (hij heeft) getrapt,* I have (he has) trodden.  
*ik heb (hij heeft) gedaald,* I have (he has) fetched.  
*ik heb (hij heeft) getapt,* I have (he has) drawn.  
*ik heb (hij heeft) gevooid,* I have (he has) thrown.  
*ik ben geworden,* I have been (become).  
*hij is geworden,* he (it) has been (become).

SUBSEQUENT EXERCISE.

The above Verb-forms will enable the learner to speak  
Exercise No. 1 (1) in the 1st pers. sing. Indicative  
present; (2) in the 3rd pers. sing. Indic. present; (3) in  
the 1st pers. sing. Indic. past; (4) in the 3rd pers. sing.  
Indic. past; (5) in the 1st pers. sing. Indic. perfect;  
(6) in the 3rd pers. sing. Indic. perfect.

All these exercises should be first spoken and then  
carefully written. They will fix themselves indelibly in  
the learner’s mind. He should thus handle grammatical  
forms before he learns to establish them by theory.

Here follow some of the sentences:
[Indicative Past, 1st and 3rd persons singular.]

Ik ging naar de tuin.  Hij ging naar de tuin.
Ik nam een graaf in mijn hand.  Hij nam een graaf in zijn hand.
Ik spitte een gat in de grond.  Hij spitte een gat in de grond.

[Indicative Perfect, 1st and 3rd persons singular.]

Ik ben naar de tuin gegaan.  Hij is naar de tuin gegaan.
Ik heb een graaf in mijn hand genomen.  Hij heeft een graaf in zijn hand genomen.
Ik heb een gat in de grond gespit.  Hij heeft een gat in de grond gespit.

Note.—In principal sentences, formed with compound tenses, i.e. Perfect, Pluperfect and Future, the Dutch Past Participle is placed last.

READING EXERCISE.

Ik heb een boom in mijn hand.  De boom is klein.
I have a tree in my hand.  The tree is small.
will pretty become.  It will grow.  It will leaves get.  It will fruit bear.  I shall glad be.

COMPOSITION EXERCISE.

Write ten Dutch sentences constructed with the words given above, but different from any you have learnt.

Tell the lesson about “Planting a Tree”, substituting mijn broer, my brother, or mijn zus ter, my sister, or de tuinman, the gardener, for the pronouns given, or any of them, varying the sentences as much as you can.
Chapter II.

Spelling.

(Spelling.)

I. In the pronunciation of Dutch words every letter is, as a rule, sounded. A word pronounced may, therefore, be taken as a word spelled. Some obvious discrepancies in the presentation of vowels have been removed by the Simplified Spelling now in vogue, rendering Dutch Spelling easy of acquirement, after the few following rules have been mastered.

II. Words without inflexion take their final consonant according to pronunciation: met, with; zich, himself; noch, neither.

III. When the final consonant of a word is a hard one, the last but one should be hard also; likewise is a soft final consonant preceded by a soft one: nacht has ch, because it ends in t; dugd has g, because it ends in d.

Note 1.—This rule gives way to etymology, and is therefore not applied in the conjugation of verbs: hij legt keeps its g before the t, seeing the g forms part of the stem of the Verb.

Note 2.—Exceptions to this rule are reeds, already; steeds, always; sinds, since; bereids, already, in which d is preserved before final s.

IV. Neither words nor syllables can end in double consonants. The English endings ff and ss, and the German tt and nn cannot, therefore, be met with at the end of a syllable of any Dutch word.
THE STANDARD DUTCH GRAMMAR

V. Words or syllables cannot end in either \( v \) or \( z \). Where such endings would be demanded by derivation, the \( v \) is made an \( f \) and the \( z \) an \( s \): 

\[
\text{vrezcn, to fear; } \text{ik vrees, I fear; sterven, to die; hij stierf, he died.}
\]

VI. Touching declinable words, the question whether they end in \( d \) or \( t \) must be settled by declension: \( \text{paard, horse}, \) sounds \( \text{paart,} \) but it is written with \( d \), because its plural is \( \text{paarden.} \) \( \text{Vraag, question}, \) sounds \( \text{vraach,} \) but is written with \( g \), because its plural is \( \text{vragen,} \) in which \( g \), not being final (\( \text{vra-gen} \)), is pronounced soft. So also is \( \text{vreemd, strange}, \) written with \( d \), because of \( \text{vreem-de; groot, large, with} \ t, \) because of \( \text{gro-ter.} \)

VII. Rules about single and double vowels.

1. The **double sign**, \( aa, ee, oo, uu \), is used:

   (a) When the full sound of the vowel opens a syllable: \( \text{aar, vein; eer, honour; oor, ear; uur, hour.} \)

   (b) When the full sound is closed up between consonants: \( \text{daad, deed; deeg, dough; kool, cabbage; muur, wall.} \)

   (c) In the Verbs \( \text{goo-che-len, to juggle,} \) and \( \text{loo-che-nen, to deny.} \)

2. The **single sign**, \( a, e, o, u \), is used:

   (a) When the full sound constitutes a syllable in itself: \( \text{a-del, noble; e-xel, ass; o-gen, eyes; u-ren, hours.} \)

   (b) When the full sound is heard in an open syllable: \( \text{vru-gen, to ask; le-ren, to learn; ho-ren, to hear; du-ren, to last.} \)

   (c) Whenever the sound is imperfect: \( \text{ar-moe-de, poverty; urn, urn; dak, roof; hut, hut; erts, ore; hok, pen.} \)

   (d) When \( u \) is followed by \( w \), rendering its sound full: \( \text{ruw, rough; sluw, sly.} \)
VII. Rules about single and double \( \text{i} \).

1. The double sign \( (\text{ie}) \) is used:

(a) When the full sound occurs between consonants: \( \text{dienst} \), service; \( \text{mier} \), ant.

(b) In open syllables, when accented, or final: \( \text{mie-ren} \), ants; \( \text{vcr-drie-tig} \), sorrowful; \( \text{foe-lie} \), mace; \( \text{bie-zon-der} \), particular; \( \text{Ja-nu-a-rie} \), January; though in words not purely Dutch, the simple \( \text{i} \) is preferred: \( \text{in-va-li-de} \), an invalid.

(c) When the full sound constitutes a syllable in itself in purely Dutch words: \( \text{ie-mand} \), some one; \( \text{ie-dcr} \), every one.

2. The single sign \( (\text{i}) \) is used.

(a) When the sound is imperfect between consonants: \( \text{dik} \), thick; \( \text{mik-ken} \), to aim.

(b) In open syllables, unaccented and not final: \( \text{mu-zi-kant} \), bandsman; \( \text{ja-bri-kant} \), manufacturer. In such cases, however, \( \text{ie} \) is admissible when the word may be considered Dutch.

(c) In words taken from foreign languages: \( \text{i-de-caal} \), ideal; \( \text{i-di-ooot} \), idiot; \( \text{i-dce} \), idea; \( \text{in-tri-ge} \), intrigue; \( \text{in-vi-te-ren} \), to invite (not \( \text{i11-vic-te-ren} \)).

The ending \( \text{ics} \) (Eng. \( \text{ic} \)) in such words, however, always takes \( \text{ie} \): \( \text{filologies} \), philological.

IX. Words of one syllable ending in the \( \text{e} \)-sound have the double vowel:

\( \text{Tee}, \) tea; \( \text{vee}, \) cattle; \( \text{zee}, \) sea; \( \text{wec}, \) woe; \( \text{kwee}, \) quince; \( \text{twee}, \) two. Derivatives from these words keep the double \( \text{e} \): \( \text{twee-de}, \) second; \( \text{zee-ën}, \) seas.

X. Rules as to the use of \( \text{ei} \) and \( \text{ij} \).

1. A corresponding word in English or German having two vowels, points to the use of \( \text{ei} \) in Dutch; likewise, if the foreign cognate has one vowel, the \( \text{ij} \) takes its place in Dutch:
Feil, failing; fontein, fountain; spreiden, to spread.
Rijst, rice; prijs, price; lijst, list; dozijn, dozen.

2. When contraction has taken place, ei must be used.
Zeil (zegel), sail; dweil (dvegel), clout; keil (kegel), wedge; meid (maged), maid.

3. Ei is used in the endings heid, teit, and lei:
Goedheid, goodness; majesteit, majesty; allerlei, all kinds of.

4. IJ is used in the endings ij, ijn, and ijs:
Bakkerij, bakery; galerij, gallery; dolfijn, dolfin; radijs, radish.

5. IJ occurs in strong verbs, as bijten, to bite, beet, gebeten; blijven, to remain, bleef, gebleven.

XI. The meanings of the following words of like pronunciation should be acquired.

Homonyms with ij and ei:—

bij, bee.
berijden, to ride on.
ijk, stamp, assizer's mark.
fijt, whitlow.
hij, he.
liden, to suffer.
mij, me.
mijt, mite.
pijl, arrow.
rij, row.
rijken, rich people, kingdoms.
Rijn, Rhine.
rijs, young twigs (collective).
stijl, style, door-post.
vijl, file.
vlijen, to lay flat.
wij, we.
wijden, to consecrate.
wijten, to impute.
zijde, silk.
EXERCISE I.

1.

*Fill up the blanks with single or double a:*

V—n w—r kw—m de m—n die ik d—r z—g? Hij
From where came the man whom I there saw? He
kw—m v—n de k—nt v—n de st—d. W—t z—l ik hem
came from the side of the town. What shall I him
r—den, —Is hij mij vr—gt? R—d hem zijn —rme v—der
advise when he me asks? Advise him his poor father
w—t te helpen. Wie k—n dit r—dsel r—den: w—t w—s
a little to help. Who can this riddle guess: what was
w—s, eer w—s w—s w—s? De m—st v—n d—t schip is
wax, ere wax wax was? The mast of that ship is
—f, de kr—cht v—n de storm heeft hem de voorl—tste
off, the force of the storm has it the previous
n—cht —f gesl—gen. Ik z—l u voor uw str—f
night down struck. I shall you for your punishment
v—n —vond l—ten w—ter dr—gen. De j—ger is op de
this evening let water carry. The hunter is on the
j—cht geg—n, en heeft twee h—zen en drie fez—nten
hunt gone. and has two hares and three pheasants
thuis gebr—cht.
home brought.

2.

*Fill up the blanks with single or double u:*

Aan de m—r in zijn st—deerkamer hing een r—w
On the wall in his study hung a rude
kruis. Zijn die vr—chten — niet te z—r? O neen, ik
crucifix. Are those fruits (for) you not too sour? O no, I
houd van z—re vr—chten, meer dan —. D—w de
like sour fruits, more than you. Push the
l—cifersdoos open met —w vinger, S—zie. St—r —w
matchbox open with your finger, Susie. Send your
knecht om het paard van —w b—rman te h—ren. — zal
servant (for) the horse of your neighbour to hire. You will
het zelf moeten gaan h—ren: ik kan de knecht n—it yourself have to go (and) hire: I can the servant now 
niet st—ren. Het zal niet veel —ren meer d—ren, of not send.' It will not many hours more last, before 
die m—r zal om liggen. Die vreemde hond, die daar that wall will down lie. That strange dog, which there 
zo vals ligt te gl—ren, heeft n— en dan vreemde k—ren. so falsely lies lurking, has now and then strange whims.

3.

*Fill up the blanks with single or double e:*

H—ft de kl—fpleister de wond in het b—n van uw Has the sticking-plaster the wound in the leg of your
n—f g—n—z—n? Ik h—b h—t br—de papier aan smalle cousin healed? I have the wide paper in narrow
r—p—n g—sn—d—n. Br—ng mij h—t n—t dat strips cut. Bring me the net which
d— kn—cht h—d—n v—rst—ld h—ft; ik zal the servant to-day mended has; I shall
h—t ov—r d— h—g l—gg—n. D— h—m—ls it over the hedge lay. The testers
van de b—dd—n zijn n—tj—s afg—v—gd. B—rg of the beds are neatly dusted. Put
h—t g—ld in uw v—st w—g, and—rs wordt the money in your waistcoat by, or else (will) be
h—t uitg—v—n. Br—ng h—t sch—rp— m—s it spent. Bring the sharp knife
bij de kn—cht, —n z—g h—m, dat hij h—t to the servant and tell him, that he the
h—ft moet vastz—tt—n. De w—t van h—t handle must fix. The law of the
g—w—t—n van —lke m—ns z—gt h—m, dat conscience of every man tells him that
st—I—n our—cht is.
to steal wrong is.
4.

Fill up the blanks with single or double o:


5.

Fill up the blanks with ei or ij:

Zijn geregeld de bomen, die jij geplant hebt. Zijn bessen, die je plant, heeft. Zijn blad schijnt rood, en zijn blad is niet waarlijk blank. Wijn wordt uit druiven bereid, en azijn uit wijn. Het meisjes zal de rijst bereiden, en vijzel uit wijn. De girl will the row of her friends on a slate write, and you the
1—st dan w—zen. Ik ben bl—, dat j— die schilder—
list then show. I am glad, that you that painting

kr—gt. De h—ning sch—dt het w—land van m—n
get. The fence separates the pasture-ground from my
tuin. Als w— eerlik en vl—tig z—n, leven w— vr—en
garden. When we honest and diligent are, live we freely and
bl—. J— moet niet te veel t—d aan r—den w—den;
happily. You must not too much time to riding devote;
dat zou niet w—s z—n. De berg is te st—I
that would not wise be. The mountain is too steep to down
te gl—den.

slide.

SPEAK-AND-ACT EXERCISE No. 2.

Een huis bouwen.—To build a house.

1. Ik graaf sloten voor het I dig trenches for the
fondament.
2. Ik leg stenen in de I put stones in the
tolen.
3. Ik doe cement tussen de I put cement between the
stenen.
4. Ik bouw muren op het I build walls on the
fondament.
5. Ik laat gaten voor I leave holes for doors
deuren en vensters.
6. Ik leg balken over de I place beams across the
muren.
7. Ik zet kappen op de I put principals upon the
balken.
8. Ik leg sparren over de I put rafters across the
kappen.
9. Ik bedek het dak met I cover the roof with tiles.
pannen.
10. Zo wordt het huis So the house is built.
gebouwd.

TO BE MEMORISED:

1. Ik graaf, u graaft. I dig, you dig.
2. Ik leg, u legt. I put, you put.
3. Ik doe, u doet. I put, you put.
SPELLING

Verbs—Werkwoorden.

INFINITIVE.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Present.</th>
<th>Imperfect.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>graven, to dig.</td>
<td>ik graaf, I dig.</td>
<td>ik groef, I dug.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leggen, to put (lay).</td>
<td>ik leg, I put.</td>
<td>ik legde, I put.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>doen, to put (do).</td>
<td>ik doe, I put.</td>
<td>ik deed, I put.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bouwen, to build.</td>
<td>ik bouw, I build.</td>
<td>ik bouwde, I built.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laten, to leave (let).</td>
<td>ik laat, I leave.</td>
<td>ik liet, I left.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zetten, to put (place).</td>
<td>ik zet, I put.</td>
<td>ik zette, I put.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bedekken, to cover.</td>
<td>ik bedek, I cover.</td>
<td>ik bedekte, I covered.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Present.</th>
<th>Imperfect.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ik heb (had) gegraven, I have (had) dug.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ik heb (had) gelegd, I have (had) put.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ik heb (had) gedaan, I have (had) put.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ik heb (had) gebouwd, I have (had) built.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ik heb (had) gelaten, I have (had) left.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ik heb (had) gezet, I have (had) put.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ik heb (had) bedekt, I have (had) covered.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Observations:—

The Verb “to put” is differently translated, according to the nature of the action. This will be more fully explained later on. The student should notice that (1) placing in a lying position (like a stone on its broad, flat side) is “leggen”; (2) placing in an upright position (like the principals of a roof) is “zetten,” while “to put” with reference to liquids is mostly translated by “doen”.

The second person singular “u” takes the same form of the Verb as the third person singular “hij” requiring a “t” after the Verb-stem in the Indicative Present.

VERB EXERCISE.

Present.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Present.</th>
<th>Imperfect.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ik graaf, I dig.</td>
<td></td>
<td>ik groef, I dug.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u graaft, you dig.</td>
<td></td>
<td>u groef, you dug.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hij graaft, he digs.</td>
<td></td>
<td>hij groef, he dug.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Perfect.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Present.</th>
<th>Imperfect.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ik heb gegraven, I have dug.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u heeft gegraven, you have dug</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hij heeft gegraven, he has dug</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Pluperfect.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Present.</th>
<th>Imperfect.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ik had gegraven, I had dug.</td>
<td></td>
<td>ik zal gegraven, I shall dig.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u had gegraven, you had dug.</td>
<td></td>
<td>u zal gegraven, you will dig.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hij had gegraven, he had dug.</td>
<td></td>
<td>hij zal gegraven, he will dig.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Future.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Present.</th>
<th>Imperfect.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Future Perfect.

*ik zal gegraven hebben*, I shall have dug.
*u zal gegraven hebben*, you will have dug.
*hij zal gegraven hebben*, he will have dug.

Observation.—In familiar speech (to inferiors, brothers, sisters, special friends, servants, pupils) *you* is translated *jij* instead of *u*. When speaking to parents, superiors, seniors, or strangers, *u* should be the only Pronoun used. Another form of *jij* is *je*, which is employed where there is no emphasis. The Possessive Pronoun to be used with "*u*" is *uw* (your), whereas with "*jij*" it is *jouw* (with emphasis) and *je* (without emphasis).

Subsequent Exercise.

Speak and write the sentences of Exercise No. 2 in the 1st, 2nd, and 3rd persons Singular of the six tenses of the Indicative Mood.

Do the same with the sentences of Exercise No. 1.

The Interrogative Form.

The sentences given in the above Speak-and-Act Exercises may be turned into questions by placing the Pronoun after its Verb.

Exercise 1.

1. *Ga ik naar de tuin?*
2. *Zet ik een boom in het gat?*
3. *Tap ik water uit de kraan?*
4. *Zet ik een boom in het gat?*
5. *Wordt de boom zo geplant?*

Exercise 2.

1. *Graaf ik sloten voor het fondament?*
2. *Laat ik gaten voor deuren en vensters?*
3. *Wordt het huis zo gebouwd?*

Speak all the sentences, given or derived, in the Interrogative form.
THE NEGATIVE FORM.

Singular.

Assertive Sentence:—Ik neem de graaf.

Negative Sentence:—Ik neem niet de graaf
     Ik neem de graaf niet.

Assertive Sentence:—Ik neem een graaf.

Negative Sentence:—Ik neem geen graaf.

Singular and Plural.

Assertive Sentence:—Ik bouw het huis.

Negative Sentence:—Ik bouw niet het huis.
     Ik bouw het huis niet.

Assertive Sentence:—Ik bouw de huizen.

Negative Sentence:—Ik bouw niet de huizen.
     Ik bouw de huizen niet.

Observation.—As shown above, the Negative form of an Assertive sentence may be rendered in two ways according to the emphasis of the speaker's words. Where the Indefinite Article "een" is used, the word "geen" is employed for "niet een", before Singular as well as Plural Nouns.

THE NEGATIVE-INTERROGATIVE FORM.

An Assertive sentence is put into the Negative-Interrogative form by rendering it Negative, and then placing the Pronoun after the Verb, as, for example:

Assertive:—Ik leg de balken op de muren.

Interrogative:—Leg ik de balken op de muren?

Negative:—Ik leg de balken niet op de muren.

Negative-Int.:—Leg ik de balken niet op de muren?
EXERCISE II.

1.

*Fill up the blanks with single or double a:*


2.

*Fill up the blanks with single or double u:*

Gedurende die paaruren hadden wij heel wat te verduren van onze buren. Het geregne weer heeft ons belet, de meid om vruchten te sturen. De mussen en zwaluwen zijn nooit stille naburen. Hir een rijtuig voor een uur en vraag hoe duur het zal komen. De dunne stof is niet zelden grover dan coarse.
en r—we. U zal —w st—rse k—ren eenmaal.
and rough. You will (for) your sour moods once
bez—ren. Geen m—ren verd—ren der —ren geweld.
sorry be. No walls endure of the hours (the) force.

3.

*Fill up the blanks with single or double e:*

Niet t— l—v—n om t— —t—n, maar t— —t—n om
Not to live for to eat, but to eat for
t— l—v—n, is —n guld—n r—g—l. In d—
to live, is a golden rule. In the
Midd—l—uw—n l—fd—n d— —d—l—n in trots—
Middle Ages lived the nobles in proud
kast—l—n. Ond—r h—t sp—l—n bl—k h—t, dat er
castles. During the playing appeared it that there
v—l ont—vr—d—n—n war—n. De sch—p—n van de
many discontented (ones) were. The ships of the
z—var—nd— mog—ndh—d—n —v—nar—n —lkand—r
sea-faring powers, vie with each other
in st—rkt—. —cht— witt— b—r—n word—n all—n in
in strength. Real white bears are only in
koud— str—k—n aang—troll—n. K—m—l—n kam—l
cold regions found. Camel and camel
zijn nam—n m—t g—lijk— b—t—k—nis.
are names with like meaning.

4.

*Fill up the blanks with single or double o:*

Wie —ren heeft —m te h—ren, die h—re. L—pend —f
Who ears has (for) to hear, let him hear. Flowing or
str—mend water is het gez—ndst. De vr—like spr—ngen
running water is (the) wholesomest. The merry antics
van de eekh-rntjes in de h-ge b-men vermaakten — ns of the squirrels in the high trees amused us allen. Hoe k—mt het, dat de g—ten z— slecht l—pen: all. How comes it, that the gutters so badly run:
wat kan de —raak zijn van zulk een d—rl—pended what can the cause be of such a persistent verst—pping? De d—rn heeft de —pen w—nd —nst—ken obstruction? The thorn has the open wound inflamed.
Gel—f hem niet weer; —p mijn w—rd u beh—rt hem Believe him not any more; upon my word you ought him niet te gel—ven. Abrik—zen, framb—zen en st—fperen not to trust. Apricots, raspberries and stewing pears zijn —verheerlike vruchten.
are delicious fruits.

5.

*Fill up the blanks with ei or ij:*

Z—n r—s langs de R—n heeft h— in v—f weken ten His trip along the Rhine has he in five weeks to (an) —nde gebracht. R—ne vreugde en ware bl—dschap end brought. Pure joy and true gladness kunnen b—de in pal—zen en hutten gesmaakt worden. can both in palaces and huts enjoyed be.

W— ber—kten de top van de berg juist b—t—ds, om de We reached the top of the mountain just in time. (for) the zon boven de gezicht—nder te zien r—zen. M—d vl—taal: sun above the horizon to see rise. Shun flattery:
h— voert meestent—ds tot v—nzr—. Tot zulke it leads mostly to hypocrisy. Of such r—melar— is h—evenmin in staat, als het p—nzend br—n had verses is he as little capable as the pensive brain van z—n vader tot het voortbrengen van dergel—ke of his father of the production of suchlike zottern—.

foolery.
Spelling of Compound Nouns.

XII. Most compounds combine their constituent parts without altering the form of either part, causing them to appear as one word, no hyphens being used: *stal* and *deur* form *staldeur*, stable-door; *schroef* and *draaier* form *schroefdraaier*, screw-driver.

In some cases, however, slight changes in the first part of the compound may be noticed:

1. If the first part ends in *e*, this *e* is generally dropped; *aarde* and *appel*, form *aardappel*, potato.

2. Principally to facilitate pronunciation, some words (mostly Verb stems) drop their final *d* when compounded: *rijtoer*, from *rijdotoer*, drive; *zijraam*, from *zijdraam*, side-window; *leiband*, from *leidband*, leading-strings.

3. Nouns taking the double plural ending *ers* or *eren*, drop the additional *s* or *en*, and retain the original plural form in *er* when compounded: *hoendcrhok*, fowl-house; *eiermand*, egg-basket.

4. The first part of a compound frequently takes the letter *s* either (a) as a sign of the genitive case, or (b) to bring out a plural meaning, or (c) for the sake of euphony.

**Examples:**

(a) *Timmermansgereedschap*, carpenter’s tools; *bruidskled*, bridal dress; *dorpskerk*, village church.

(b) *Meisjeskleren*, girls’ clothing; *jongensboek*, book for boys.

(c) *Schiedsrechter*, arbiter; *schutsheer*, protector.

**Note.**—In words where the letter *s* denoting a plural is followed by the initial *s* of another word, it is dropped; e.g. *meisjes* and *school* form *meisjeschool*. 
5. Other compound forms join their two parts together by e. This letter originally represented a singular meaning, but is now accepted as representing a plural as well. *Paardestaart*, therefore, representing in the first part of the compound an evident singular, and *boekekast*, representing an evident plural, both have e.

**SPEAK-AND-ACT EXERCISE No. 3.**

[Exercises 1 and 2 repeated in Plural Form.]

**EXERCISE 1.**

1. *Wij gaan naar de tuin.* We go to the garden.
2. *Wij nemen een graaf in onze hand.* We take a spade in our hand.
3. *Wij spitten een gat in de grond.* We dig a hole in the ground.
4. *Wij zetten een boom in het gat.* We put a tree into the hole.
5. *Wij vullen het gat met grond.* We fill the hole with soil.
6. *Wij trappen de grond vast.* We tread the soil down.
7. *Wij halen een gieter.* We fetch a watering-can.
8. *Wij tappen water uit de kraan.* We draw water from the tap.
9. *Wij gooien het water bij de boom.* We throw the water round the tree.
10. *Zo wordt de boom geplant.* So the tree is planted.

**More Plurals introduced.**

1. *Wij gaan naar de tuinen* We go to the gardens.
2. *Wij nemen graven in onze handen.* We take spades in our hands.
3. *Wij spitten gaten in de grond.* We dig holes in the ground.
4. Wij zetten bomen in de gaten.
   We put trees into the holes.
5. Wij vullen de gaten met grond.
   We fill the holes with soil.
6. Wij trappen de grond vast.
   We tread the soil down.
7. Wij halen gieters.
   We fetch watering-cans.
8. Wij tappen water uit de kranen.
   We draw water from the taps.
9. Wij gooien water bij de bomen.
   We throw water round the trees.
10. Zo worden de bomen geplant.
    So the trees are planted.

TO BE MEMORISED:

Wij gaan, zij gaan.
We go, they go.
Wij nemen, zij nemen.
We take, they take.
Wij spitten, zij spitten.
We dig, they dig.

Observations:—All the plural Person-forms of the Indicative Present take the form of the Infinitive Verb. When, however, gij or u is employed for the Pronoun 2nd Pers. Plur. the Verb takes the form of the 2nd Pers. Sing. Notice that jullie, you, is familiar, u, you, polite, and gij, you, employed in pulpit language.

The 2nd sentence should read: Zij nemen graven in hun handen—when the 3rd person Plural is employed.

Verb Exercise.

Imperfect—Plural.

Wij gingen, we went.
Wij namen, we took.
Wij spitten, we dug.
Wij zetten, we put.
Gij (u) vuidet, you filled.
Gij (u) haaldet, you fetched.
Gij (u) taptet, you drew.

Jullie gingen, you went.
Jullie namen, you took.
Jullie spitten, you dug.
Jullie zetten, you put.
Zij haalden, they fetched.
Zij taptcn, they drew.
Zij gooiden, they filled.

Perfect—Plural.

Wij (zij) zijn gegaan, we (they) have gone.
Wij (zij) hebben genomen, we (they) have taken.
Wij (zij) hebben gespit, we (they) have dug.
Wij (zij) hebben gezet, we (they) have put.
De bomen zijn geworden, the trees have been.
Pluperfect—Plural.

Wij (zij) waren gegaan, we (they) had gone.
Wij (zij) hadden genomen, we (they) had taken.
Wij (zij) hadden gespit, we (they) had dug.
Wij (zij) hadden gezet, we (they) had put.

Future—Plural.

Wij (zij) zullen gaan, we shall (they will) go.
Wij (zij) zullen nemen, we shall (they will) take.
Wij (zij) zullen spitten, we shall (they will) dig.
De bomen zullen worden, the trees will be.

Future Perfect—Plural.

Wij (zij) zullen geïn voeg zijn, we shall (they will) have gone.
Wij (zij) zullen gebouwd hebben, we shall (they will) have taken.
Wij (zij) zullen gespit hebben, we shall (they will) have dug.
De bomen zullen geërf worden, the trees will have been.

Observation:—Verbs expressing change of place (like gaan) form their compound tenses by the help of the Verb “zijn”, which is “to be”, though in English “to have” is translated for it.

Exercise 2.

1. Wij graven sloten voor de fondamenten. We dig trenches for the foundations.
2. Wij leggen stenen in de sloten. We put stones into the trenches.
3. Wij doen cement tussen de stenen. We put cement between the stones.
4. Wij bouwen muren op de fondamenten. We build walls on the foundations.
5. Wij laten gaten voor deuren en vensters. We leave holes for doors and windows.
6. Wij leggen balken over de muren. We lay beams across the walls.
7. Wij zetten kappen op de balken. We put principals upon the beams.
8. Wij leggen sparren over de kappen. We put rafters across the principals.
9. Wij bedekken de daken met pannen. We cover the roofs with tiles.
10. Zo worden de huizen gebouwd. So the houses are built.
SPELLING

VERB EXERCISE.

Imperfect—Plural.

Wij groeven, we dug, zij groeven, they dug.
Wij legden, we put, zij legden, they put.
Wij deden, we put, zij deden, they put.
Wij bouwden, we built, zij bouwden, they built.
Wij lieten, we left, zij lieten, they left.
Wij zetten, we put, zij zetten, they put.
Wij bedekten, we covered, zij bedekten, they covered.

De huizen werden, the houses were.

Perfect—Plural.

Wij (zij) hebben gegraven, gelegd, gedaan, gebouwd, gelaten,
We (they) have dug, put, put, built, left,
gezet, bedekt.
put, covered.

Pluperfect—Plural.

Wij (zij) hadden gegraven, gelegd, gedaan, gebouwd, gelaten,
We (they) had dug, put, put, built, left,
gezet, bedekt.
put, covered.

Future—Plural.

Wij (zij) zullen graven, leggen, doen, bouwen, laten, zetten,
We shall (they will) dig, put, put, build, leave, put,
bedekken.
cover.

Future Perfect—Plural.

Wij (zij) zullen gegraven, gelegd, gedaan, gebouwd, gelaten,
We shall (they will) have dug, put, put, built, left,
gezet, bedekt hebben.
put, covered.

READING EXERCISE.

Wanneer wij een huis willen bouwen, graven wij eerst
When we a house wish (to) build, dig we first
sloten voor de fundamenten. In die sloten worden stenen
trenches for the foundations. In those trenches are stones
gelegd. Sommige stenen zijn rond en andere vierkant. Een
laid. Some stones are round and others square. A
KONVERSATIE.

1. Heeft u wel eens een boom geplant?
   
2. O ja, bij verschillende gelegenheden.
   
3. Wil u mij een van die gelegenheden opnoemen?
   
4. Eenmaal plantte ik een boom op de verjaardag van mijn moeder.
   
5. Die boom is misschien al groot?
   
6. Ja, waarlijk, en er is de hele dag schaduw onder.
   
7. Zou dat geen goed plekje zijn voor een tuinbank?
   
8. Er staat een heerlijke tuinbank onder met een tafeltje ertussen.
   
9. Wat soort van boom mag dat wel zijn?
   
10. ’t Is een soort cypres met zware stam.

CONVERSATION.

Have you ever planted a tree?

Oh yes, on several occasions

Will you mention one of those occasions?

Once I planted a tree on my mother’s birthday.

That tree must be fully grown by this time?

Yes, indeed, and all day there is shade under it.

Would that not be a good spot for a garden seat?

There is a delightful seat under it with a table in front of it.

What kind of tree may it be?

It is a kind of cypress tree with a heavy trunk.
CHAPTER III.

PARTS OF SPEECH.

(Rededelen.)

There are ten classes of words, called Rededelen, Parts of Speech.

They are: 1. Het Zelfstandig Naamwoord, the Noun Substantive; 2. Het Lidwoord, the Article, or Distinguishing Adjective; 3. Het Bijvoegelijk Naamwoord, the Adjective; 4. Het Voornaamwoord, the Pronoun; 5. Het Telwoord, the Numeral Adjective; 6. Het Werkwoord, the Verb; 7. Het Bijwoord, the Adverb; 8. Het Voegwoord, the Conjunction; 9. Het Voorzetsel, the Preposition; 10. Het Tussenwerpsel, the Interjection.

The Article.

(Het Lidwoord.)

I. Articles (Lidwoorden) are words placed before a Noun to indicate whether the Noun has a definite or an indefinite meaning.

II. There are two Articles: the Definite Article, het Bepalende Lidwoord, and the Indefinite Article, het Niet-Bepalende Lidwoord.

III. There are two Definite Articles, de and het, which are used with Nouns in accordance with ancient Gender-distinctions, de standing for the Masculine and Feminine, and het for the Neuter Gender.
In order to be able to understand the literature of Holland, students ought to make themselves familiar with these distinctions, though no longer observing them themselves.

Nouns are, under the system of Simplified Grammar, merely divided unto two classes, one class being used with the Definite Article *de*, and hence called *De*-words; and the other being used with the Definite Article *het*, and hence called *Het*-words. Under the new system both these Articles are indeclinable, the abbreviated form *'t* being largely used for *het*, and *de* for the Plural of both. In connection with the choice of these Articles, no gender-distinctions are any longer observed.

The Indefinite Article has but one form, viz. "een" for all Nouns.

Important Observation.—Obsolete Declensions.

Formerly both the Definite and Indefinite Articles were declinable, appearing under different forms for the expression of Grammatical Gender, Number, and Case. Their various forms may be seen from the following Declensions:

Masculine—*Mannelijk*.

### SINGULAR.

*(Enkelvoud).*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th><em>de man</em>, the man.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td><em>des mans</em> (or <em>van den man</em>), of the man.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td><em>den man</em> (or <em>aan den man</em>), to the man.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td><em>den man</em>, the man.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### PLURAL.

*(Meervoud).*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th><em>de mannen</em>, the men.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td><em>der mannen</em> (<em>van de mannen</em>), of the men.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td><em>den mannen</em> (or <em>aan de mannen</em>), to the men.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td><em>de mannen</em>, the men.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### SINGULAR.

*(Enkelvoud).*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th><em>een man</em>, a man.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td><em>een mans</em> (<em>van een man</em>), of a man.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td><em>eenen man</em> (or <em>aan eenen man</em>), to a man.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td><em>eenen man</em>, a man.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### PLURAL.

*(Meervoud).*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td><em>aan mannen</em>, to men.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The following rules regulate the correct use, repetition, and omission of the article.

1. Nouns may reject the Article, when such omission causes no ambiguity: De koeien, paarden en schapen zijn alle verkocht, the cows, horses, and sheep have all been sold.
2. The Article must always be left out before the second of two nouns referring to one and the same person: *Hij werd de vriend en verzorger van die arme kinderen*, he became the friend and guardian of those poor children.

3. The Definite Article is left out after the words *alle*, all, and *beide*, both: *Alle mensen moeten sterven*, all men must die; *Beide vogels zijn ontsnapt*, both the birds have escaped.

4. It is customary to repeat the Article: (1) If one Noun is singular and the other plural: *De moeder en de dochters zijn heden aangekomen*, the mother and the daughters arrived today; (2) In emphatic expressions: *Beide de goeden en de kwaden zullen er onder lijden*, both the good and the bad will suffer by it.

5. The Article is omitted before the names of professions: *De jongen wil timmerman worden*, the boy wants to be a carpenter.

Note.—Poets often make use of the abbreviated form *d’* for *de* before Nouns beginning with a vowel:

"*D’ oncindighheid in ’t eindig, stoff’lik hulsel;*  
*De Godd’likheit in ’t zondig, mens’lik viees.*"

V. The Article is required in Dutch where it is not used in English:

1. With Nouns representing a class:—

Man is mortal, *de mens* is *sterfelik*.  
The language of animals, *de taal van de dieren*.

2. Before the names of:—

Meals:—We were at breakfast, *wij zaten aan het ontbijt*.  
Diseases:—He has had small-pox, *hij heeft de pokken gehad*.  
Seasons:—Spring is a happy time, *de lente is een vrolike tijd*. 
Streets:—He lives in Burg Street, *hij woont in de Burgstraat*.

Mountains:—We ascended Table Mountain, *wij klommen de Tafelberg op*.

Religious sects:—He was converted to Christianity, *hij werd tot het Christendom bekeerd*.

Arts and sciences:—He studies history, *hij bestudeert de geschiedenis*.

3. Before Proper Nouns preceded by Adjectives:—

Little Charles is ill, *de kleine Karel is ziek*.

4. Before Abstract Nouns when taken in their whole extent:—


In some colloquial expressions Nouns occurring after Prepositions reject the Article both in English and Dutch. The instances do not always correspond in the two languages:

**Rejection in Dutch but not in English:** *naar land*, to the land; *naar wal*, to the shore; *naar stal*, to the stable; *op stal*, in the stable; *op straat*, in the street; *op zolder*, on the loft; *op zee*, on the sea; *in huis*, in the house; *met toestemming*, with the consent; *op belofte*, on the promise; *op aanbod*, on the offer.

**Rejection in English but not in Dutch:** *naar de gevangenis*, to prison; *naar de kerk*, to church; *naar het hof*, to court; *in de kerk*, in church.
Rejection in both languages: naar school, to school; naar zee, to sea; naar bed, to bed; op school, at school; in bed, in bed; te paard, on horseback; te voet, on foot; te huis (thuis), at home; per trein, by train; op borgtocht, on bail; op aanvraag, on application.

Observation.—There is a tendency observable in South Africa in favour of augmenting the number of these instances. One hears people say: ik ga naar kerk, I am going to church; hij is crean op hoogte, he is fully informed about it. Though the tendency may not be directly reprehensible, it tends to widen the gap existing between the Dutch of Holland and that of South Africa.

TRANSLATION EXERCISE No. 1.

Note.—All Nouns are distinguished as de-words or het-words.

1.

bird, vogel (de)  
cupboard, kast (de)  
room, kamer (de)  
cage, kooi (de)  
sun, zon (de)  
garden, tuin (de)  
stable, stal (de)  
table, tafel (de)  
stick, stok (de)  
lion, leeuw (de)  
sky, lucht (de)  
book, boek (het)  
house, huis (het)  
forest, woud (het)  
pencil, potlood (het)  
lamb, lam (het)  
plate, bord (het)  
is, is.  
large, groot.  
mine, van mij.  
in, in.  
broken, stuk.  
on, op.  
small, klein.

The bird is in the cage. The plate is in the cupboard. The pencil is on the table. The book is mine. The sun is in the sky. The house is in the garden. The house is small, the garden is large. The stick is broken. The lamb is in the stable. The lion is in the forest. The pencil is in the cupboard. The lamb is in the garden. The cupboard is in the room. The pencil is in the room. The plate is small; the table is large.

2.

bonnet, hoed (de)  
umbrella, paraplu (de)  
street, straat (de)  
cap, muts (de)  
door, deur (de)  
horse, paard (het)  
carriage, rijtuig (het)  
child, kind (het)  
not a, geen.  
ever, nooit.  
often, dikwels.  
warm, warm.
A stable and a horse. A carriage and a wheel. A carriage is expensive. A wheel is round. A bonnet and a cap. A bonnet is not a cap. A hat and a stick. Is an umbrella never red? The child is ill. The dog is often in my study. The house is in (the) Humbert Street. It is always warm in (the) summer.

3.

The cage of the bird. The bonnet of the mother. The wheel of the carriage. The child’s cap (cap of the child). The door of the stable. The pencil of the boy. The boy’s umbrella. The door of the study is small. The window of the room is large. The street of the town is long. The heat of the summer is great. The tree of the forest is high. The wheel of the carriage is round.

4.

The mother’s umbrella (the umbrella of the mother) is broken. The lion’s paw is sore. The page of the book is dirty. The sun’s beam is long. The boy’s hat is dirty. The bird’s cage is not round. The mother’s child is often ill. The door of the cupboard is small. The sun is hot in (the) summer. The child is always ill in (the) winter. The hat of the boy is on the table. The book is on the table in the study. The horse in the stable is mine.
SPEAK-AND-ACT EXERCISE No. 4.

De lamp aansteken.—To light the lamp.

1. *Ik neem de kap van de lamp af.* I take the shade from the lamp.
2. *Ik haal ook het glas af.* I remove the chimney also.
3. *Ik draai met de schroef dc pit op.* I turn up the wick with the screw.
4. *Ik strik een lucifer aan.* I strike a match.
5. *Ik houd de vlam bij dc pit.* I hold the flame to the wick.
6. *Ik blaas even in het glas.* I just blow into the chimney.
7. *Ik zet het glas weer op de lamp.* I put the chimney back on the lamp.
8. *Ik schroef de pit wat af.* I turn (screw) the wick down a little.
9. *Ik zet de kap voorzichtig op.* I put the shade on carefully.
10. *Zo wordt de lamp aange-stoken.* So the lamp is lit.

**Observation.—**Some Compound Verbs are introduced here, the parts of which remain separate as shown in the above sentences, except in the Past Participles which occur in Compound Tenses.

**TO BE MEMORISED:**

*Ik neem af,* I take off.  
*jij (u, hij) neemt af,* you take (he takes) off.  
*ik haal af,* I remove.  
*jij (u, hij) haalt af,* you remove (he removes).  
*ik draai op,* I turn up.  
*jij (u, hij) draait op,* you turn (he turns) up.
PARTS OF SPEECH

VERB EXERCISE.

Infinitive. Present. Imperfect.

afnemen, to take off. ik noem af, I take off. ik nam af, I took off.
afhalen, to remove. ik haal af, I remove. ik haalde af, I removed.
opdraaien, to turn up. ik draai op, I turn up. ik draaidde op, I turned up.
aanstrijken, to strike. ik strijk aan, I strike. ik streek aan, I struck.
houden, to hold. ik houd, I hold. ik hield, I held.
blazen, to blow. ik blaas, I blow. ik blies, I blew.
opzetten, to put on. ik zet op, I put on. ik zette op, I put on.
afschroeven, to screw down. ik schroef af, I screw down. ik schroefde af, I screwed down.
aansteken, to light. ik steek aan, I light. ik stak aan, I lit.

Perfect and Pluperfect.

ik heb (had) afgenomen, I have (had) taken off.
ik heb (had) afgehaald, I have (had) removed.
ik heb (had) opgedraaid, I have (had) turned up.
ik heb (had) aangestreken, I have (had) struck.
ik heb (had) gehouden, I have (had) held.
ik heb (had) geblazen, I have (had) blown.
ik heb (had) opgezet, I have (had) put on.
ik heb (had) afgeschroefd, I have (had) screwed down.
ik heb (had) aangestoken, I have (had) lit.

Future.

Ik zal afnemen, afhalen, opdraaien, aanstrijken, houden, I shall take off, remove, turn up, strike, hold,
blazen, opzetten, afschroeven, aansteken.
blow, put on, screw down, light.

Future Perfect.

Ik zal afgenomen, afgehaald, opgedraaid, aangestreken, ge-
houden, geblazen, opgezet, afgeschroefd, aangestoken hebben.
held, blown, put on, screwed down, lit.
SUBSEQUENT EXERCISES.

1. All the sentences of Exercise No. 4 may now be spoken (and written) in all the Persons of all the Tenses of the Indicative Mood. This should be done.

The students will be perfectly guided by the following three sentences, one with a Simple Verb, one with a Compound Verb, and one (the concluding one) because of its peculiar construction (Passive Voice).

Present.

5. Ik houd de vlam bij de pit. 5. Ik hield de vlam bij de pit.
8. Ik schroefde de pit wat af. 8. Ik schroefde de pit wat af.
10. Zo wordt de lamp aangestoken. 10. Zo werd de lamp aangestoken.

Imperfect.

5. Ik heb de ... gehouden. 5. Ik had de ... gehouden.
8. Ik heb de ... afgeschroefd. 8. Ik had de ... afgeschroefd.
10. Zo is de ... aangestoken geworden. 10. Zo was de ... aangestoken geworden.

Perfect.

5. Ik heb de ... gehouden. 5. Ik had de ... gehouden.
8. Ik heb de ... afgeschroefd. 8. Ik had de ... afgeschroefd.
10. Zo is de ... aangestoken geworden. 10. Zo was de ... aangestoken geworden.

Future.

5. Ik zal de ... houden. 5. Ik zal de ... gehouden hebben.
8. Ik zal de ... afgeschroeven. 8. Ik zal de ... afgeschroefd hebben.
10. Zo zal de ... aangestoken worden. 10. Zo zal de ... aangestoken geworden zijn.

2. Speak and write all the sentences (1) in the Interrogative form, (2) in the Negative form, (3) in the Negative-Interrogative form.

READING EXERCISE.

[Made up of the above—in story-form.]

Mijn moeder zei mij dat ik de lamp in de voorkamer moest aansteken. Ik ging daarom naar de voorkamer met should light. I went therefore to the parlour with
een doos lucifers in mijn hand. Daar stond de grote, a box (of) matches in my hand. There stood the large, nieuwe lamp in de hoek op een zijtafel. Ik ging er heen, new lamp in the corner on a side table. I went to it.
en nam er eerst de kap af. Toen haalde ik er het glas and took first the shade off. Then removed I the chimney ook af. Ik streek een lucifer aan en maakte zo een vlam. also. I struck a match and made thus a flame.
De vlam bracht ik bij de pit tot hij vlam vatte. Toen The flame brought I to the wick till it fire caught. Then draaidde ik de pit wat af, want de vlam was te hoog. turned I the wick a little down, for the flame was too high.
Daarna blies ik in het glas om het warm te maken. After that blew I into the glass (for) it warm to make.
Vlug zette ik het glas op de brander, en maakte de pit quickly put I the chimney on the burner, and made the wick weer wat hoger. Ten laatste zette ik de kap weer again (a) little higher. Finally put I the shade again voorzichtig op, en daarmee was mijn werk gedaan. carefully on, and with this was my work done.

KONVERSATIE.

Tijd.

1. Hoe laat is het?
2. Het is tien uur.
3. Het is kwart voor vijf.
4. Het is half-zeven.
5. Het is tien minuten over acht.
6. Hoe laat staat u op?
7. Ik ben altijd op tegen zes uur.
8. Hoe laat ontbijt u?
10. Tegen twee uur zal ik bij u aankomen.

CONVERSATION.

Time.

What time is it?
It is ten o'clock.
It is a quarter to five.
It is half past six.
It is ten minutes past eight.

What time do you rise?
I am always up by six o'clock.

What time do you take breakfast?
We never take breakfast later than eight o'clock.
I shall call on you about two o'clock.
11. De stoomboot vertrekt om twaalf uur vandaag.

12. Gaan zij iedere dag naar school?


15. Mijn verjaardag valt in de volgende maand.

16. Wij hebben reeds veertien dagen op u gewacht.

17. Kom over drie dagen terug.

18. Mijn vader is juist vijftig jaar oud.

19. De zon gaat in de winter laat op.

20. De zon gaat in de winter vroeg onder.


22. Wij begonnen onze reis vóór het aanzetten van de dag.

23. Toen ik een half uur weg was, kwam mijn broeder thuis.

24. De veldslag werd de zevendienstigste Maart geleverd.

25. Ik verjaar op de laatste Februarie.

26. Londen, 2 Mei 1884.

27. Na mijn dood zal u alles duidelijk worden.

28. Overmorgen hoop ik u weer te zien.

29. Ik ben verzegd en genomen.

30. Is u te laat aan de trein gekomen?

31. Ik was juist bijtijds, maar de trein was te vroeg.
I. The endings of the plural in Dutch are *s* (’*s*), *en*, *n*, and *ers* (*eren*).

II. In *s* ends—

1. The Plural of all *Diminutives*: *huisjes*, small houses; *boompjes*, small trees; *deurtjes*, small doors.

2. The Plural of words of more than one syllable ending in *el*, *em*, *en*, *er*, *aar*, *ier*, and *aard*: *eikels*, acorns; *bezems*, brooms; *varkens*, pigs; *blakers*, candlesticks; *handelaars*, merchants; *winkeliers*, shopkeepers; *veinzaards*, hypocrites.

3. The Plural of *foreign words* used in Dutch, except when they end in *a*, *o*, or *u*: *bals*, balls (dances); *datums*, dates; *dames*, ladies; *horloges*, watches; *tantes*, aunts.

Note.—Words are regarded as “foreign”, which have not either through long use, or through change of spelling, been incorporated with the language as Dutch words.

III. In *’s* end the Plural forms of all *foreign words* which retain their original spelling, and end in *a*, *o*, or *u*: *massa*, mass, *massa’s*; *echo*, echo, *echo’s*; *paraplui*, umbrella, *paraplui’s*; *cadeau*, present, *cadcau’s*. 
IV. In *en* ends the Plural of—

1. All Dutch monosyllables, with the exception of the following:

   Ra, pl. raas, mast-yard; via, pl. vlaas, custard; kok, pl. koks, male cook; oom, pl. ooms, uncle; maat, pl. maats, comrade; man, pl. mans, husband; knecht, pl. knechts, male servant; zoon, pl. zoons, son.

2. All Dutch words of more than one syllable which do not fall under rule IV. 2, as:

   Avonturen, adventures; advokaten, advocates; presenten, presents; figuren, figures; rivieren, rivers.

3. Words ending in *ee* and *ie*, with a diæresis on the *e* of the plural ending; rce, roe; reëen; zee, sea, zeeën; idee, idea, ideën; knie, knee, knieën; koupe, copy, kopieën; lelie, lily, lelieën.

V. In *n* ends the Plural of—

1. All Dutch words ending in *e* mute: gedaante, shape, gedaanten; ziekte, illness, zieken; hoogte, eminence, hoogten.

Note.—South African Dutch commonly changes this *n* into an *s*.

VI. Either in *s* or *en* ends the Plural of some words in *el*, *er*, *en*, *em*, and of many derivatives in *aar*, *or*, *eur*, and those in *ier*, which express the names of persons.

Examples: vogels, birds; bezems, brooms; dienaars, servants; directeurs, directors; officiers, officers; professoren, professors; or vogclen, bezemen, officieren, etc.

Note 1.—Of some words allowing of both endings, only the form in *s* is colloquial: *liric vogels vliegen boven ons huis*, three birds are flying above our house; *De vogclen des hemels hebben nesten*, the fowls of the air have nests. The latter expression is Bible language.
FORMATION OF THE PLURAL

VII. The double plural ending *ers* or *eren* is adopted by the following Nouns, all being *het*-words:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>FIRST MEANING</th>
<th>SECOND MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>been,</td>
<td>beenen, legs.</td>
<td>beendenen, bones.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blad,</td>
<td>bladen, leaves of books.</td>
<td>bladeren, leaves of trees.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deken,</td>
<td>dekens, blankets.</td>
<td>dekenen, deacons.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heiden,</td>
<td>heidenen, gispa.</td>
<td>heidenen, heathen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hemel,</td>
<td>hemelen, canopies.</td>
<td>hemelen, heavens.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kleed,</td>
<td>kleden, carpets.</td>
<td>klederen, clothes.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: This double ending is not an original one. As in German, so also in Dutch, the Plural of Neuter Nouns was formerly formed by *er*. To this plural ending it became customary to add the endings used for the other genders, viz., *s* and *cn*, which custom has created the double forms *ers* and *eren*, now in use. In compound words the old ending *er* still expresses a real plural: *kinderkamer*, nursery; *hoenderhok*, fowl-house; *eiermand*, egg-basket.

The old Plural is used with a singular meaning in *spaander*, chip, and in the Cape Dutch forms *een hoender*, a fowl; *een eier*, an egg.

VIII. Some homonymous words bring out their different meanings in the plural. Such are—
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>First Plural</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Second Plural</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>knecht</td>
<td>knechts</td>
<td>man-servants</td>
<td>knechten,*</td>
<td>slaves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>letter</td>
<td>letters</td>
<td>letters.</td>
<td>letteren,</td>
<td>literature.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lidmaat</td>
<td>lidmaten</td>
<td>members (of ledematen, a church).</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>man</td>
<td>mans</td>
<td>husbands.</td>
<td>mannen,</td>
<td>men.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>middel</td>
<td>middels</td>
<td>waists.</td>
<td>middelen,</td>
<td>means.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reden</td>
<td>redens</td>
<td>ratios.</td>
<td>redenen,</td>
<td>reasons.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rif</td>
<td>riffen</td>
<td>cliffs.</td>
<td>reven,</td>
<td>reefs of a sail.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spol</td>
<td>spellen</td>
<td>booths.</td>
<td>spelen,</td>
<td>games.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>studie</td>
<td>studies</td>
<td>sketches.</td>
<td>studieën,</td>
<td>studies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tafel</td>
<td>tafels</td>
<td>tables.</td>
<td>tafelen,</td>
<td>tables (of the law).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vader</td>
<td>vaders</td>
<td>fathers.</td>
<td>vaderen,</td>
<td>ancestors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teken</td>
<td>tecken</td>
<td>signs.</td>
<td>tekennen,</td>
<td>miracles.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wortel</td>
<td>wortels</td>
<td>roots.</td>
<td>wortelen,</td>
<td>carrots.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zoon</td>
<td>zoons</td>
<td>children of zonen, one family.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Note.—In composition knechten only should be used: krijgs-knechten, soldiers; dienstknechten, male servants.

IX. A few words have an Irregular Plural form:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>smid</th>
<th>smith</th>
<th>smeđen.</th>
<th>rif</th>
<th>reef</th>
<th>reven.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>split</td>
<td>slit</td>
<td>spletten.</td>
<td>lid</td>
<td>member,</td>
<td>leden.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stad</td>
<td>town</td>
<td>steden.</td>
<td>schip</td>
<td>ship,</td>
<td>schepen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vlo</td>
<td>flea</td>
<td>vlooien</td>
<td>koe</td>
<td>cow</td>
<td>koeien.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rede</td>
<td>speech</td>
<td>redenen.</td>
<td>zo</td>
<td>.sod,</td>
<td>zoöien.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note 1.—Smids, smiths, and zoden, sods, are likewise used.

Note 2.—The i in the plural forms of koe and vlo is the h of their German cognates. The singular form vlooit is current in Holland, and koei in South Africa.

Words ending in heid (old Dutch hede) take heden: waarheid, truth, waarheden; zaligheid, bliss, zaligheden.

Note.—This ending corresponds to the old English head: Godhead, Godheid; and the modern hood: childhood, kindsheid.
Words compounded with *man* commonly take the plural *lieden*, the colloquial form of which is *lui*: *timmerman*, carpenter, *timmerlieden* (*timmerlui*); *jonkman*, bachelor, *jongelieden* (*lui*). The plural *mans* or *mannen*, is, however, used as well.—*Engelsman*, Englishman, has *Engelsen*; likewise *Fransman*, Frenchman, *Fransen*. *Buurman*, neighbour, takes *buren*.

The plural of *armvol*, armful, and *handvol*, handful, is *armvollen* and *handvollen*. The English “spoonful” has no equivalent in Dutch: two spoonfuls—*twee lepels vol*.

The words *as*, ashes, *leven*, life, and *bod*, bid, are always used in the singular: *Hij heeft tweemaal een bod voor zijn huis gehad*, he has had two bids for his house. *Zij hebben er het leven bij verloren*, they have lost their lives in it. In composition, however, *leven* is used in the plural: *Het heeft veel menselevens gekost*, it has cost many lives.

X. The contents of the following table should be carefully noted:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>In Holland live the Hollander.</th>
<th>A Hollander speaks Hollands.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Engeland&quot; &quot;Engels&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;Engelsman&quot; &quot;Engels&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Schotland&quot; &quot;Schotten&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;Schot&quot; &quot;Engels&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Ierland&quot; &quot;Ieren&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;Ier&quot; &quot;Engels&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Frankrijk&quot; &quot;Fransen&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;Fransman&quot; &quot;Frans&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Duitsland&quot; &quot;Duitsers&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;Duitser&quot; &quot;Duits&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Pruisicn&quot; &quot;Pruiscn&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;Pruis&quot; &quot;Duits&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Zwitserland&quot; &quot;Zwitser&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;Zwitser&quot; &quot;Duits of Frans.&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Italië&quot; &quot;Italianen&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;Italiaan&quot; &quot;Italiëns&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Spanje&quot; &quot;Spanjaarden&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;Spanjaard&quot; &quot;Spaan&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Portugal&quot; &quot;Portugezen&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;Portugies&quot; &quot;Portugese&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;België&quot; &quot;Belgen&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;Belg&quot; &quot;Vlaams.&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Denemarken&quot; &quot;Denen&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;Deen&quot; &quot;Deens.&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Noorwegen&quot; &quot;Noorwegers&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;Noorweger&quot; &quot;Noorweges.&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Zweden&quot; &quot;Zweden&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;Zweed&quot; &quot;Zweeds.&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Rusland&quot; &quot;Russen&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;Rus&quot; &quot;Russies.&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Griekenland&quot; &quot;Grieken&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;Grick&quot; &quot;Grieks.&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


In Persia live the Persians. A Persian speaks Persian.

In India live the Indians. An Indian speaks Indian.

In Egypt live the Egyptians. An Egyptian speaks Egyptian.

In Kaffraria live the Kaffars. A Kaffer speaks Kaffer.

Observations.—Indiër is "Indian"; Indiaan is "red Indian". The people of Europa, Europe; Azië, Asia; Afrika, Africa; Amerika, America; Australië, Australia, are called Européan, European; Aziaat, Asiatic; Amerikan, American; Americans: Australiër, Australier, Australian; Afrikaan, Afrikaner, African.

The white inhabitants of South Africa are styled Afrikaners.

Those of Cape Colony in particular are often called Kapeenaars.

XI. The following words have no plural form:

1. Proper Nouns, except when they designate different individuals of the same family name: de Hugo's, members of the Hugo family.

2. Names of Materials, except when they express particular kinds, or certain specified quantities or pieces: wateren, rivers or seas; broden, loaves; zouten, chemicals; wijnen, kinds of wine.

3. Abstract Nouns, except when they express a variety: deugden, virtues; schoonheden, beauties; bevalligheden, graces; aangelegenheden, matters.

4. The following which, having no Plural form of their own, borrow that of synonymous words:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aanbod</td>
<td>aanbieding</td>
<td>offer,</td>
<td>aanbiedingen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bedrog</td>
<td>bedriegerij</td>
<td>deceit,</td>
<td>bedriegersen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beleg</td>
<td>belegering</td>
<td>siege,</td>
<td>belegeringen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>doel</td>
<td>doelcinde</td>
<td>purpose,</td>
<td>doelcinden.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eer</td>
<td>eerbewijs</td>
<td>honour,</td>
<td>eerbewijzen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gedrag</td>
<td>gedraging</td>
<td>conduct,</td>
<td>gedragingen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genot</td>
<td>genieting</td>
<td>pleasure,</td>
<td>genietingen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gevoel</td>
<td>gevoelen</td>
<td>feeling,</td>
<td>gevoelens.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5. The following expressions bring to light the use of Dutch Singular forms for English Plurals:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>geweld,</td>
<td>geweldenarij,</td>
<td>violence,</td>
<td>geweldenaarnijen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hoop,</td>
<td>verrwachtning,</td>
<td>hope,</td>
<td>verrwachtningen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inleg,</td>
<td>inlegje,</td>
<td>deposit,</td>
<td>inlagen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Krijg,</td>
<td>oorlog,</td>
<td>war,</td>
<td>oorlogen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kunde,</td>
<td>kundigheid,</td>
<td>knowledge,</td>
<td>kundigheden.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leer,</td>
<td>leren,</td>
<td>doctrine,</td>
<td>leringen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oordeel,</td>
<td>oordeelvelling,</td>
<td>judgment,</td>
<td>oordeelvellingen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>raad,</td>
<td>raadgering,</td>
<td>advice,</td>
<td>raadgevingen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>roof,</td>
<td>rovcrij,</td>
<td>robbery,</td>
<td>roverijen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spot,</td>
<td>spotterijn,</td>
<td>mocking,</td>
<td>spotterijen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strijd,</td>
<td>gevecht (twist),</td>
<td>fight,</td>
<td>gevechten (twisten).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>troost,</td>
<td>vertroosting,</td>
<td>consolation</td>
<td>vertroostingen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>twijfel,</td>
<td>twijfelingen,</td>
<td>doubt,</td>
<td>twijfelingen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verdrinkt,</td>
<td>verdrinkelijkheid,</td>
<td>sorrow,</td>
<td>verdrinkelijkheden.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zeg,</td>
<td>zeggen,</td>
<td>victory,</td>
<td>zegenen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zegen,</td>
<td></td>
<td>blessing,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Observation.—The last five sentences should receive special attention. Measure, number, weight, expense, also age, are only expressed by Singular words, that is, as long as those words are purely Dutch. It is correct to say: *Deze bank is drieël lang,* this bench is three yards long. It would be wrong to say otherwise. Yet, using the Eng. word “yard”, one would have to say: *Deze bank is drie yards lang.* Likewise: *Deze jas kost twintig guiden,* but: *dertig shillings.*
XII. The following words have no singular:

| Gebroeders, brothers (in a commercial firm). | Mazelen, measles. |
| Hersenen, brains. | Onkosten, expense. |
| Inkomsten, revenue. | Onlusten, disturbance. |
| Kolen, coal. | Ouders, parents. |
| Kosten, cost. | Pokken, small-pox. |
| Ledematen, limbs (of the body). | Toeberidselen, preparations. |
| Lieden, people. | Verzenen, heels. |
| Manen, mane. | Voorouders, ancestors. |
| Manieren, manners. | Zeden, customs. |

Also the names of several mountain ranges and groups of islands:

De Pyrereën, the Pyrenees; de Apenijnzen, the Apennines; de Azoren, the Azores; de Molukken, the Moluccas.

XIII. Diminutives—Verkleinwoorden.

Diminutives are extensively used in Dutch for the expression of the idea of smallness, inferiority, or pitiableness, or, generally, to bring out the notion that any object is diminished in any prominent attribute or quality. The use of these words is very common, so much so, indeed, that certain objects are never given their proper name except with the diminutive ending attached, as, for instance, meisje, girl, kopje, cup, schoteltje, saucer, baadje, jacket.

Diminutive forms will be fully treated of in the chapter on Etymology.

The principal Diminutive endings are: je, tje, etje, pje and kje.

The Plural of all Diminutive forms ends in “s”.

Je is used after words ending in t, k, f, s, ch, p, d, or g: hut, hutje, hut; tak, takje, branch; schaaf, schaafje,
FORMATION OF THE PLURAL

plane; vis, visje, fish; lach, lachje, laugh; schop, schopje, shovel; stad, stadje, town; dag, daagje, day.

Observation.—In these examples the meaning of the Diminutives would be as follows: a small hut, plane, fish; a twig (for branch); a smile (for laugh); a child's wooden toy-spade (for shovel); a village (for town); whereas een daagje would be used as an indefinite portion of any day, as for instance: Ik wil daar wel eens een daagje doorbrengen, I should not mind spending a little time there. The range of ideas and shades of meaning expressed by Dutch diminutives is very great.

Tje is used when words end in a vowel or diphthong: soja, sofaatje, sofa; koe, koetje, cow.

Tje is further used after words ending in l, n, r, or w, preceded by a vowel or diphthong; ziel, zieltje, soul; toon, toontje, tone; boer, boertje, peasant; zwaluw, zwaluwtje, swallow.

Pje is used after most words ending in m: halm, halmpje, stalk; duim, duimpje, thumb.

Etje is used after words ending in b, l, m, n, r, or ng, preceded by an imperfect vowel: tob, tobbetje, tub; tol, tolletje, top; kom, kommetje, basin; kan, kannetje, jug; kar, karretje, cart; ding, dingetje, thing.

Kje occurs in a few words, in which final g is hardened into k by pronunciation: koning, koninkje, king; kettinkje, chain.

XIV.—Final Consonants with regard to the Formation of the Plural.

1. A final consonant, occurring after a full vowel or a diphthong, is not doubled before a plural ending: boek, book, boeken; ruit, pane, ruiten.

The same rule applies when an imperfect vowel becomes full in the plural, as in the following 28 Nouns:—
NOUN.  MEANING.  .  PLURAL.  DIMINUTIVE.

bad,  bath,  baden,  badje.
blad,  leaf,  bladen,  bladje.
dag,  day,  dagen,  dagje (dagje).
dak,  roof,  daken,  dakje.
dal,  valley,  dalen,  daletje.
gat,  hole,  gaten,  gatje.
glas,  glass,  glazen,  glasje.
graf,  grave,  graven,  grafje.
pad,  path,  paden,  paadjc.
rad,  wheel,  raderen,  raadjc.
slag,  blow,  slagen,  slajc.
staf,  staff,  staken,  stajc.
cat,  barrel,  vaten,  vaadjc.
verdrag,  treaty,  verdragen,  verdragje.
bevel,  command,  bevelen,  bevelletje.
yebed,  prayer,  gebeden,  gebedje.
egebrek,  fault,  gebreken,  gebrekje.
spel,  game,  spelen,  spellcje.
tred,  step,  treden,  treedje.
weg,  way,  wegen,  wegje.
god,  god,  goden,  godje.
hof,  court,  hoven,  hofje.
hof,  den,  holen,  holletje.
lot,  lot,  loten,  lotje.
slot,  lock,  sloten,  slotje.
oorlog,  war,  oorlogen,  oorlogje.
schot,  shot,  schoten,  schotje.
hertog,  duke,  hertogen,  hertogje.

2. Nouns ending in a consonant, preceded by a short vowel, which retains its imperfect sound in the plural, double their final consonant: bok, goat, bokken; hak, heel, hakken; blok, block, blokken; kat, cat, katten. This doubling of the consonant serves to close the first syllable and to open the second, thereby preserving the imperfect vowel sound.

EXCEPTIONS:

1. Ch (final) is never doubled: kuch, cough, kuchen; glimlach, smile, glimlachen.

2. When the final consonant is preceded by an unaccented i or c, it is not doubled, so as not to change the accent;
FORMATION OF THE PLURAL

pêrzik, peach, pêrzikken (not pêrzikken); mónnik, monk, mónnikken (not mónnikken); dréumes, dwarf, drüumescen (not drüumëssen); hávik, hawk, háviken (not hariken).

The ending is, however, does not fall under this rule. sekretâris, secretary, sekretârisson; rönnis, sentence, rönnissen.

Observation.—Rules 1 and 2 apply to the formation of the Infinitive forms of Verbs, whose stem has a short vowel: bakken, to bake (stem bak); also to the flexion-forms of Adjectives: dom, stupid, domme.

3. Nouns ending in f or s, change f into v and s into z:

(a) When preceded either by a diphthong, a full vowel, or one which becomes full in the plural, e.g. duif, pigeon, duiven; haas, hare, hazen. Except filosofen, philosophers; fotografen, photographers; kousen, stockings; kruisen, crosses; struisen, ostriches; pausen, popes; spiesen, spears.

(b) When preceded by a consonant, f changes into v, except in the two foreign words triomfen, triumphs, and nimfen, nymphs.

The s only changes into z when preceded by l, m, and r: halzen, necks; gemzen, chamois; laarzen, boots; also in the following words in ns:

Lenzen, lenses; bonzen, bounces; ganzen, geese; trenzen, snaffles; grenzen, boundaries; grijnzen, grins; cijnzen, tributes; donzen, downs (feathers); likewise the Verb glanzen, to shine.

Walsen, walses; polsen, pulses; kaarsen, candles; kersen, cherries; koersen, courses; persen, presses; schorsen, barks (of trees); floersen, veils (figurative), are exceptions.

Note.—The cause of this change of final letters must be found in the original form of these words. They formerly ended in re and ze, but dropped their final c: duive, roze (the plural of which was naturally duiven, rozen), became duiv, rooz, and afterwards duif, roos, the hardening of final v and z tending to facilitate the pronunciation.
SPEAK-AND-ACT EXERCISE No 5.

't Paard schoonmaken—To groom the horse.

1. 's Morgens ga ik naar de stal. In the morning I go to the stable.
2. Ik zoek de roskam en de borstel. I look for the curry-comb and the brush.
3. Ik gebruik de roskam voor het lijf van mijn paard. I use the curry-comb for the body of my horse.
4. Ik beweeg de roskam heen en weer over het vel. I move the curry-comb to and fro over the skin.
5. Met de borstel maak ik de kop en de poten schoon. With the brush I clean the head and legs.
6. Voor de manen en staart gebruik ik een kam. For the mane and the tail I use a comb.
7. Ik was de poten en voeten met water. I wash the legs and feet with water.
8. Ik vlecht de manenharen. I plait the mane.
9. Ik veeg het stof van mijn paard af met een doek. I wipe the dust off my horse with a cloth.
10. Zo wordt het paard schoongemaakt. So the horse is groomed.

VERB EXERCISE.

gaan—ik ga, ik ging, ik ben gegaan, ik was gegaan, ik zal gaan, ik zal gegaan zijn.
zoeken—ik zoek, ik zocht, ik heb gezocht, ik had gezocht, ik zal zoeken, ik zal gezocht hebben.
gebruiken—ik gebruik, ik gebruikte, ik heb gebruikt, ik had gebruikt, ik zal gebruiken, ik zal gebruikt hebben.
bewegen—ik beweeg, ik bewoog, ik heb bewogen, ik had bewogen, ik zal bewegen, ik zal bewogen hebben.
schoonmaken—ik maak schoon, ik maakte schoon, ik heb schoongemaakt, ik had schoongemaakt, ik zal schoongemaakt, ik zal schoongemaakt hebben.
wassen—ik was, ik waste, ik heb gewassen, ik had gewassen, ik zal wassen, ik zal gewassen hebben.
vlechten—ik vlecht, ik vlocht, ik heb gevlochten, ik had gevlochten, ik zal vlechten, ik zal gevlochten hebben.
afvegen—ik veeg af, ik veegde af, ik heb afgeveegd, ik had afgeveegd, ik zal afveegen, ik zal afgeveegd hebben.
SUBSEQUENT EXERCISE.

1. Speak the above sentences in all the persons of every tense of the Indicative Mood.

2. Speak the sentences in the Negative Form.

3. Speak the sentences in the Interrogative Form.

4. Speak the sentences in the Negative-Interrogative Form.

5. Speak the Exercise, replacing the Pron. "ik" by the words *de knecht*, the man.

6. The Imperative Mood, in which no Pronouns are used, employs, for the Singular, the form of the 1st pers. sing. Present, and, for the Plural, the form of the 2nd pers. sing. Present. Knowing this, it is possible to speak the above Exercise in the Imperative Mood, as follows:

   Speaking to one person.—Speaking to more than one.

2. Zoek de roskam. 2. Zoekt de roskam.


GRAMMAR EXERCISES.—Taaloefeningen.

Write the Plural forms of:

1. Paard, horse; *merrie*, mare; *kalf*, calf; *kuiken*, chicken; *hoen*, fowl; *haan*, cock; *hen*, hen; *schaap*, sheep; *ooi*, ewe; *ram*, ram; *volk*, nation; *man*, man; *wind*, wind; *storm*, storm; *schip*, ship; *ei*, egg; *mand*, basket; *zoon*, son; *vader*, father; *last*, burden; *lepel*, spoon; *vork*, fork; *mes*, knife; *lade*, drawer; *bord*, plate; *inktpot*, inkpot; *pen*, pen; *papier*, paper; *vloeipapier*, blottingpaper; *boek*, book; *bladzijde*, page; *kalender*, calendar; *maand*, month;
week, week; jaar, year; dag, day; minuut, minute; kwartier, quarter; klok, clock; wijzer, hand; slingier, pendulum; muur, wall; kamer, room; tafel, table; stoel, chair; lamp, lamp.

2.

Paal, pole; draad, wire; schroef, screw; spijker, nail; hamer, hammer; boor, gimlet; beitel, chisel; zaag, saw; timmerman, carpenter; metselaar, mason; troffel, trowel; schichtlood, plummet; haak, square; waterpas, water-level; kruinwagen, wheelbarrow; schop, shovel; graaf, spade; hark, rake; schoffel, hoe; bloem, flower; struik, bush; heesler, shrub; grond, soil; perk, plot; bed, bed; pad, path; boom, tree; blad, leaf; knop, bud; twijg, twig; tak, branch; wortel, root; huis, house; dak, roof; raam, window; kamer, room; veranda, verandah; keuken, kitchen; stal, stable; bad, bath; gang, passage; portaal, lobby; trap, staircase; leuning, rail; trede, step; zolder, loft; plafond, ceiling.

TRANSLATION EXERCISE No. 2.

ik ben, I am.  
jij bent, thou art.  
hij is, he is.  
zijt is, she is.  
het is, it is.  
u is (polite form), you are.  
wij zijn, we are.  
gij zijt, you are.  
.jullie zijn, you are.  
zij zijn, they are.

ik heb, I have.  
jij hebt, thou hast.  
hij heeft, he has.  
zij heeft, she has.  
het heeft, it has.  
u heeft (polite form), you have.  
wij hebben, we have.  
gij hebt, you have.  
.jullie hebben, you have.  
zij hebben, they have.

OBSERVATION.—With regard to the different translations of the Verb-form in the 2nd person Singular and Plural the following rule should be adopted by the student:

To inferiors (little children, young pupils, servants, etc.)—close friends, brothers, sisters and cousins, say: Sing. jij or je bent, jij of je hebt; Plur. jullie zijn, jullie hebben.

To parents, strangers, and all superiors, say: Sing. u is, u heeft; Plur. u zijt, u hebt.

Never use gij zijt, gij hebt in speaking. You will find it in books, and hear it from pulpits and platforms; you may also meet it in correspondence.
1.

My, *mijn*; his, *zijn*; her, *haar*; your, *uw*; their, *hun*; our, *ons* (before *de*-words), *ons* (before *het*-words).

I have a pencil. You have a carriage and a horse. We have a house. The study has a door and a window. The child has a book and an umbrella. The horse has a stable. You have a cupboard in your house. He is in the room. You are in your study. Are they in the carriage? They have a table in their room. The lion has a cage in the garden. His stick is on his book. Our horse is in the street. The sun has heat in (the) summer.

2.

This, *dezij* (before *de*-words), *dit* (before *het*-words); that, *die* (before *de*-words), *dat* (before *het*-words); lady, *dame* (*de*); or, of

Is this carriage mine? Have you her bonnet or her cap? We have his pencil and his book. Are you in her room? He is in his room. Is mother in her room? That lady is in her study. Child, you are dirty. He has the wheel of our carriage in the stable. The dog is in their garden: it is mine (*'t is mijne*). The lady and the child are in their room. The mother and the boy have a bird in a cage. The door of our stable is broken. A door of a cupboard is never large. We have a child: it is often ill. In (the) summer the days are long.

3.

slate, *lei* (*de*).  many, *veel.*  also, *ook.*
than, *dan.*  those, *die.*  are there, *zijn er.*
The chickens are in the garden. Two of our hens have chickens. In the school we have inkpots, books, and slates. On the table there are forks and knives. Have you blotting-paper in your books? Years are longer than months, and months are longer than days. Are there leaves on the trees, and buds on the shrubs? These books have many pages. We have two windows in our kitchen. The lobbies in those houses are large, and the staircases high. The boy has many eggs in his basket. His father has [a] thousand sheep, and my uncle has five hundred ewes. Have you [any] screws or nails for me? Yes, and also a hammer and a gimlet.

You have two horses in your stables. Why only two? Staircases have steps and railings. We have more flowers in our garden than you. Yes, but I have more shrubs in mine. How many (hoeveel) bedrooms are there in your house? One for my sister, two for my brothers, one for my parents, and one for me. Have the children [got] rakes and hoes? No, but the boys have spades. Carpenters use (gebruiken) chisels, saws, and hammers, and masons use trowels, squares, and a plummet. The buds on the trees are large. I am on the roof of our house. Where are you, mother? I am in the kitchen, my boy. Is the soil in his garden good? Yes, the soil in all these gardens is very good.
GRAMMAR EXERCISES.—Taaloefeningen.

Fill up the blanks, putting Nouns in the Plural:

1.

Onz- koe- en onz- schaap- lopen in de wei-.
Our cows and our sheep run in the meadows.
Waar zijn d- mens-, die gisteren hier waren? Eend-
Where are the people, who yesterday here were? Ducks
en gans- zijn zwemvogel-. Leeuw-, beer-, tijger-, and geese are swimming birds. Lions, bears, tigers,
wolf-, vos- en kat- zijn alle dieren, die vlees eten.
wolves, foxes, and cats are all animals that flesh eat
Olifant-, kameel-, os-, bok- en schaap- eten
Elephants, camels, oxen, goats and sheep eat
geen vlees, maar plant-.
o. Op onz- reis- hebben wij
no flesh, but plants.
on our journeys have we
stad-, dorp-, rivier-, beek-, sluis-, brug-, markt-,
towns, villages, rivers, brooks, sluices, bridges, markets
kerk-, toren-, schip-, en zo voorts (enz.) gezien.
churches, towers, ships, and so forth (etc.) seen. The
voornaamste deel- van huis- zijn de fondament-,
de principal parts of houses are the foundations, the
muur-, de venster-, de deur-, de schoorsteen-, en de
walls, the windows, the doors, the chimneys, and the
dak-. Schip- hebben kiel-, roer-, mast-, anker-,
roofs. Ships have keels, helms, masts, anchors,
zeil-, vlag- en ra-.
sails, flags, and yards.

2.

Dez- vis- wonen in de noordelike zee-.
These fishes live in the northern seas. At
punt-, waar de golf- van twee oceaan- elkander
points, where the waves of two oceans each other
ontmoeten, zijn die golf- zeer hoog. Heb jij muis- of
meet, are those waves very high. Have you mice or
rat- in de val- gezien? De bos- zijn vol eekhorentje-
rats in the traps seen? The woods are full (of) squirrels
en aap—. De eekhoorn— stelen de ei— uit de nest—
and monkeys. The squirrels steal the eggs out (of) the nests
van de vogel— in de hoge boom—. Meerkat— leven in
of the birds in the high trees. Marmosets live in
gat— in het veld. Wij ontdekten gisteren drie echo— in
holes in the field. We discovered yesterday three echoes in
de berg—. De dal— zijn vol bloem—, en al de
the mountains. The valleys are full (of) flowers, and all the
struik— hebben knop—. De land— zijn in provincie—
shrubs have buds. The countries are into provinces
verdeeld, en die weder in wijk—. De dame— hebben de
divided, and those again into wards. The ladies have the
fotografie— in album— gezet. Dez— kind— zijn in
photographs into albums put. These children are in
hun hoop— teleurgesteld. Ik kan uw— aanbod— niet
their hopes disappointed. I can your offers not
aannemen. Drie stoomboot— zijn vergaan, en honderden
accept. Three steamers are wrecked, and hundreds
mens— omgekomen.
(of) people perished.

SPEAK-AND-ACT EXERCISE No. 6.

De was doen.—To do the washing.

1. Ik gooi warm water in
de wasbak.
2. Ik doe er het vuile was-
good in.
3. Ik smeer zeep aan de
vuile plekken.
4. Ik wrijf de plekken uit
op het wasbord.
5. Ik spoel de stukken in
de bacin
6. Ik haal het wasgoed in
schoon water door.
7. Ik hang het goed op
lijnen te drogen.

I pour hot water into the
washing tub.
I put the dirty washing in.
I rub soap on to the soiled
spots.
I rub out the spots on the
washing board.
I rinse the pieces in the
tub.
I rinse the washing again
in clean water.
I hang the washing out on
lines to dry.
FORMATION OF THE PLURAL

8. Ik strijk het fijne goed glad.
8. I iron the fine linen smooth.
9. Ik mangel het grove goed gelijk.
9. I mangle the coarse linen smooth.
10. Zo wordt de was gedaan.
10. So the washing is done.

VERB EXERCISE.

gooien—ik gooi, ik gootde, ik heb gegoooid, ik had gegoooid, ik zal gecoooid, ik zal gegoooid hebben.
doen—ik doe, ik deed, ik heb gedaan, ik had gedaan, ik zal doen, ik zal gedaan hebben.
smeren—ik smeer, ik smeerde, ik heb gesmeerd, ik had gesmeerd, ik zal smeren, ik zal gesmeerd hebben.
wrijven—ik wrijf, ik wreef, ik heb gewreven, ik had gewreven, ik zal wrijven, ik zal gewreven hebben.
spoelen—ik spoel, ik spoelde, ik heb gespoeld, ik had gespoeld, ik zal spoelen, ik zal gespoeld hebben.
doorhalen—ik haal door, ik haalde door, ik heb doorgehaald, ik had doorgehaald, ik zal doorhalen, ik zal door­gehaald hebben.
hangen—ik hang, ik hing, ik heb gehangen, ik had gehangen, ik zal hangen, ik zal gehangen hebben.
strijken—ik strijk, ik streek, ik heb gestreken, ik had gestreken, ik zal strijken, ik zal gestreken hebben.
mangelen—ik mangel, ik mangelde, ik heb gemangeld, ik had gemangeld, ik zal mangelen, ik zal gemangeld hebben.

SUBSEQUENT EXERCISES.

1. Speak the above Exercise in the 2nd person singular of all the tenses—first with jij or je, then with u.
2. Speak the above Exercise in the 2nd person plural of all the tenses—first with jullie, then with u, finally with gjij.
3. Speak the Exercise in the singular and plural forms of the Imperative Mood.
4. Speak the Exercise, substituting “De Wasvrouw”, the washerwoman, for the Pronoun “ik”, and alternating these words again with the Pronoun “zij”, she.
The same Exercise extended and combined.

Wanneer (when) er (there) wasdag (washing day) is, maakt de meid (servant girl) 's morgens vroeg (early) alles (everything) klaar (ready). Zij kookt (boils) water, en gooit emmers (buckets) vol (full) in de balie, die (which) op de achterplaats (back yard) staat. Dan (then) haalt (fetches) zij het vuile goed uit de kamers (rooms), en gooit het alles in de balie om te weken (to soak). Na (after) enige (some) tijd (time) smeert zij zee aan de vuile plekken in het goed, slaat (beats) het heen en weer door het zeepsop (lather), en wrijft de vuile plekken op het wasbord uit. Daarna (afterwards) spoelt zij de stukken in een andere (other) balie, waar schoon water in staat (stands). Dan is het goed schoon (clean), en hangt zij het uit op lijnen in de tuin (garden) om te drogen. De wind (wind) droogt het daar (there), en dan neemt (takes) zij het af (down). Zij zoekt (selects) het fijne goed uit, en brengt (takes) het naar de waskamer (laundry) om het te strijken. Het andere wordt gemangeld, en op (in) die (that) manier (way) glad gemaakt. Daarmee (with that) is de was gedaan voor (for) de week (week).

TRANSLATION EXERCISE.—No. 3.

1.

sugar, suiker (dc).
oats, haver (de).
glove, handschoen (dc).
tea, tee (dc).
journey, reis (dc).
coffee, koffie (dc).
tie, das (dc).
hat, hoed (dc).
shirt, hemd (het).
for sale, te koop.
one, één.
taller, groter.
give, geef.

Notes.—Words given as examples to special rules are not repeated.

Leave words in [ ] untranslated.

Translate words in parentheses.

How many loaves have you? I have five loaves. Have you two spoonfuls of sugar for me? A handful, if you
like (als je wilt). Those Englishman are taller than these Frenchmen. My neighbours are carpenters and masons. Our horses have oats, and our cows bran and water. Give me five pounds [of] tea, and two pounds [of] coffee. The boys have two dozen nibs. These walls are [a] hundred feet high. One child has (the) smallpox, and two children have (the) measles. There are great (grote) preparations for his journey. Shirts, stockings, ties, gloves, and hats are for sale at Scott Brothers (bij de Gebroeders Scott) in (the) Plein Street.

2.

woman, vrouw (de). mouse, muis (de). broken, gebroken.
shop, winkel (de). mole, mol (de). strong, sterk.
sea, zee (de). rat, rat (de). outside, buiten.
key, sleutel (de). girl, meisje (het). on, in.
boot, schoen (de). rabbit, konijn (het). along, langs.
carpet, tapijt (het).

We have two uncles, two aunts and five nephews. The women are in the shop, and their husbands are outside. The roots of the trees are long and strong. The tree has [a] thousand leaves, and my book has only [a] hundred leaves. The bones of his legs are broken. All the rooms have new carpets, and the girls have new clothes. The songs of your children are new [to] me (mij nieuw). The watch has many wheels. We have [a] hundred lambs and many fowls also. The ships are on the sea, and the towns are on (op) the land. There are [two kinds of meat] (two meats) on [the] table. We have sods along the paths in our garden. These doors have locks and keys. Children have many faults. There are holes in those walls. The heels of my boots are high. Cats, rats, mice, rabbits, and moles have sharp teeth.
Write out the Plurals and Diminutives of:

Wandelings, walk; schop, shovel; haard, hearth; kachel, stove; blaker, candlestick; kandelaar, candlestick; trofee, trophy; zenuw, nerve; knie, knee; zee, sea; lijf, body; korset, corset; pecs, sinew; ei, egg; blad, leaf; dak, roof; bol, globe; les, lesson; mombukkes, mask; vonnis, sentence; schijf, disc; laars, boot; slof, slipper; pantoffel, slipper; zool, sole; dans, dance; krans, wreath; varken, pig; koe, cow; kalf, calf; big, young pig; os, ox; giraffe, giraffe; tobbe, tub; schans, trench; duif, dove; doffer, male pigeon; kolonie, colony; ambachtsman, artisan; perzik, peach; druij, grape; peer, pear; havik, hawk; mus, sparrow; kolibri, colibri; krakeling, cracknel; genot, pleasure; zege, victory; bedrog, deceit; goedheid, goodness; gebergte, mountain range; studie, study: lidmaat, member or limb; rif, reef, carcass; vlees, meat; tin, tin; ijzer, iron; smid, blacksmith; wortel, root, carrot; landschap, landscape; genie, genius; toernooi, tournament; dame, lady; dokter, physician; soldaat, soldier; horloge, watch; gelid, rank; berin, she-bear; vla, custard; kanarie, canary; oom, uncle; been, leg, bone; papegaai, parrot; spel, game; filosoof, philosopher; struis, ostrich; nimf, fairy; neus, nose; els, awl; hertog, duke; graaf, count; koningin, queen; zoon, son; domoor, dunce; vlag, flag; glas, glass; teen, toe, osier; waranda, verandal; bies, rush; menagerie, menagerie; hypotheek, bond; mikroskoop, microscope; idee, idea; telegram, telegram; piano, piano; meermin, mermaid; twee, two; drie, three; zes, six; negen, nine; vijf, five; zeven, seven; nul, zero; opstel, composition; diktaat, dictation; preuk, sermon; reden, reason.
SPEAK-AND-ACT EXERCISE No. 7.

De doden begraven.—To bury the dead.

1. Wij leggen het lijk in de kist. We place the corpse in the coffin.
2. Wij schroeven het deksel op de kist. We screw the lid on to the coffin.
3. Wij zetten het lijk in de lijkwagen. We put the corpse in the hearse.
4. Wij stappen achter de lijkkoets naar het kerkhof. We walk behind the hearse to the cemetery.
5. Wij dragen de lijkkist naar het graf. We carry the coffin to the grave.
6. Wij zetten de kist op de balken over de groeve. We put the coffin on the beams over the grave.
7. Wij lichten de kist met touwen op. We lift the coffin up with ropes.
8. Wij trekken de balken onder de kist weg. We pull away the beams from under the coffin.
9. Wij laten de kist in de groeve zakken. We let the coffin sink into the grave.
10. Zo begraven wij de doden So we bury the dead.

VERB EXERCISE.

leggen—ik leg, legde, heb (had) gelegd, zal leggen (gelegd hebben).
schroeven—ik schroef, schroefde, heb (had) geschroefd, zal schroeven (geschroefd hebben).
zetten—ik zet, zette, heb (had) gezet, zal zetten (gezet hebben).
stappen—ik stap, stapte, heb (had) gestapt, zal stappen (gestapt hebben).
dragen—ik draag, droeg, heb (had) gedragen, zal dragen (gedragen hebben).
lichten—ik licht, lichtte, heb (had) gelicht, zal lichten (gelicht hebben).
trekken—ik trek, trok, heb (had) getrokken, zal trekken (getrokken hebben).
laten ik laat, liet, heb (had) gelaten, zal laten (gelaten hebben).
begraven—ik begraaf, begroef, heb (had) begraven, zal begraven (begraven hebben).
Note.—Henceforth Verb Exercises will be given in abbreviated form. Students are advised to write them out for themselves, completing them at the same time. Their success lies in a thorough knowledge of Dutch Verbs.

SUBSEQUENT EXERCISES.

1. Speak the Exercise in the 3rd pers. plural of all the tenses of the Indicative Mood.

2. Substitute the names of persons, i.e. in (2) and (3) *de lijkbezorgers*, the undertakers; in (5), (6), (7) and (9) *de dragers*, the bearers; in (8) *de doodgravers*, the grave diggers; and in this way multiply the speaking exercises.

3. Speak the Exercise in the Interrogative, Negative, and Negative-Interrogative forms.

4. Introducing Conjunctions to link the sentences together, students may have noticed in the work following on Exercise No. 5, that the subject is placed after the Verb in such cases. The Conjunctions likely to fit are the following: *eerst*, first, *daarna*, afterwards, *dan*, then, *vervolgens*, subsequently, *eindelijk*, or *ten laatste* (*ten slotte*), finally. When speaking in the Past Tense, “then” should be translated by “toen”, not “*dan.*”

READING EXERCISE.

Gisteren stierf mijn oudste zuster. Zij was lang ziek geweest aan de koorts, en eindelijk stierf zij. Mijn moeder en ik kleedden haar aan voor de kist. De kist werd door de lijkbezorger gemaakt. Van avond zal het lijk gekist worden. Vandaag zijn er veel lichamen opgeborgen in de kist. To-night will the body be put into the coffin.
vrienden het lijk komen zien. Het was in 't wit gekleed, friends the body come to see. It was in white dressed, en er lagen witte bloemen om heen. Het leek, and there were lying white flowers round about. It seemed, of Anna lag te slapen. Morgen zal de begrafenis zijn. as if Anna lay sleeping. To-morrow will the funeral be.
Het graf is al gemaakt op 't kerkhof. Het is The grave has been already made in the churchyard. It is zes voet diep. Vader en moeder, en mijn broers en six feet deep. Father and mother, and my brothers and zusters gaan mee naar het graf. Anna had daarom sisters go along to the grave. Anna had for that gevraagd. Wij zullen allen achter de lijkkoets lopen. asked. We will all after the hearse go, want de afstand is zo klein van ons huis naar de because the distance is so small from our house to the begraafplaats. De predikant gaat met vader vooraan in cemetery. The minister will go with father in front of de lijkstoet (lijkstaatsie). Er zullen acht dragers zijn, the funeral train. There will eight bearers be, maar geen rijtuigen, behalve de lijkwagen. Bij het graf but no carriages, except the hearse. At the grave willen wij een gezang zingen, eer de kist neergelaten shall we a hymn sing, before the coffin lowered wordt. Dat zal plechtig zijn.

KONVERSATIE.

CONVERSATION.

Maaltijden.

Meals.

1. Heeft u ontbeten?

2. Nog niet; wij ontbijten gewoonlijk om 9 uur

3. Wil u nu een kop koffie gebruiken?

4. Dank u; ik wacht liever tot het ontbijt.

5. Wil u bij mij komen dineren?

Have you had your breakfast?

Not yet, we usually have breakfast at 9 o'clock.

Will you take a cup of coffee now?

No, thanks; I prefer waiting till breakfast time.

Will you come and dine with me?
6. Dank u; ik ben reeds  uit uw vraagd.
7. Kom dan morgen toch koffie drinken om 1 uur, of surperen om 9 uur.
8. Geef mij een bord soep.
10. Is de biefstuk tender?
11. Kan ik u dienen met wat gestoofd schapevlees?
12. Mag ik u een stukje gebraaden leestevlees geven?
13. Ik wil graag iets van die gebraaden eend en wat groene crten nemen.
14. Welke groenten mag ik u aannemen?
15. Gestooide aardappelen en bloemkool, als 't u bieft.
16. Zal u wijn of bier gebruiken?
17. Geef mij een glas stout.
18. Er zijn paddrmgen, taarten en pastijen; wat mag ik u aanbieden?
19. Wat appeltaart en vla.
20. Voor dessert zijn er rozijnen en amandelen, gember, appels, sinaasappels (lemonen), ananassen en vijgen.
21. Blijft u tee of koffie na het eten?
22. Een klein kopje sterke koffie, als 't u bieft.
23. Verkiest u het zonder melk en suiker?
24. Chocolade gebruikt ik zonder suiker, maar nooit tee of koffie.
25. Geef mij het brood eens aan, als 't u bieft.
26. Ik houd van ham met eieren voor ontbijt.
27. Zou u mij de kaas willen aanreren?
28. Met gcnoegen.

I am invited out, thanks very much.
Well then come to luncheon tomorrow at 1 o'clock, or to supper at 9 o'clock.
Give me a plate of soup.
Give me some roast beef and some radish.
Is the Leefsteak tender?
Can I help you to some mutton stew?
May I give you some roast beef?
I should like some roast duck and green peas, please.
What vegetables can I offer you?
Mashed potatoes and cauliflower, please.
Will you take wine or beer?
Give me a glass of stout.
There are puddings, tarts and pies; which shall I pass you?
Some apple-tart and custard.
For dessert there are raisins and almonds, preserved ginger, apples, oranges, pine apples and figs.
Will you take tea or coffee after dinner?
A small cup of strong coffee, please.
Do you prefer it without milk and sugar?
I take chocolate without sugar but never tea or coffee.
Pass me the bread, please.
I like ham and eggs for breakfast.
May I trouble you for the cheese?
With pleasure.
CHAPTER V.

THE GENDER OF SUBSTANTIVES.

(Het Geslacht van Zelfstandige Naamwoorden).

I. The gender of a Noun marks the sex of the person or animal indicated by it. Formerly, Gender marked the way in which Nouns, together with their attendant words (Articles, Adjectives, Adjective Pronouns, and Adjectives of quality or number) were declined. There used, therefore, to be three acknowledged Genders, the Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter, not indicating sex, and consequently including all words, whether names of persons, animals, or inanimate things. These distinctions are still met with in literature, but are not any longer acknowledged in the Simplified Language. What remains of Gender distinctions is, first of all, the distinction marking sex, which can only refer to names of persons and animals; and, secondly, the classification of all other words into two groups, called De-words and Het-words.

II. REAL GENDER DISTINCTIONS.

1. Names of male persons and male animals are Masculine, as: koning, king; broeder, brother; leeuw, lion; stier, bull.

2. Names of female persons and female animals are Feminine, as: keizerin, empress; wasvrouw, washerwoman; berin, she-bear; koe, cow.

Exceptions: het wijf, the woman (term of contempt). Het arme mens, the poor creature, is used of women, though mens is Masc.
3. When the male and the female animal have each a separate name, but there is a third name indicating either, this third name is a hct-word, as: de ram, ram, Masculine; de ooi, ewe, Feminine; het schaap, sheep, Neuter. De haan, cock, Masculine; de hen, hen, Feminine; het hoen, fowl, Neuter.

EXCEPTION. The word hond is a dc-word, though it has reu for the male and teef for the female.

III. NATURAL GENDER.

The Natural Gender of persons and animals is indicated by their names.

The suffix es makes Feminine names of persons from Masculine ones: dichter, poet, dichteres, poetess; zanger, singer, zangeres, lady singer; dienaar, servant, dienares, (female) servant.

The ending in does the same: koning, king, koningin, queen; keizer, emperor, keizerin, empress; gemaal, consort, (Fem.) gemalin.

It also derives names of female animals from those of males: leeuw, lion, leeuwin; wolf, wolf, wolvin; beer, bear, berin.

The suffix ster makes Feminine names of the stems of Verbs, where the masculine suffix would be er: bakker, baker, bakster; naaister, needle-woman; schoonmaakster, charwoman. Zangster is used for “goddess of song”.

Either ster or es is added to male appellations ending in aar: dienaar, servant, dienares; leugenaar, liar, leugenaarster; bedelaar, beggar, bedelaarster or bedelares.
The following distinctions should be noted:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>man, man.</td>
<td>vrouw, woman.</td>
<td>dief, thief.</td>
<td>diercogge, female thief.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>man, husband.</td>
<td>vrouw, wife.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vader, father.</td>
<td>moeder, mother.</td>
<td>hengst, stallion.</td>
<td>merrick, mare.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zoon, son.</td>
<td>dochter, daughter.</td>
<td>kat, he-cat.</td>
<td>kat, she-cat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bruidegom, bridegroom.</td>
<td>bruid, bride.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oom, uncle.</td>
<td>tante, aunt.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neef, nephew, cousin.</td>
<td>nicht, niece, cousin.</td>
<td>bul(stier), bull.</td>
<td>koc, cow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monnik, monk.</td>
<td>non, nun.</td>
<td>bok, buck.</td>
<td>hinde, doe.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heer, gentleman.</td>
<td>dame, lady.</td>
<td>bok, he-goat.</td>
<td>giet, she-goat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>knecht, man-servant.</td>
<td>meid, maid.</td>
<td>woorde, drake.</td>
<td>cond, duck.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>beer, male-pig.</td>
<td>zeug, sow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ganzcrik, gander.</td>
<td>gans, goose.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Animals are further distinguished as mannetje, male, wijfje, female, as:

Manneltje olifant, male elephant; wijfjes kameel, female camel.

IV. COMMON GENDER.

Words which, according to their signification, may denote either a Male or Female person or animal, are said to be of common gender (gemeen geslacht). These are:

1. Names of persons and animals ending in ling:
   - lieveling, darling; vreemdeling, stranger; nesteling, nestling; vluchteling, fugitive; hokkeling, stall-fed calf; Oosterling, Oriental.

2. Names of persons ending in noot or genoot:
   - echtgenoot, consort; landgenoot, fellow-countryman; speelgenoot, playfellow; reisgenoot, fellow-traveller.
3. The following words: bode, messenger; dienstbode, servant; gids, guide; getuige, witness; wees, orphan; lidmaat, member of a congregation; erfgenaam, heir; gade, consort.

V. For distinguishing between de-words and het-words the following Rules are given:

**DE-WORDS.**


2. Names of fruits, plants, grains, and flowers: jasmijn, jessamine, geranium, geranium, rogge, rye, perzik, peach, peer, pear, tarwe, wheat.

   Graan, grain, is a het-word.

3. Names of the parts of trees and plants: schors, bark, schil, peel, twijg, twig, tronk, trunk, bast, bark.

   Blad, leaf, is a het-word.

4. Names of mountains and rivers: de Mont Blanc, Mont Blanc, de Nijl, the Nile.

5. Names of seasons, months and days: herfst, autumn, Maart, March, Zaterdag, Saturday.

   Jaar, year, seizoen, season, and uur, hour, are het-words.


   Frigate, frigate, jacht, yacht, and the word schip, ship, are het-words.

*Roer*, helm, *zeil*, sail, *ruim*, hold, and *dek*, deck, are *het*-words.


*Pond*, sovereign, is a *het*-word.

9. Names of precious stones, when they indicate single pieces, as: *De diamannt in deze ring*, the diamond in this ring. When they have a collective meaning, they are *het*-words: *Het diamannt van Zuid-Afrika*, the diamond of South Africa.


13. Names of the letters of the alphabet, figures, and musical notes: *de o*, the *o*, *de vijf*, the five; *de fa*, the fah, *de alfa en de omega*, the alpha and the omega.


15. Names of musical instruments: piano, piano, trompet, trumpet, harp, harp, viool, violin, triangle, triangle.

Klavier, piano, and orgel, organ, are het-words.

16. Many names of materials, exclusive of metals: zijde, silk, franje, fringe, kant, lace, watten, wadding, melk, milk, boter, butter, kaas, cheese, siroop, syrup, snuif, snuff, suiker, sugar, kool, coal, tee, tea, wol, wool, zeep, soap, zwavel, sulphur, kamfer, camphor, gom, gum, hars, resin, alum, aluin, azijn, vinegar, wijn, wine, kalk, lime, mosterd, mustard, tabak, tobacco, room, cream, honing, honey, koffie, coffee.

Water, water, brood, bread, and bier, beer, are het-words.

17. Names of instruments ending in el, er and aar: sleutel, key, hamer, hammer, lessenaar, desk, griffel, slate-pencil, schoffel, hoe, sikkelf, sickle, gaffel, pitchfork, ladder, ladder.

18. Words in m, em, rm, lm, end and ond: riem, thong, bezem, broom, worm, worm, zalm, salmon, ochtend, morning, avond, evening, bloem, flower, kiem, germ.

Raam, window, and scherm, screen, are het-words.

19. Words in dom, when expressing a state or condition, as: wasdom, growth, adeldom, nobility, rijkdom, riches, ouderdom, old age.

20. Words in schap, expressing a state, a condition, or a collection: blijdschap, joy, rekenschap, rendering of account, manschap, crew, jongelingschap, collection of young men.
21. Words in **ing**, whether derived or not derived from Verbs: ketting, chain, rottin, cane, ring, ring, tekening, drawing, bedoeling, meaning.

22. Words ending in **gd, cht, t, e, ij, ie, uw, nis, heid, teit, uur, ier, ts**: deugd, virtue, kracht, strength, markt, market, vreugde, joy, heerschappij, dominion, knie, knee, schaduw, shadow, begrafenis, funeral, waarheid, truth, majesteit, majesty, natuur, nature, rivier, river, koorts, fever, plicht, duty, nacht, night, tocht, journey, geest, spirit.

   Licht, light; wicht, babe; recht, right; ambt, profession; ambacht, trade; schrift, writing; geleide, escort; getij(de), tide; eind(e), end; web(e), web; concilie, council; evangelie, gospel; genie, genius; vonnis, sentence; vuilnis (vullis), dirt; and getuigenis, evidence, are het-words.

   **Note.**—Getuigenis, testimony, is a de-word.

23. Foreign words in **aan, ant (and), aard** and **ont:** orkaan, hurricane, oceaan, ocean, foliant, folio volume, tulband, turban, standaard, standard, tabbaard, gown, horizont, horizon.

24. Foreign words ending in **as, eet, ot, iek, ier, teit, uut, and uur:** matras, mattress, komeet, comet, kalot, cap, republiek, commonwealth, rivier, river, majesteit, majesty, natuur, nature, minuut, minute.

   Schot, scaffold; koliek, colic; harnas, armour; kompas, compass; moeras, swamp; formulier, formulary; kwartier, quarter; papier, paper; avontuur, adventure, and figuur, shape, are het-words.

   **HET-WORDS.**

1. The class-name of animals which have a separate name for the Male and Female: paard, horse, rund, bull or cow, hoen, fowl.

   Hond is a de-word.

*Big*, formerly *bigge*, young pig, is a *de*-word.


The word *stad*, town, is a *de*-word.


Words in *el* formerly recognised as diminutives are *de*-words: *doppel*, drop; *kruimel*, crumb; *cikkel*, acorn; *knobbel*, knob.


*Zwerm*, swarm; *stoet*, train; *troep*, troop; *bende*, band; *vloot*, fleet; *kuurde*, flock; *schaar*, crowd, are *de*-words.

6. Words which begin with *ge* and end in *te*, when they express a collection: *gevogelte*, all the birds, *ge­beentje*, all the bones belonging to a skeleton.

When such words have not a collective meaning, they are *de*-words: *de gedachte*, thought.


*Stijfsel*, starch, is a *de*-word.

9. Words of foreign origin ending in er and el: artikel, article, orgel, organ, offer, sacrifice, venster, window, cijfer, figure, klooster, convent, meubel, piece of furniture.

10. Stems of Verbs with the unaccented verbal prefixes be, ge, ver, and ont: bedrag, amount, verlof, leave, ontbijt, breakfast.

Verkoop, sale, is a de-word.

11. Infinitive Verbs, and further all parts of speech used as Nouns: het leven; life, het voornemen, the intention, het voor en tegen, the pro and con, het hoe en waarom, the why and wherefore.

12. Words in dom, indicating a collection, or the name of a country or state: Christendom, Christianity, mensdom, the human race, hertogdom, dukedom.

Notice that Christendom, Christianity, means the creed of Christians; whereas Eng. “Christendom”, the collective body of Christians, is in Dutch Christenheid. Heidendom means both “heathenism” and “heathen” in a collective sense.

13. Words in schap, indicating a profession or an estate: priesterschap, priesthood, graafschap, earldom, landschap, province. Also the words: gezantschap, embassy, genootschap, society, gereedschap, tools, and gezelschap, company.

14. Foreign words in aal, aat, eel, ent, et, oen, oor: portaal, portal, kanaal, canal, klimaat, climate, karaat, carat, kasteel, castle, priëel, summer-house, parlement,
parliament, talent, talent, korset, corset, harpoen, harpoon, kantoor, office, plantsoen, plantation, seizoen, season, musket, musket, bekkencel, skull.

Kaneel, cinnamon, is a de-word.

Note.—Of all these words the last syllable is accented.

VI. GENDER OF COMPOUND NOUNS.

All Compound Nouns follow the gender of their last part. Examples: huis is a het-word, and deur is a de-word, therefore huisdeur is a de-word; tafel is a de-word, and klced is a het-word, therefore tafelklced is a het-word.

There are a few words, however, whose gender has changed in composition: blik is a de-word, but ogenblik, moment, is a het-word; stip is a de-word, but tijdstip, date, is a het-word; kant is a de-word, but vierkant, square, is a het-word; hof is a de-word, but kerkhof, churchyard, is a het-word; vonk is a de-word, but roodvonk, scarlatina, is a het-word.

VII. Some words belong to both classes (de and het) with a difference of meaning in either case:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>De</th>
<th>Het</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>de bal,</td>
<td>het bal,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>de blik,</td>
<td>het blik,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>de diamant,</td>
<td>diamant,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>de hof,</td>
<td>het hof,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>de kurk,</td>
<td>het kurk,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>de maal,</td>
<td>het maal,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>de morgen,</td>
<td>morgen,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>de pad,</td>
<td>het pad,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>de patroon,</td>
<td>patroon,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>de punt,</td>
<td>het punt,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>de slag,</td>
<td>het slag,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>de stof,</td>
<td>het stof,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>de vick,</td>
<td>het vick,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ball, globe.      dance, ball.      tin.
look.             diamond.      (single)
fireplace.        diamond (stone).
garden.           court.
cork (stopper).   cork (material).
time.             meal.
morning.          land-measure.
toad.             path.
employer, cartridge. pattern.
point, full stop. subject.
blow.             trap, kind.
material.         dust.
stain.            hamlet.
List of ordinary *Het*-words not included in the rules.

A.

*aam*, offer.
*aanbod*, offer.
*aanbieden*, keepsake.
*aangezicht*, countenance.
*aantal*, number.
*aanzicht*, view, appearance.
*aanzoek*, request.
*aas*, carrion.
*abuis*, mistake.
*adres*, address.
*advies*, advice.
*afscheid*, farewell.
*afschrift*, copy.
*aftel*, neglect.
*akkoord*, agreement.
*accent*, accent.
*alarm*, alarm.
*album*, album.
*alfabet*, alphabet.
*allooi*, alloy.
*altsaar*, altar.
*ambacht*, trade.
*ambt*, profession.
*anker*, anchor.
*antwoord*, answer.
*appèl*, appeal.
*archief*, archives.
*arrest*, arrest.
*artikel*, article.
*azuur*, azure.

B.

*bak*, bath.
*baken*, beacon.
*bakkes*, face.
*balkon*, balcony.
*bamboes*, bamboo.
*banket*, banquet.
*bankroet*, bankruptcy.
*basalt*, basalt.
*bed*, bed.
*beeld*, image.
*been*, bone, leg.
*beest*, beast.

C.

*cadeau*, present (also spelled—*kado*).
*cemont*, cement.
*charter*, charter.
*clijfer*, figure.

D.

*dak*, roof.
*dal*, valley.
*debat*, debate.
*debct*, debit.


**E.**

edikt. edict.
delt, dailous.
defekt, effect.
ci, egg.
ciland, island.
eind, end.
eiwit, white of egg.
eksamen, examination.
ekschmaler, copy.
eekschrept, excerpt.
eekschus, excuse.
eekstrakt, extract.
elastick, India rubber.
eemail, enamel.
embargo, embargo.
Engels, English.
enkelvoud, singular.

enthusiasme, enthusiasm.
epistle, epistle.
epos, epic poem.
orf, yard.
erratum, erratum.
erts, ore.
citroen, aftermath.
citaal, period of 24 hours.
cuit, case.
cucel, evil.
evangelie, gospel.
evenwicht, balance.

**F.**

faljet, bankruptcy.
feest, feast.
feit, fact.
feestoen, festoon.
fiasko, flasco.
figuur, figure.
flors, crape.
foedraal, case.
fonds, fund.
formulier, formulary.
formuis, furnace.
fort, fort.
Frans, French.
frigate, frigate.
fresco, fresco.
fr, ferret.
front, front.

**G.**

gaas, gauze.
galu, gala.
galjoen, galleon.
galon, galloon.
garne, cotton.
garnituur, trimming.
gas, gas.
gat, hole.
gebaar, gesture.
gebod, prayer.
gebitt, set of teeth.
gebrek, want.
geideelte, part.
geding, lawsuit.
gebrocht, monster.
geenheid, patience.
geacht, minced meat.
gehalte, quality.
THE GENDER OF SUBSTANTIVES

vehucht, hamlet.
gelaat, countenance.
gelag, bill (for food
    or drink).
geld, money.
geld, rank.
geluk, happiness.
gelijk, right.
gemoed, mind.
genie, genius.
genijs, secret.
geniet, satisfaction.
genot, enjoyment.
gerecht, court of justice.
gerecht, things, apparatus.
gespuis, rumour.
gewaard, dress.
gewag, mention.
gewel, entrails.
geweld, violence.
gewest, province.
gezag, authority.
gezin, family.
gift (vergift), poison.
gilde, guild.
glazuur, enamel.
good, goods.
gordijn, curtain.
graan, grain.
graf, grave.
gras, grass.
grawe, rabble, mob.
gravel, gravelstone.
grein, grain.
gros, gross.
gruis, dust.
gymnasium, gymnasium.

heer, host.
helft, handle.
heil, happiness.
heimwee, homesickness.
hck, gate.
hemd, shirt.
hersel, recovery.
hert, deer.
hou, aid.
houw, fowl.
hof, court.
hok, kennel.
hol, hole, den.
holland, Dutch.
hoofd, head.
hoof, hay.
horloge, watch.
houwast, support.
hotel, hotel.
hozanna, hosannah.
huis, house.
hulsel, cover, pod.
humeur, disposition, temper.
huwelijk, marriage.

I.

idee, idea.
idiom, idiom.
individu, individual.
ingewand, entrails.
income, income, revenue.
insect, insect.
instinkt, instinct.
interdikt, interdict.
t interim, interim.
inziicht, view.
italiaans, Italian.
item, item.

J.

jaar, year.
jaart, yacht.
jak, jacket.
jammer, misery.
jong, young.
jubilee, jubilee.
juk, yoke.
**THE STANDARD DUTCH GRAMMAR**

**K.**

kaf, chaff.
kaliber, calibre.
kameleon, chameleon.
kanon, cannon.
kanton, canton.
karmijn, carmine.
karmozijn, crimson.
karnaval, carnival.
karton, pasteboard.
klavier, piano.
kleed, robe.
kleinood, jewel.
klimop, creeper.
klauw, clew, ball of thread.
klo, ball.
klooster, convent.
knoflook, garlic.
kodikil, codicil.
kollege, college.
koliek, colic.
koloriet, colouring.
komitcc, committee.
kompas, compass.
komploet, plot.
koneept, draught.
konclie, council.
konflikt, conflict.
kongrees, congress.
konfijt, jam, preserve.
konnklav, conclave.
konserf, preserve.
kontakt, contact.
kontrast, contrast.
konvooi, convoy.
konijn, rabbit.
koord, cord.
kordon, cordon.
kostuum, costume.
kot, sty.
kouter, coulter, share.
kozijn, frame.
kreatuur, creature.
krediet, credit.
kerk, dead animal.
kriel, small fry.
kroos, children.
krot, dirty hole.
kruijf, crucifix.
kruid, herb.
kruiis, cross.

kruit, gunpowder.
kuras, cuirass.
kwaad, evil.
kwart, quarter.
kwartier, quarter.

**L.**

laberint, labyrinth.
lakmoes, turnsol, laeclmas.
land, land.
Latijn, Latin.
lawaat, noise, row.
lazaret, lazaretto.
lode, leather.
lédikant, bedstead.
leeu, harm.
leen, fee.
lekkers, sweets.
lemmer, blade.
libel, libel.
lichaam, body.
lucht, light.
lid, member.
lied, song.
lief, weal.
lijf, body.
lijk, corpse.
lint, ribbon.
lis, loop.
logics, board.
look, leek.
loon, reward.
lornjet, pince-nez.
lot, lot.
luik, shutter.
luttel, little.

**M.**

maal, meal.
magazijn, magazine.
manifest, manifesto.
manuskrift, manuscript.
mascer, mask.
maximum, maximum.
medaljon, medallion.
mederogen, pity.
médium, medium.
meer, lake.
meer, plural.
menu, menu.
THE GENDER OF SUBSTANTIVES

berg, marrow.
mark, mark.
messing, brass.
neuebel, piece of furniture.
middel, waist, means.
midden, middle.
miljoen, million.
minimum, minimum.
ministerie, ministry.
miracle, miracle.
model, model.
mocras, marsh.
moes, broth.
monopolie, monopoly.
monster, monster.
mos, moss.
motief, motive.
motto, motto.
mozaiek, mosaic.
mud, muid.
museum, museum.
mysterie, mystery.

N.
nadir, nadir.
nat, wet.
nazooek, search.
Nederduits, Dutch.
Nedelands, Dutch.
nest, nest.
et, net.
nieuws, news.
niveau (nivo), level.
nommer, number.
noorden, north.
notemuskaat, nutmeg.
nummer, number.
nut, use.

O.
obstakel, obstacle.
offer, sacrifice.
ogenblik, moment.
onbruiik, disuse.
onmens, monster.
on, ounce.
onzag, reverence.
onweer, thunder.
oog, eye.
oor, ear.
oord, place.
oosten, east.
opium, opium.
oponthoud, delay.
oproc, uproar.
opstel, essay.
opzet, purpose.
opzicht, respect.
orakel, oracle.
oranje, orange colour.
orgaan, organ.
orgel, organ.
overschot, remainder.
overwicht, overweight.
overzicht, superintendence.

P.
paard, horse.
pad, path.
pak, parcel.
palais, palace.
pand, pledge, pawn.
panorama, panorama.
panteon, panteon.
pardon, pardon.
paradijs, paradise.
park, park.
part, portion.
pascha, pasha.
paskwil, banquet.
paspoort, passport.
piil, watermark.
perron, railway platform.
perspektief, perspective.
plafond, ceiling.
plateau, plateau.
plebs, the people.
plicidooi, plea.
plein, plain.
plezier, pleasure.
pocder, powder.
poord, pound.
postuur, posture.
potlood, pencil.
prestige, prestige.
principe, principle.
prisma, prism.
privilege, privilege.
proces, process.
produkt, product.
profiel, profile.
-profit, profit.
projectiel, projectile.
protest, protest.
protokol, protocol.
proza, prose.
publiek, public.
puin, building rubbish.
purper, purple.

R.
raam, window.
rahat, renate.
rad, wheel.
rag, cobweb.
rak, rack, shelves.
rapport, report.
rus, race.
ravin, ravine.
recht, justice.
reef, reef.
regime, regime.
register, register.
rek, rack.
rekwest, request.
roluaas, report, statement.
relief, relief.
reptiel, reptile.
reservoir, reservoir.
respijt, respite.
riet, reeds.
rif, reef.
roer, helm.
ros, steed.
ruim, space.
rumoer, noise, tumult.
rund, cow or ox.
Russes, Russian.
rijk, dominion.
rijtuig, carriage.

S.
salaris, salary.
saldo, balance.
salon, saloon.
salvo, salute.
sop, sap.
scharnier, hinge.
schavot, scaffold.
schema, scheme.
scherm, screen.
schild, shield.
schip, ship.
schot, shot.
schrift, writing.
schuim, foam.
schin, signal.
skrcct, secret.
seminarie, seminary.
storead, ornament.
slot, lock.
slijk, mud.
slijm, phlegm.
smeer, snudge.
smuur, grease.
sop, juice.
socpecc, supper.
socvenir, souvenir.
Spaans, Spanish.
span, team.
spek, bacon.
spetakol, scene.
spel, play, game.
spit, spit.
split, slic.
spog, spittle.
spook, ghost.
spuug, spittle.
stel, set.
sticht, bishopric.
strand, beach.
stro, straw.
stuk, piece.
stuur, helm.
subjckt, subject.
sukces, success.
symptoom, symptom.

T.
tableau (table), tableau.
tapijt, carpet.
tarief, tariff.
teeken, sign.
tempo, time (in music).
terras, terrace.
terrazin, ground, plot.
theater, theater.
thema, theme.
toornooi, tournament.
toestel, apparatus.
toezicht, supervision.
touw, rope.
THE GENDER OF SUBSTANTIVES

U.

uitlilc, exterior.
uitschot, refuse.
uitstek, projection.
uitstel, postponement.
uitwas, growth, excrescence.
uitzicht, view.
uur, hour.

V.

vaandel, banner.
vaarwel, farewell.
vak, subject.
valies, knapsack.
vat, barrel.
vee, cattle.
veen, moor.
vell, skin.
vold, field.
vendel, squad.
venijn, poison.
verdriet, sorrow.
vers, poem, verse.
vorslag, account.
verstand, mind, understanding.
vet, fat.
veto, veto.
vierkant, square.
vijfent, vignette.
vizier, visor, bead sight.
vlies, flax.
vlees, hamlet.
vloek, fleece.
vloot, raft.
vocht, moisture.
vod, rag.
vooider, fodder.
voer, fodder.
volume, volume.
vonnis, sentence.
vont, font.
voorstel, proposal.
voorval, occurrence.
voorwerp, object.
vuilnis, rubbish.
vullis, rubbish.
uur, fire.

W.

waas, haze.
vaam,es, jacket.
want, rigging.
wapen, weapon.
wax, wax.
waterpas, water-level.
web, web.
wend, ford.
wede, weather.
wee, wo.
werk, work.
westen, west.
richt, infant.
riem, wheel.
riper, seaweed.
riil, game.
windas, windlass.
woender, wonder.
woord, word.
wrak, wreck.

Z.

zaad, seed.
zaal, saddle.
zaad, saddle.
zaad, sand.
zel, straps.
zel, seal.
zel, sail.
zenith, zenith.
zevental, number seven.
zog, milk.
zuider, south.
zuivel, butter and cheese.
zult, pickled food.
zwart, sword.
zwam, tender.
zwet, sweat.
zwart, sky.
zuord, wind.
zuinj, swine.
SPEAK-AND-ACT EXERCISE No. 8.

De klok opwinden.—To wind the clock.

1. Ik zet een stoel onder de eetkamer klok.
2. Ik klim op de stoel.
3. Ik open het glas vóór de wijzerplaat.
4. Ik zet de sleutel in het rechtergat.
5. Ik wind het loopwerk op.
6. Daarna wind ik ook het slagwerk op.
7. Ik tik aan de slinger om het in beweging te zetten.
8. Ik beweeg de lange wijzer om de klok gelijk te zetten.
9. Ik sluit het glazen kastje weer toe.
10. Zo wordt de klok opgewonden.

I put a chair under the dining-room clock.
I mount the chair.
I open the glass in front of the dial.
I put the key into the right hand side hole.
I wind the movement.
Afterwards I also wind the striking.
I touch the pendulum to set it in motion.
I move the long hand to put the clock right.
I close the glass case again.
So the clock is wound.

VERB EXERCISE.

zetten—ik zet, zette, heb (had) gezet, zal zetten (gezet hebben).
klimmen—ik klim, klom, ben (was) geklommen, zal klimmen (geklommen zijn).
openen—ik open, opende, heb (had) geopend, zal openen (geopend hebben).
winden—ik wind, wond, heb (had) gewonden, zal winden (gewonden hebben).
tikken—ik tik, tikte, heb (had) getikt, zal tikken (getikt hebben).
bewegen—ik beweeg, bewoog, heb (had) bewogen, zal bewegen (bewogen hebben).
toesluiten—ik sluit toe, sloot toe, heb (had) toegesloten, zal toesluiten (toegesloten hebben).
opwinden—ik wind op, wond op, heb (had) opgewonden, zal opwinden (opgewonden hebben).
THE GENDER OF SUBSTANTIVES

SUBSEQUENT EXERCISES.

Speak this Exercise in all the tenses and persons of the Indicative Mood.

Speak it also in the Imperative Mood.

Make the sentences Interrogative, then Negative, then again Negative-Interrogative.

For the sake of yet further multiplying the sentences (which is the great object of these lessons), put all words into the plural which lend themselves to it, as follows:—

1. Wij zetten stoelen onder de eetkamer klokken.
2. Wij klimmen op de stoelen.
3. Wij openen de glazen vóór de wijzerplaten.
4. Wij zetten de sleutels in de rechtergaten.
5. Wij winden het loopwerk op.
6. Daarna winden wij ook het slagwerk op.
7. Wij tikken aan de slingers om het in beweging te zetten.
8. Wij bewegen de lange wijzers om de klokken gelijk te zetten.
9. Wij sluiten de glazen kastjes weer los.
10. Zo worden de klokken opgewonden.

Sentences may likewise be spoken in any tense and person with the diminutive forms of most of the Nouns.

Advice to the Student.

Students have by now seen enough of these Speak-and-Act exercises to begin constructing them on their own responsibility. They will be found exceedingly beneficial. Even the limited vocabulary now at the student's command, will enable him to put a number of such exercises together. Besides, he can avail himself of the vocabularies at the end of the book to obtain a larger range of words. The object in all the Exercises should be, to string some actions (not necessarily nine) together, and put one concluding sentence after them, expressive of the action to which the others lead up.

Likewise may students make a beginning in telling easy matter in story form, which is another mighty lever for obtaining fluency of speech in a limited period of time.
Er zijn in ons huis drie dingen, die de tijd aanwijzen.
There are in our house three things which the time show.
Het eerste is een groot uurwerk dat in de eetkamer hangt.
The first is a large timepiece which in the dining-room hangs
Het is een klok van de oude soort met kettingen en
It is a clock of the old type with chains and
gewichten. Het is een erfstuk van de familie. Wanneer
weights. It is an heirloom of the family. When
de klok afgelopen is, trekken wij de gewichten op aan de
the clock run down is, pull we the weights up by the
kettingen, en dan loopt hij weer. Het tweede ding, dat
chains, and then runs it again. The second thing, which
de tijd wijst, is de pendule in de voorkamer. Deze klok
the time marks, is the timepiece in the drawing-room. This clock
is veel fijner, en past in een marmeren voetstuk. Hij
is much more delicate, and fits in a marble base. It
heeft geen kettingen, maar veren, en wordt met een sleutel
has no chains, but springs, and is with a key
opgewonden. Hij slaat de uren, halve uren, en kwartieren.
up wound. It strikes the hours, half hours and quarters.
Mijn moeder heeft hem present gekregen op haar
My mother it (a) present got on her
trouwdag. De pendule staat onder een glazen stolp om er
wedding-day. The timepiece stands under a glass cover (for) it
het stof uit te houden. Het derde ding dat de tijd wijst,
the dust out of to keep. The third thing which the time marks,
the dust out of to keep. The third thing which the time marks,
is vaders horloge. Dat heeft ook een veer, maar het werk
is father's watch. That has also a spring, but the works
is zo klein, dat men de hele klok in zijn
in it are so small, that one the entire clock in one's
vestzakje kan dragen. Soms lopen de klokken vóór,
vestzakje can carry. Sometimes run the clocks fast,
en soms ook achter. Dan moeten zij gelijk gezet
and sometimes also slow. Then must they right put
worden. Een horloge wijst de sekonden, minuten en uren, be. A watch marks the seconds, minutes, and hours, en vier en twintig uren maken een dag. Als de dag om and four and twenty hours make a day. When the day past is, moet het horloge opgewonden worden, maar de grote is, must the watch wound be, but the big klok slechts eenmaal in de week, en de pendule slechts om clock only once in a week, and the timepiece only once de veertien dagen.
a a fortnight.

**GRAMMAR EXERCISES.—**Taaloeefeningen.

Classify the following Nouns as de-words or het-words; then write out their Plural and Diminutive forms.

1.

Duif, pigeon; muis, mouse; walvis, whale; tijger, tiger; 
Hut, hut; noot, nut; oceaan, ocean; ochtend, morning; 
loop, walk; wedren, race; Woensdag, Wednesday; Maart, 
March; zwaluw, swallow; blijdschap, gladness; goedheid, 
goodness; geweer, gun; meisje, girl; jongen, boy; 
koningin, queen; hoest, cough; schaaf, plane; lade, 
drawer; hamer, hammer; dorp, village.

2.

Haan, cock; kuiken, chicken; stier, bull; kalf, calf; 
ladder, ladder; sleutel, key; vreugde, joy; slag, blow or 
trap; val, fall or trap; spinnekop, spider; bark, barque; 
trap, kick or staircase; toevogsel, addition; mensdom, 
human race; hyena, hyena; plooisel, frilling; vriend, 
friend; gevangenis, prison; paard, horse; gros, gross; 
last, burden; geboomte, collection of trees.
3.

Hoop, hope; bal, ball; rijst, rice; vis, fish; lente, spring; aap, ape; zes, six; herfst, autumn; schacht, shaft; leven, life; ouderdom, old age; dienst, service; schoffel, hoe; getuigenis, testimony; vriendschap, friendship; koliek, colic; gedans, dancing; gewicht, weight; ontvangst, reception.

4.

Vierkant, square; hart, heart; maal, meal; toneel, scene; smeerzel, unguent; minuut, minute; kurk, cork; fregat, frigate; morgen, morning; rust, rest; horizon, horizon; zalm, salmon; kaneel, cinnamon; Oostenrijk, Austria; droom, dream; gebed, prayer; vlek, stain; watten, wadding; gids, guide; landschap, landscape; schaft, scaffold.

5.

Express the Feminine form of the following Masculine words:

Vijand, enemy; onderwijzer, teacher; vink, cock-finch; kamel, camel; bruidegom, bridegroom; raadsman, counsellor; meester, master; dienaar, servant; haan, cock; boekhouder, book-keeper; monnik, monk; beschermcr, protector; spreker, speaker; ram, ram; leugenaar, liar; dus, badger; slaaf, slave; vriend, friend; metgezel, companion; oom, uncle; hengst, stallion; woord, drake; bok, he-goat; aap, monkey.

6.

Voogd, guardian; wandelaar, walker; voetganger, pedestrian; becr, boar; bcr, bear; broeder, brother; bakker, baker; graaf, count; doffer, pigeon; meerkat, marmoset; tijger, tiger; bedrieger, deceiver; zanger, singer; wolf, wolf; mus, sparrow; keizer, emperor; neef, nephew; reiziger, traveller; knecht, man-servant; pcectoom, godfather; gemaal, consort; bok, buck; stier, bull; hecr, gentleman; schrijver, author; dichter, poet.
CONJUGATION OF THE VERBS
“hebben”, to have, and “zijn”, to be.

Onvolmaakt Tegenwoordige Tijd.—Present Tense.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Present Tense</th>
<th>Volmaakt Tegenwoordige Tijd—Perfect Tense</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ik</td>
<td>heb, I have.</td>
<td>ik ben, I am.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jij</td>
<td>hebt (u hebt), thou hast.</td>
<td>jij bent or zijn (u is), thou art.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hij</td>
<td>heeft (zij, het) heeft, he (she, it) has.</td>
<td>hij (zij, het) is, he (she, it) is.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wij</td>
<td>hebben, we have.</td>
<td>wij zijn, we are.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jullie</td>
<td>hebben (u, gij hebt), you have.</td>
<td>jullie zijn (u, gij zijn), you are.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zij</td>
<td>hebben, they have.</td>
<td>zij zijn, they are.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note.—Each of these verbs is its own auxiliary. See next tense.

Volmaakt Tegenwoordige Tijd—Perfect Tense.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Perfect Tense</th>
<th>Onvolmaakt Verleden Tijd.—Imperfect Tense</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ik</td>
<td>heb gehad, I have had.</td>
<td>ik had, I had.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jij</td>
<td>hebt (u heeft) gehad, thou hast had.</td>
<td>jij hadt (u had), thou hadst.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hij</td>
<td>heeft gehad, he has had.</td>
<td>hij had, he had.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wij</td>
<td>hebben gehad, we have had.</td>
<td>wij hadden, we had.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jullie</td>
<td>hebben gehad, you have had.</td>
<td>jullie hadden (u, gij hadt), you had.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zij</td>
<td>hebben gehad, they have had.</td>
<td>zij hadden, they had.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ik was, I was.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>jij waart (u was), thou wast.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>hij was, he was.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>wij waren, we were.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>jullie waren (u, gij waart), you were.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>zij waren, they were.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Volmaakt Verleden Tijd.—Pluperfect Tense.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Pluperfect Tense</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ik</td>
<td>had gehad, I had had.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jij</td>
<td>hadt (u had) gehad, thou hadst had.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hij</td>
<td>had gehad, he had had.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>was geweest, I had been.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>waart (u was) geweest, thou hadst been.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>was geweest, he had been.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
wij hadden gehad, we had had.  wij waren geweest, we had been.

jullie hadden (u, gij hadt) gehad, you had had.  jullie waren (u, gij waart) geweest, you had been.

zij hadden gehad, they had had.  zij waren geweest, they had been.

**Onvolmaakt Toekomende Tijd.—Future Tense.**

ik zal hebben, I shall have.  ik zal zijn, I shall be.

jij zult (u zal) hebben, thou wilt have.  jij zult (u zal) zijn, thou wilt be.

hij zal hebben, he will have.  hij zal zijn, he will be.

wij zullen hebben, we shall have.  wij zullen zijn, we shall be.

jullie zullen (u, gij zult) hebben, you will have.  jullie zullen (u, gij zult) zijn, you will be.

zij zullen hebben, they will have.  zij zullen zijn, they will be.

**Volmaakt Toekomende Tijd.—Future Perfect Tense.**

ik zal gehad hebben, I shall have had.  ik zal geweest zijn, I shall have been.

jij zult (u zal) gehad hebben, thou wilt have had.  jij zult (u zal) geweest zijn, thou wilt have been.

hij zal gehad hebben, he will have had.  hij zal geweest zijn, he will have been.

wij zullen gehad hebben, we shall have had.  wij zullen geweest zijn, we shall have been.

jullie zullen (u, gij zult) gehad hebben, you will have had.  jullie zullen (u, gij zult) geweest zijn, you will have been.

zij zullen gehad hebben, they will have had.  zij zullen geweest zijn, they will have been.

**Gebiedende Wijs.—Imperative Mood.**

**ENKELVOUD.**  **SINGULAR.**  **ENKELVOUD.**  **SINGULAR.**

laat mij hebben, heb.  let me have.  laat mij zijn, wees.

laat hem hebben, let him have.  laat hem zijn, let him be.

**MEERVOUD.**  **PLURAL.**  **MEERVOUD.**  **PLURAL.**

laat ons hebben, heb.  let us have  laat ons zijn, wees, zijt.

laat hen (ze) hebben, let them have.  laat hen (ze) zijn, let them be.

S7
TRANSLATION EXERCISE No. 4*. 

1.

First Rule of Construction.—When in a Principal Sentence the Verb consists of two parts (auxiliary and past participle), the auxiliary is retained in the position occupied by the English Verb, and the Past Participle forms the last word of the sentence.

This rule may only be broken when, various extensions or a subordinate sentence intervening, the distance between the two parts of the Verb is rendered greater than is consistent with clearness.

Note.—For the words of these and all the following translation exercises the student is referred to the English-Dutch Vocabulary.

I have a friend. I have [had] a friend (had). I had a friend. I had [had] a friend (had). I shall [have] a friend (have). I shall [have had] a friend (have had). You are my friend. You have [been] my friend (been). You were my friend. You had [been] my friend (been). You will [be] my friend (be). You will [have been] my friend (have been). Let us [be] friends (be). Be (sing.) my friend. Be (plur.) my friends. Let him [have] a book (have). Let me [have] a hat (have). Let us [have] courage (have). Thou hadst [had] a sister (had). You had [been] to (naar) Cape Town (been). They will [have] the pleasure (have). She had [had] a message from her uncle (had). My aunt had [been] to Wynberg (been). Be quiet, children.

*In these and all further translation exercises words given in brackets [] are meant to be left out, whereas those in parentheses () are supplied for translation.

2.

Second Rule of Construction.—In Infinitive phrases the Verb stands last.

[To be] young (to be). [To have] parents (to have). [To have been] in the street (been to have). [To have
had] a horse (had to have). To be obedient is good. It is good [to be] obedient (to be). To have brothers is pleasant. It is pleasant [to have] brothers (to have). To be obedient is to be good. To have parents is to be rich. To have a friend is to have a treasure. To have been rich is to have had friends. To be sickly is to be much at home. To have been ill was painful to (voor) him. To have health and to be diligent is to be happy. It was good of you to be in the street. It was kind of him to have bread and tea for us.

3.

Third rule of Construction.—In Subordinate Sentences the Verb stands last. When such a sentence has a lengthy extension, the verb may be placed in front of it, but may never be in front of the direct object.

The child is happy, because it [is] obedient (is). One (Men) has friends, if one [is] rich (is). I asked (vroeg) the girl why she [had] so little work (had). The boy would (zou) work in the garden, if he [had] a spade (had). I am rich because I [have] parents (have). The girl was poor, because she [had been] ill (had been). I should have gone out (uitgegaan zijn), if I [had had] a horse (had had). He would be tired if he [had been] at (op) school (had been). I asked the man where he was going (heen ging). He answered (antwoordde) me that he [was going] to Cape Town' (was going=ging). The harvest is small, as the weather [has been] bad (has been). Ask (Vraag) the boy, whether he [had] a horse yesterday¹ (had). She told (zei) me that she [was] very (erg) tired² last night¹ (was). I told my brother that the cows [were] very thin (were). He asked me if I [had had] a message from my uncle (had had). She told me that she [had been] sickly² [for] a long time¹ (had been). My brother told me that the poor man [could] not work (could=kon), because he [had] no (geen) tools (had).
How to translate the Interrogative, Negative, and Negative-Interrogative Forms.

No Auxiliary being used for the rendering of these forms, they are for all Verbs as simple as in English they are with the Verb "to be".

Do I have? = have I? = heb ik?
I do not have = I have not = ik heb niet.
Do I not have? = have I not? = heb ik niet?
Are you? = ben* je? or, is u?
You are not = jij bent niet, or, u is niet.
Are you not? = ben je niet? or, is u niet?

This rule applies to all Verbs.

Note.—The Interrogative "did" followed by an Infinitive, is frequently translated by the Perfect Tense: e.g., Did you see him? = have you seen him? Heb je (hcrft u) hcm gczien?

*In the Interrogative Form the final t of the second person of Verbs is dropped, that is, before jij (not gif). If for other reasons this Pronoun follows its Verb, the effect is similar.

4.

Have you an uncle? Yes, I have two uncles and two aunts. Are you young, my boy? Yes, sir, quite young. How old are you? I am twelve. Are you not older, John? No, sir, I am just twelve. Did you have breakfast afterwards? Did you have a horse yesterday? No, I had a bicycle. Were you not tired last night? A little, yes, but not much (erg). Did his uncle have (the) fever? His uncle had (the) fever, and his aunt too. Will he not (yet) have had a (not a—geen) message [yet]? He will not have had a message before twelve o'clock. Did she not have much pain? No, not very much. Are you obedient to your parents? I am always obedient to my parents and teachers. Will you be in school to-morrow? I shall be in school at nine o'clock.
SPEAK-AND-ACT EXERCISE No. 9.

Uit rijden gaan.—To go for a ride.

1. De stalmeester haalt mijn rijpaard uit de stal. The stable boy takes my riding horse out of the stable.

2. Hij poetst het op met een lap. He rubs it up with a rag.

3. Hij zet het paard de teom aan. He puts a bridle on the horse.

4. Dan legt hij het zadel op zijn rug. Then he puts the saddle on to its back.

5. Hij gespt het zadel met een buikgordel vast. He straps the saddle down with a girth.

6. Hij verandert de stijgbeugels naar mijn maat. He changes the stirrups according to my measure.

7. Hij maakt de kinketting vast. He fastens the curb chain.

8. Hij leidt het paard naar de voordeur. He leads the horse to the front door.

9. Hij houdt de teom vast terwijl ik opstijg. He holds the bridle while I mount.


VERB EXERCISE.

halen—ik haal, haalde, heb (had) gehaald, zal halen (gehaald hebben).

poetsen—ik poets, poetste, heb (had) gepoetst, zal poetsen (gepoetst hebben).

zetten—ik zet, zette, heb (had) gezet, zal zetten (gezet hebben).

leggen—ik leg, legde, heb (had) gelegd, zal leggen (gelegd hebben).

gespen—ik gesp, gespte, heb (had) gespens, zal gespen (gespens hebben).

veranderen—ik verander, veranderde, heb (had) veranderd, zal veranderen (veranderd hebben).

maken—ik maak, maakte, heb (had) gemaakt, zal maken (gemaakt hebben).

leiden—ik leid, leidde, heb (had) geleid, zal leiden (geleid hebben).

houden—ik houd, hield, heb (had) gehouden, zal houden (gehouden hebben).

gaan—ik ga, ging, ben (was) gegaan, zal gaan (gegaan zijn).
SUBSEQUENT EXERCISES.

If the student has taken the hint and begun constructing his own Exercises, he should now try to proceed to form new sentences (other than continuous Speak-and-Act Exercises). Let him, however, take warning, not to go beyond the ordinary every-day things he sees about him. What is most needful in language-study is to express the common experiences of life, and yet it is mostly there that the ordinary learner commonly fails.

INDEPENDENT SENTENCES.

(Built on the above Verbs).

I fetch a plate from the kitchen.

Did you fetch John to go for a walk?

When will he come for his money?

Please fetch me a glass of water: I am thirsty

He will not return, before he has taken his degree.

The servant girl is blacking my mother's shoes

The birds trim their feathers in the morning.

He has disappeared.

That soldier has cleaned the buttons of his tunic.

You must polish the door-handles to-day, Sannie.

Ik haal een bord uit de kerk en.

Heb je Jan gehaald om te gaan wandelen?

Wanneer komt hij zijn geld halen?

Haal mij toch een glas water, ik heb dorst.

Hij zal niet terugkomen, eer hij zijn graad gehaald heeft.

De meid poest mijn moeders schoenen.

De vogels poetsen 's morgens hun veren.

Hij heeft de plaat gepoest.

Die soldaat heeft de knopen van zijn jas opgepoest.

Je moet vandaag de deur-knoppen poetsen, Sannie.
De kleine boeken heb ik op de tafel neergelegd.
I put the small books down on the table.

De grote boeken heb ik op de planken gezet.
I have put the large books on the shelves.

Zet je hoed op, en leg die handschoenen weg.
Put on your hat, and put away those gloves.

Waar kan ik die shilling gelegd hebben?
Where can I have put that shilling down?

Je hebt hem zeker in je zak gestoken.
You must have put it into your pocket.

READING EXERCISE.

[About Horses.]

Toen ik vroeger in 't onderveld woonde, hield ik heel wat paarden. Mijn stal was altijd vol. Daar hield ik a number of horses. My stable was always full. There kept I mijn twee karpaarden, mijn rijpaard, en een paar ponies voor de dames. De andere paarden waren in het veld, and came only now and then home (for) a little fed up and schoongemaakt te worden. Het was prettig zo veel paarden te houden. Hier in 't bovenland gaat dat niet, om alles hier zo veel geld kost. 's Morgens uit rijden te gaan, is omtrent de gezondste lichaamsoefening. Men ademt dan zuivere lucht in, en de hele dag voelt men de uitwerking van zo'n rit. Waar zal ik ooit weer zulk effect van such a ride. Where shall I ever again such
een rijpaard krijgen als mijn Fleetfoot was? Er was een rijpaard krijgen als mijn Fleetfoot was? There was a riding-horse get as my Fleetfoot was? There was geen fout aan hem. Zijn vel was als zijde; zijn no fault in him. His skin was like silk; his maanharen en staart waren lang en golvend; hij boog mane and tail were long and waving; he arched zijn nek zo edel en fier, en had zulk een prachtige gang. his neck so nobly and proudly, and had such (a) beautiful action. Jammer, dat hij zo kieskeurig was. Hij wou alleen zijn (A) pity that he so particular was. He would only his baas dragen, en goode iedere andere ruiter van zijn rug. master carry, and threw every other rider from his back. Waarschijnlijk was dat, omdat zijn meester zelf hem Probably was that, because his master himself him gedresseerd had. Hij deed nooit een verkeerde stap, en broken in had. He made never a false step, and was op een ongebaand pad even betrouwbaar als een was on an unmade road as reliable as a muil. Zijn draf en galop waren even gemakkelik, en mule. His trot and canter were equally easy, and zijn stap was lang en gelijk. Het ging mij aan het hart, his step was long and even. It went me to the heart, toen ik hem verkopen moest, want ik hield van Fleetfoot when I him sell had to, for I was fond of Fleetfoot als van een vriend. as of a friend.

GRAMMAR EXERCISES.—Taaloeefeningen.

Fill up the blanks in the following exercises by inserting de or het before Nouns, and supplying any other word or ending missing.

1.

— koper van Zuid-Afrika wordt in Wales gesmolten. The copper of South Africa is in Wales smelted.

— Vrijstaat was — republiek. — haver zal in — midden The Free State was a republic. The oats will in the middle
van — zomer rijp zijn. Deze man klaagt altijd over of the summer ripe be. This man complains always of — gebreken van — ouderdom. Lukas, — schrijver the infirmities of (the) old age. St. Luke, the author van — derde evangelie, was — dokter. Ik kan u — of the third Gospel, was a physician. I can you the juiste tijdstip van — gebeurtenis niet zeggen. — exact date of the event not tell. The genootschap van schone kunsten heeft — prijs voor — association of fine arts has a price for the beste tekening uitgevoerd. — kerkhof ligt aan — voet best drawing offered. The churchyard lies at the foot van — berg. Bij — tijding van — aankomst van haar of the mountain. At the news of the arrival of her moeder straalde — kleine meisje — blijdschap uit — mother shone (to) the little girl the joy out of the ogen. Na — dood van Koning Willem — derde werd eyes. After the death of King William the Third was — Groot-Hertogdom Luxemburg van — kroon van the Grand-Duchy of Luxembourg from the crown of Holland gescheiden. Er is — grote zwerm sprinkhanen Holland separated. There is a large swarm of locusts over — eigendom van — magistraat getrokken; ze hebben over the property of the magistrate passed; they have al — gras en — melies afgevreten, zo dat — vee all the grass and the mealies eaten off, so that the cattle nu geen voedsel heeft. Toen — Melrose gisteren now no food have. As the Melrose yesterday middag — haven van Liverpool uitstoomde, is — afternoon the harbour of Liverpool was steaming out, she tegen — Australiëse boot aangevaren, die daar voor with the Australian boat collided, which there at anker lag; het is aan — tegenwoordigheid van geest anchor was riding; it is to the presence of mind van — eerste stuurman te danken, dat — beide schepen of the first officer owing, that (the) both ships er zonder grote schade afgekomen zijn. er zonder grote schade come off have.
2.

Deze schrijf— heeft met haar eerste boek grote
This authoress has with her first book great
opgang gemaakt. — opera-zanger— zal zichzelf op —
success had. The opera-singer will herself on the
piano begeleiden. Door — val uit — boom heeft —
piano accompany. Through the fall out (of) the tree has the
man zich aan — been verwond. Hagar, — dienst— van
man himself on the leg wounded. Hagar, the servant of
Sara, trok met haar zoon — woestijn van Arabië in. Ik
Sarah, went with her son the desert of Arabia into. I
heb met — zwarte draad — patroon van — kant op —
have with a black thread the pattern of the lace on the
witte zijde aangegeven. Door — omvallen van —
white silk indicated. Through the capsizing of the
oilelamp is er — grote vlek op — marmeren vloer
oil-lamp is a large stain on the marble floor
van — gang gekomen. — schip is onder geleide van —
of the passage come. The ship is under guidance of an
ervaren loods veilig in — haven aangeland. Er
experienced pilot safely in the harbour arrived. There
bestaat — grote overeenkomst tussen — klimaat en —
exists a great similarity between the climate and the
voortbrengselen -van — Kaap Kolonie en — Zuiden van
products of the Cape Colony and the South of
Europa. Bij — onlangs gehouden schietwedstrijd
Europe. At the recently held shooting-match
heeft — zoon van — oude baron— — palm van —
has the son of the old baroness the palm of the
overwinning weggedragen. — —, die men van St.
victory carried off. The servants, which one from St.
Helena invoert, zijn niet altijd van — beste slag. — —
Helena imports, are not always of the best sort. The Queen
van Groot Britannië draagt tevens — titel van
of Great Britain bears at the same time the title of
— van Indië. — bedelaar— die van morgen
Empress of India The beggar-woman who this morning
aan — deur was, deed zulk — roerend verhaal van — at the door was, gave such a touching account of the
dood van haar — dat mijn — — tranen in — death of her husband, that (to) my mother the tears in the
ogen sprongen. — glas voor — ramen is met — eyes came. The glass for the windows is with a
diamant gesneden.
diamond cut.

KONVERSATIE.

wijze van groeten en aanspreken.

1. Goede morgen, mijnheer.
2. Goede avond, mevrouw.
3. Hoe gaat het u?
4. Hoe vaart u?
5. Heel wel, dank u.
6. Zo tussenbeide, dank u.
7. Ik ben vandaag niet zo heel wel.
8. Ik voel me heel onwél.
9. Ik voel me erg ziek.
10. Wat schijnt u?
11. Ik heb zwarte hoofdpijn.
12. Dat spijt me.
13. Adieu; tot wederziens.
14. Mag ik het genoegen hebben, u te vergezellen?
15. Hoe heerlijk zijn de avonden dezer dagen, vindt u niet?
16. Zullen we niet nog een eindje verder wandelen?
17. Met genoegen: de wandeling doet me goed.
18. Is u van plan, naar de stadhoudersburg te gaan van avond?

CONVERSATION.

forms of greeting and address.

Good morning, sir.

Good evening, madam.

How are you?

How do you do?

Quite well, thank you.

Middling, thank you.

I am not so well today.

I feel very unwell.

I feel quite ill.

What is the matter?

I have a bad headache.

I am sorry for you.

Goodbye, till we meet again.

May I have the pleasure of accompanying you?

We are having delightful evenings, don't you think so?

Shall we not go a little further?

With pleasure: the walk is doing me good.

Do you intend going to the theatre tonight?
20. Waar zullen we dan heenga-an?
21. Naar de opera; hoe kan u nog twijfelen?
22. Heeft u van de dood van mevrouw B. gehoord?
23. Ja, ik ben daar vandaag gaan kondoleren.
24. Heeft u een prettige dag gehad bij mijnheer A.?
25. Hoe zou het anders kunnen?
26. Ik feliciteer u wel met uw geboortedag!
27. Veel heil met het nieuwe jaar!
29. Ik ben u zeer verplicht.
30. Ik ben zeer gevoelig voor de eer.
31. Zou u mij een gunst willen bewijzen?
32. Van harte gaarn, als ik het kan.
33. Doe het toch vooral niet!
34. Heeft u mijnheer C. een visite gemaakt?
35. Ik heb mijn naamkaartje achtergelaten, want ik vond hem niet thuis.

No, I don't think the play will be an amusing one. Where shall we go then?

To the opera, how can you be in doubt?

Did you hear of the death of Mrs. B.?

Yes, I called there to-day to express my sympathy.

Did you spend a pleasant day with Mr. A.?

How could it be otherwise?

I wish you many happy returns of your birthday.

A happy new year to you!

Many thanks.

I am much obliged to you.

I appreciate the honour very much.

Would you do me a favour?

I shall be most happy if I can.

Pray, don't do it!

Have you called upon Mr. C.?

I left my card, because I found him out.
CHAPTER VI.

DECLENSION.
(Verbuiging.)

I. The changes of form to which Articles, Nouns, Adjectives and Pronouns are subject, are together called their declension.

NOTE.—As far as Nouns, and Adjective Words (including Articles) are concerned, most of their flexion-forms have ceased to be acknowledged in the Simplified Grammar. However, for the sake of obtaining the right understanding of all grammatical forms met with in literature, they are all here given, with due observance of what is obsolete, and what current.

Declension expresses Gender, Geslacht; Number, Getal; and Case, Naamval.

The grammatical or word Gender, i.e. the way of declining a Noun was formerly distinguished as: Masculine, Mannelik; Feminine, Vrouwelik; and Neuter, Onzijdig.

There are two numbers: Singular, Enkelvoud, and Plural, Meervoud.

There are four Cases: Nominative, Nominatief; Genitive, Genitief; Dative, Datief; and Accusative, Accusatief—more commonly called: eerste, tweede, derde en vierde Naamval, first, second, third, and fourth Case.
II. NOMINATIVE CASE.

1. The Subject of a sentence is in the Nominative Case: *De hond blaft*, the dog barks.

2. The name of a person or thing addressed, *de aangesproken Persoon* — Latin Vocative — is in the Nominative Case; *Jongens, let op!* Boys, pay attention!

3. The Verbs *zijn*, to be, *worden*, to become, *heten*, to be called, *blijven*, to remain, *scheijnen*, to seem, *lijken*, to seem to be, and *blijken*, to appear to be, take the Nominative Case before and after them.

   *Hij is mijn vriend* — he is my friend.
   *Hij lijkt een vreemdeling* — he seems a stranger.
   *Hij wordt soldaat* — he becomes a soldier.

   **Note.** — The student should notice that the subject and the person named by the predicate of which these Verbs form part, are the very same. They are two names for the same person, linked by a Copulative Verb, the meaning of which expresses no action.

4. A Noun in apposition to a Nominative case is likewise in the Nominative case: *Jakob, de oude tuinier, is gekomen*, Jacob, the old gardener, has come; *Hij woont bij mij als vriend*, he lives in my house as a friend.

III. GENITIVE CASE.

The Genitive Case expresses possession, relation, descent, or part of some whole.

**Examples:**

**Possession:** *Mijn vaders huis*, my father’s house.— This is now commonly expressed as: *Mijn vader z’n huis*.

**Relation:** *De stralen der zon*, the sun’s rays.— Now: *De zon z’n stralen*.
Descent: De kinderen onzer tante, our aunt's children.—Now: Onze tante haar kinderen.

Part of a whole: Een bete broods, a bit of bread.—This expression, being idiomatic, remains as it was.

IV. DATIVE CASE.

1. The person or thing profiting or losing by an action, is in the Dative Case: Geef mij dat mes, give me that knife; Gij doet mij verdriet aan, you cause me grief.

2. The Personal Pronoun when used instead of a Possessive Pronoun, is in the Dative Case: Hij wast zich de handen, he washes his hands, for: hij wast zijn handen.

V. ACCUSATIVE CASE.

The Direct Object of a Transitive Verb is in the Accusative Case: De metselaar bouwde een huis, the mason built a house.

2. The Verbs: noemen, to call, heten (trans.) to call, schelden, to call (names), maken, to make, prijzen, to praise, bevinden, to find to be, achten, to consider, zich betonen, to show oneself, zich gevoelen, to feel oneself, zich tekenen, to sign oneself, are followed by two Accusative Cases. Ik teken mij uw dienaar, I sign myself your servant; Hij noemt mij zijn vriend, he calls me his friend.

Note.—Observe that the Personal Pronoun and the Noun following it are in apposition, and, therefore, in the same case.

3. Every Noun governed by any Preposition is in the Accusative Case: De kat ligt op de stoel, the cat lies on the chair.
DECLENSION

Observation.— In old Dutch some Prepositions governed the Genitive, and others the Dative case. This fact is traceable in the following expressions:—

Genitive: *binnenshuis*, inside the house; *tussendoeks*, between decks; *ondershands*, under hand; *buitenstijds*, unseasonably; *voorsands*, for the time being.

Dative: *metertijd* (*met der tijd*), in time; *ter ore komen* (*te der ore*), to come to one’s ears, to hear; *onder eed*, under oath; *bij moorde*, by verbal message; *van goedt huize*, of good family; *met dien verstande*, on condition; *in gemoede*, conscientiously; *uit dien hoofde*, on that account; *te goeder ure*, at an auspicious moment.


5. A Noun in apposition to an Accusative Case is likewise in the Accusative Case: *Ik roep Willem, de koetsier*, I am calling William, the driver. *De naam van Alexander de Grote als veroveraar, is alom bekend*, the name of Alexander the Great, as conqueror, is universally known.

VI. Important Observations on the Use of Cases.

1. The special forms once observed for the Possessive and Dative Cases are now wholly discarded. Their places are supplied by the Nominative Case with Prepositions. *(Vide Chap. III, where the first forms of declension are shown.)*

Of the father, *des vaders*, is now *van de vader*, or *de vader z’n*.

To the father, *den vader*, is now *aan de vader*, or *voor de vader*.

Thus: *ik kocht mijn vader een paard*, is now *ik kocht een paard voor mijn vader*. 
2. Practically, there is now no other case-form than the first (Nominative). Instead of the declensions of old, we now say, and write as well: de man, the man; van de man, of the man; aan de man, to the man; de man, the man. And again, een man, a man; van een man, of a man; aan een man, to a man; een man, a man;—and so on, regardless of gender-distinctions.

3. The Demonstrative Pronouns deze (Neuter form dit), this, and die (Neuter form dat), that, and the Possessive Pronoun onze (Neuter form ons), our, follow the declension of the definite article de (Neuter het), the, in having one word for de-words, and another for het-words, the former being used before Plurals as well.

Other Adjective words have but one form, used before both classes of words, and undergoing no change in the Plural.

We thus say:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{(Sing.) } & \text{de, deze, die, onze} & \text{(Sing.) } & \text{het dit, dat, ons} \\
& \text{boom.} & \text{huis.} \\
\text{(Plur.) } & \text{de, deze, die, onze} & \text{(Plur.) } & \text{de, deze, die, onze} \\
& \text{bomen.} & \text{huiizen.}
\end{align*}
\]

But without any change:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{(Sing.) } & \text{mijn, zijn, haar, uw, hun boom or huis.} \\
\text{(Plur.) } & \text{mijn, zijn, haar, uw, hun bomen or huizen.}
\end{align*}
\]

4. All Adjectives take e before any Nouns, whether de-words or het-words, Singular or Plural, except in the following case:

The Adjective takes no e before the Singular of het-words, when preceded by one of the following eight words: een, a (an); geen, no; enig, some; elk, each; ieder, every; zeker, a certain; menig, many; welk, which.

Note.—This is likewise the case after the Numeral Adjectives veel, wat, and sommig.
examples.

Een, geen, elk, ieder, menig, welk klein kind, enz. A, no, each, every, many a, which small child, etc.
Wat fris water. Some fresh water.
Veel vers brood. Much new bread.
Sommig wit meel. Some kind of white flour.

Compare het laatste boek, the last book, with een prettig boek, a nice book.

5. Adjective words used as Nouns take the ending en in the Plural when referring to persons, and e when referring to things. Such are de anderen or andere, the others; sommigen or sommige, some; velen or velc, many; de mijnen, my people; de mijne, mine (of things).

VII. The following Declension-forms are obsolete in South Africa. They are here given so that the student may recognise their meanings when he meets them in his reading.

obsolete declensions.

mannelijk.

enkelvoud.

1 nv. de, deze, dit, onze goede vader.
2 nv. des, deze, diens, onzes goedenvaders.
3nv. den, dezen, dien, onzen goedenvader.
4 vn. den, dezen, dien, onzen goedenvader.

meervoud.

1 nv. de, dezcl, dit, onze goede vaders.
2 nv. der, deze, dier, onzer, goedevaders.
3. nv. den, dezen, dier, onzen goedenvaders.
4 nv. de, dezcl, dit, onze goede vaders.

masculine.

singular.

nom. the, this, that, our good father.
Gen. of the, this, that, our good father.
Dat. to the, this, that, our good father.
Acc. the, this, that, our good father.

plural.

nom. the, these, those, our good fathers.
Gen. of the, these, those, our good fathers.
Dat. to the, these, those, our good fathers.
Acc. the, these, those, our good fathers.
### OBSOLETE DECLENSIONS (con.)

#### Vrouwelik.

**Enkelvoud.**

1 **nv.** de, deze, die, onze oude tante.
2 **nv.** der, deze, dit, ons kraan tante.
3 **nv.** der, deze, die, onzer oude tante.
4 **nv.** de, deze, die, onze oude tante.

**Meervoud.**

1 **nv.** de, deze, die, onze oude tantes.
2 **nv.** der, deze, dit, ons kraan tantes.
3 **nv.** der, deze, die, onzer oude tantes.
4 **nv.** de, deze, die, onze oude tantes.

#### Neutier.

**Enkelvoud.**

1 **nv.** het, dit, dat, ons klein kind.
2 **nv.** der, deze, die, onzer oude tante.
3 **nv.** der, deze, die, onzer oude tante.
4 **nv.** de, deze, die, onze oude tante.

**Meervoud.**

1 **nv.** de, deze, die, onze kleine kinderen.
2 **nv.** der, deze, die, onzer kleine kinderen.
3 **nv.** der, deze, die, onzer kleine kinderen.
4 **nv.** de, deze, die, onze kleine kinderen.

#### Feminine.

**Singular.**

Nom. the, this, that, our old aunt.
Gen. of the, this, that, our old aunt.
Dat. to the, this, that, our old aunt.
Acc. the, this, that, our old aunt.

**Plural.**

Nom. the, these, those, our old aunts.
Gen. of the, these, those, our old aunts.
Dat. to the, these, those, our old aunts.
Acc. the, these, those, our old aunts.
OBSOLETE DECLENSIONS (con.)

MANNELIK.

Enkelvoud.

1 nv. dezelfde man. Nom. the same man.
2 nv. dezelfden mans. Gen. of the same man.
3 nv. denzelfden man. Dat. to the same man.
4 nv. denzelfden man. Acc. the same man.

VROUWELIK.

Enkelvoud.

1 nv. dezelfde vrouw. Nom. the same woman.
2 nv. derzelfde vrouw. Gen. of the same woman.
3 nv. derzelfde vrouw. Dat. to the same woman.
4 nv. derzelfde vrouw. Acc. the same woman.

ONZIJDIG.

Enkelvoud.

1 nv. hetzelfde kind. Nom. the same child.
2 nv. dezelfde kind. Gen. of the same child.
3 nv. hetzelfde kind. Dat. to the same child.
4 nv. hetzelfde kind. Acc. the same child.

MEERVOUD VOOR DE DRIE GESLACHTEN.

Plural for the three genders.

1 nv. dezelfde mannen, vrouwen, kinderen.
2 nv. derzelfde mannen, vrouwen, kinderen.
3 nv. denzelfden mannen, vrouwen, kinderen.
4 nv. dezelfde mannen, vrouwen, kinderen.

MANNELIK.

Enkelvoud.

1 nv. een, mijn, uw, zijn, haar, hun grote hond. Nom. a, my, your, his, her, their large dog.
2 nv. eens, mijns, uws, zijn, haar, hun groten honden. Gen. of a, my, your, his, her, their large dog.
3 nv. eenen, mijnen, uwen, zijnen, haren, hunnen, groten hond. Dat. to a, my, your, his, her, their large dog.
4 nv. eenen, mijnen, uwen, zijnen, haren, hunnen, groten hond. Acc. a, my, your, his, her, their large dog.
### OBSOLETE DECLENSIONS (con.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VROUWELIJK</th>
<th>FEMININE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Enkelvoud.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Singular.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 nv. eene, mijne, uwe, zijne, hare, hunne, witte muts.</td>
<td>Nom. a, my, your, his, her, their white cap.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 nv. eener, mijner, uwer, zijner, harer, hunner, witte muts.</td>
<td>Gen. of a, my, your, his, her, their white cap.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 nv. eenner, mijner, uwer, zijner, harer, hunner, witte muts.</td>
<td>Dat. to a, my, your, his, her, their white cap.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 nv. eene, mijne, uwe, zijne, hare, hunne, witte muts.</td>
<td>Acc. a, my, your, his, her, their white cap.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>ONZIJDIG.</strong></th>
<th><strong>Neuter.</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Enkelvoud.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Singular.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 nv. een, mijn, uw, zijn, haar, hun oude (c) huis.</td>
<td>Nom. a, my, your, his, her, their old house.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 nv. eens, mijn, uw, zijn, haar, hun oude (c) huis.</td>
<td>Gen. of a, my, your, his, her, their old house.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 nv. een, mijn, uw, zijn, haar, hun oude (c) huis.</td>
<td>Dat. to a, my, your, his, her, their old house.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 nv. een, mijn, uw, zijn, haar, hun oude (c) huis.</td>
<td>Acc. a, my, your, his, her, their old house.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>MEERVOUD.</strong></th>
<th><strong>Plural.</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mannelijk.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Masculine.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 nv. —, mijne, uwe, zijne, hare, hunne, grote honden, enz.</td>
<td>Nom. —, my, your, his, her, their large dogs, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Vrouwenlik.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Feminine.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 nv. —, mijne, uwe, zijne, hare, hunne witte mutsen, enz.</td>
<td>Nom. —, my, your, his, her, their white caps, etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>ONZIJDIG.</strong></th>
<th><strong>Neuter.</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 nv. —, mijne, uwe, zijne, hare, hunne oude huizen, enz.</td>
<td>Nom. — my, your, his, her, their old houses, etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
OBSOLETE DECLENSIONS (con.)

Plural of Een oud huis, etc.

1 nv. oude huizen. Nom. old houses.
2 nv. ouder huizen, or van Gen. of old houses.
   oude huizen.
3 nv.ouden huizen, or aan Dat. to old houses.
   oude huizen.
4 nv. oude huizen. Acc. old houses.

Nouns may be preceded by an Adjective without any defining word. In this case the Adjective, being the first word, used to some extent to take the declension of the Article.

Mannelijk. Masculine.

Enkelvoud. Singular.

1 nv. oude wijn. Nom. old wine.
2 nv. oude wijns (or van Gen. of old wine.
   oude wijn).
3 nv. oude (or aan oude) Dat. to old wine.
   wijn.
4 nv. oude wijn. Acc. old wine.

Meervoud. Plural.

1 nv. oude wijnen. Nom. old wines.
2 nv. ouder (or van oude Gen. of old wines.
   wijnen).
3 nv. oude (or aan oude) Dat. to old wines.
   wijnen.
4 nv. oude wijnen. Acc. old wines.

Vrouwelijk. Feminine.

Enkelvoud. Singular.

1 nv. fijne kant. Nom. fine lace.
2 nv. van fijne kant. Gen. of fine lace.
3 nv. aan fijne kant. Dat. to fine lace.
4 nv. fijne kant. Acc. fine lace.
OBSCOLE DECLENSIONS (con.)

**MEERVOUD.**

1 nv. *fijne kanten.*

2 nv. *fijner kanten,* of *van fijne kanten.*

3 nv. *fijnen kanten,* or *aan fijne kanten.*

4 nv. *fijne kanten.*

**ONZIJDIG.**

1 nv. *helder licht.*

2 nv. *van helder licht.*

3 nv. *aan helder licht.*

4 nv. *helder licht.*

**PLURAL.**

Nom. *fine laces.*

Gen. *of fine laces.*

Dat. *to fine laces.*

Acc. *fine laces.*

**NEUTER.**

1 nv. *heldere lichten.*

2 nv. *helderer lichten,* or *van heldere lichten.*

3 nv. *helderen lichten,* or *aan heldere lichten.*

4 nv. *heldere lichten.*

Nom. *bright lights.*

Gen. *of bright lights.*

Dat. *to bright lights.*

Acc. *bright lights.*

In titles, attributive Adjectives are placed after the Nouns which they qualify. Their declension, however, used not to be affected by their position, e.g.:

**HANNELIK.**

**ENKELVOUD.**

1 nv. *Peter de Grote.*

2 nv. *Peters des Groten.*

3 nv. *Peter den Groten.*

4 nv. *Peter den Groten.*

Nom. *Peter the Great.*

Gen. *of Peter the Great.*

Dat. *to Peter the Great.*

Acc. *Peter the Great.*

By far the most Masculine and Neuter Nouns used to take *s* as a sign of the Possessive (Genitive) case. These were said to belong to the Strong Declension (*Sterke Verbuiging*). Some few, however, formed their Possessive
case in *en*, belonging to what was called the Weak Declension (*Zwakke Verbuiging*). Such were:

1. The Masculine words: *mens*, man; *heer*, gentleman; *vorst*, sovereign; *graaf*, count; *prins*, prince; *hertog*, duke; *profeet*, prophet; *nar*, clown; and *paus*, pope.

2. The Neuter word: *hart*, heart.

3. All Adjectives used as Nouns, and the Possessive Pronouns: *de wijze*, the wise man; *de goede*, the good man; *de mijne*, mine.

Their declension was as follows:

**Mannelijk.**

Enkelvoud.

1 nv. *de vorst.*
2 nv. *des vorsten.*
3 nv. *den vorst.*
4 nv. *den vorst.*

1 nv. *de goede.*
2 nv. *des goeden.*
3 nv. *den goede.*
4 nv. *den goede.*

Meervoud.

1 nv. *de vorsten.*
2 nv. *der vorsten.*
3 nv. *den vorsten.*
4 nv. *de vorsten.*

**Masculine.**

Singular.

Nom. the sovereign.
Gen. of the sovereign.
Dat. to the sovereign.
Acc. the sovereign.

Nom. the good one.
Gen. of the good one.
Dat. to the good one.
Acc. the good one.

Nom. the sovereigns.
Gen. of the sovereigns.
Dat. to the sovereigns.
Acc. the sovereigns.

Nom. the good.
Gen. of the good.
Dat. to the good.
Acc. the good.

*De mijne*, mine, or my own; *de uwe*, yours, or your own; *de onze*, ours, or our own, etc., were declined as follows:
**OBSOLETE DECLENSIONS (con.)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mannelijk</th>
<th>Vrouwelik</th>
<th>Onzijdig</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Enkelvoud.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Enkelvoud.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Enkelvoud.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 nv. <em>de mijnc.</em></td>
<td>1 nv. <em>de mijnc.</em></td>
<td>1 nv. <em>het mijnc.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 nv. <em>den mijne.</em></td>
<td>3 nv. <em>der (or de) mijnc.</em></td>
<td>3 nv. <em>het mijnc.</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Meervoud voor de drie geslachten.**

(Plural for the three genders.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(Meaning Persons.)</th>
<th>(Meaning Things.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 nv. <em>de mijnen.</em></td>
<td>1 nv. <em>de mijne.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 nv. <em>der mijncn.</em></td>
<td>2 nv. <em>der mijnc.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 nv. <em>den mijnen.</em></td>
<td>3 nv. <em>den mijncn.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 nv. <em>de mijncn.</em></td>
<td>4 nv. <em>de mijnc.</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Compound Pronouns (i.e. Pronouns, the first part of which is the definite Article) likewise followed the Weak Declension: *degene*, he, or whoever; *dezelfde*, the same; *dezulke*, such an one. Example:—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mannelijk</th>
<th>Vrouwelik</th>
<th>Onzijdig</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Enkelvoud.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Enkelvoud.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Enkelvoud.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 nv. <em>dezelfde.</em></td>
<td>1 nv. <em>dezelfde.</em></td>
<td>1 nv. <em>hetselven.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 nv. <em>dezelfde.</em></td>
<td>3 nv. <em>dezelfden.</em></td>
<td>3 nv. <em>hetselven.</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Meervoud voor alle geslachten.**

(Meaning Persons.)

(Meaning Things.)

1 nv. *dezelfden.*
2 nv. *dezelfden.*
3 nv. *dezelfden.*
4 nv. *dezelfden.*
SPEAK-AND-ACT EXERCISE No. 10.

Brood bakken.—To bake bread.

1. Ik meng een bak meel met water. I mix a basin of flour with water.
2. Ik doe er wat suurdeeg bij. I add a little yeast to it.
3. Ik kneed het met mijn handen door elkander. I knead it with my hands.
4. Ik zie aan de blazen wanneer het klaar is. I see by the bubbles when it is ready.
5. Ik smeer de bakpannen met gesmolten vet. I oil the baking pans with melted fat.
6. Ik doe het deeg in de pannen. I put the dough into the pans.
7. Ik snijd er een paar strepen in met een mes. I make a couple of incisions in it with a knife.
8. Ik schuif de pannen in de oven om te bakken. I shove the pans into the oven to bake.
9. Ik keer de broden in de pannen om. I turn the loaves in the pans.
10. Zo wordt het brood gebakken. So the bread is baked.

VERB EXERCISE.

mengen—ik meng, mengde, heb (had) gemengd, zal mengen, (gemeengd hebben).
bijdoen—ik doe bij, deed bij, heb (had) bijgedaan, zal bijdoen (bijgedaan hebben).
kneden—ik kneed, kneedde, heb (had) gekneed, zal kneden (gekneed hebben).
zien—ik zie, zag, heb (had) gezien, zal zien (gezien hebben).
smeren—ik smeer, smeerde, heb (had) gesmeerd, zal smeren (gesmeerd hebben).
snijden—ik snijd, sneed, heb (had) gesneden, zal snijden (gesneden hebben).
schuiven—ik schuif, schoof, heb (had) geschoven, zal schuiven (geschoven hebben).
onkeren—ik keer om, keerde om, heb (had) omgekeerd, zal onkeren (omgekeerd hebben).
bakken—ik bak, bakte, heb (had) gebakken, zal bakken (gebakken hebben).
SUBSEQUENT EXERCISES.

1. In addition to the usual repetitions of the above sentences in the various tenses and persons (which should never be omitted), the student should construct a number of sentences containing different parts of the Verbs of this Exercise.

2. It should be noted that the continuity of action expressed by the Progressive Form in English, is differently (and variously) expressed in Dutch.

Verbs have no Progressive Form. Other expressions are provided to take its place, as follows:

1. I am reading—ik ben aan het lezen.

2. I am writing—ik ben bezig te schrijven.
   or simply:—ik lees, ik schrijf.

3. I was reading when he came in, ik was aan het lezen, toen hij binnenkwam.
   or simply:—ik las, toen hij binnenkwam.

4. He is always reading—hij is maar altijd aan het lezen.
   or simply:—hij leest maar altijd.

5. Is he going? gaat hij al?

6. He had gone, but he is coming back—hij was weg, maar hij komt al terug.

7. Have you heard about the fire? Yes, I have been hearing about it—Heeft u van de brand gehoord? Ja, ik heb er al van gehoord.

With this matter before him, the student should make some sentences with the help of the above Verbs, introducing the Progressive Form.
3. It should now be possible to branch out into continuous sentences, strung together in the form of a composition, as for instance:

*Kom (come), Minnie, wij gaan eens (just) een brood (loaf) bakken van morgen (this morning). Wil jij het deeg kneden, of zal ik het doen? Ik heb het meel hier in de bak; geef (give) mij maar (but) wat (a little) warm water. Het water moet niet kokend (boiling) zijn (be); ik moet er (it) mijn hand in (into) kunnen (be able) steken (to put). Is er nog (still) zuurdeeg in de bottel? Kijk toch eens (just have a look). Er was gisteren (yesterday) nog (still) wat (a little); en ik geloof (think) niet, dat ik het gebruikt (used) heb.*

This composition should be complete, or another written wholly in the student’s own words.

**GRAMMAR EXERCISES.—Taaloeefeningen.**

*Note.—In the declension of Adjectives the spelling rule holds good, that when the last syllable has an imperfect vowel which is to be preserved, the final consonant must be doubled: *stil*, quiet, *stille*; *dik*, thick, *dikke.*

A dash after an Adjective does not always mean that an *e* should be supplied.

1.

*Fill up the blanks in the following sentences:*

I*k heb* — lang— brief van — trouw— vriend ontvangen. Op — eerst— avond na — slag bezochten received. On the first evening after the battle visited wij — toneel van — vreselijk— strijd. In — dicht— we the scene of that terrible conflict. In the dense bos onder — dor— bladeren verborgen, lag — giftig— bush under the dry leaves hidden, lay a poisonous adder. — hoog—, prachtig— huis is door — beroemd— adder. This high, beautiful house was by that famous
engels— architect gebouwd. Er liep — arm— kind
English architect built. There went a poor child
langs — stil— straten; — rijk— dame gaf het geld. In
along the quiet streets; the rich lady gave it money. In
— schoon— klimaat — — zuidelijk— landen is het
the beautiful climate of the southern countries is it
gemakkelijk gezond te zijn. — fraai— rijtuig van —
easy healthy to be. The fine carriage of the
koning was met zes prachtig— paarden bespannen. Ik
king was by six splendid horses drawn. I
wil u — schrikkelik— afgrond, — ontzaglijk— kloven,
want you this terrible abyss, these tremendous gorges,
— snel— stroom, en — trots— bergspitsen tonen.
this quick stream, and these proud mountain peaks (to) show.
Menig— onschuldig— hart is verleid geworden door
Many an innocent heart has seduced been by
slecht— gezelschap.
bad company.

2.

Om — inhoud van — lichaam te berekenen, is het
For the contents of a body to calculate, is it
nodig — lengte, — breedte, en — hoogte ervan te
necessary the length, the breadth, and the height of it to
kennen. In welk— landen vindt men — hoogst—
know. In which country finds one the highest
bergen, — snelst— rivieren, en — grootst— meren?
mountains, the most rapid rivers, and the largest lakes?
Hoe oud was — man, die gisteren door zulk — groot—
How old was the man, who yesterday by such a large
stoet van mensen ten grave gedragen werd? Hij was de
crowd of people to the grave borne was? He was the
oudst— man uit — heel— stad, en moet ver in — negentig
oldest man of the whole town, and must far over ninety
geweest zijn. Als — — koeien naar — weide zendt, zal ik
been have. If you your cows to the field send, shall I
— — ook zenden. Enig— jaren geleden hebben —
mine also send. Some years ago (have) the
Franzen — vreselijk — oorlog gevoerd tegen —

French a terrible war carried on against the

Duitsers, doch — laatst — hebben — schitterend —

Germans, but the latter (have) a brilliant

overwinning behaald.

victory gained.

3.

D — tempel van Salomo, — groot — wijz — koning, is

The temple of Solomon, that great (and) wise king, has
door — — koningen van — babyloniës — rijk verwoest
by one of the kings of the Babylonian empire destroyed
geworden. — kameel wordt in — noordelijk — deel van
been. The camel is in the northern part of
Afrika, en in veel landen van Azië gevonden; —
Africa, and in many countries of Asia found; he
— van — nuttigst — huisdieren. — hard —,
is one of the most useful domestic animals. The hard,
drog — stammen — — bomen zijn met fris —, week —,
dry trunks of the trees are with fresh, soft,
groen — mos bedekt. Zal — u opnoemen, wat —
green moss covered. Shall I (to) you enumerate what I
op — lang — reis gezien heb? Groot — steden,
on that long journey seen have? Large towns,
prachtig — dorpen, veel — wild — dieren, opgesloten in
beautiful villages, many wild animals, locked up in
ing — kooien, breed —, snel stromend — rivieren, waar
narrow cages, broad, rapidly flowing rivers, where
rijk versierd — bootjes op ronddrenven, talloos — groen —
richly decorated boats on floated about, numberless green
weivelden, heerlijk schoon — kerken, — stalen brug
meadows, delightful beautiful churches, a steel bridge
van meer dan — mijl lang, en meer dergelijk —
of 'more than a mile long, and more such
wonderlik — dingen, waarvan men zo menig — verhaal in
wonderful things, of which one so many an account in
schoolboeken leest.
schoolbooks reads.
The student is recommended to study the following examples:—

**English** - - - The water of the river trickles through the hard ground.

**Old Book Dutch** - *Hct water der rivier zippelt door den harden grond.*

**Simplified Dutch** - *Het water van de rivier zippelt door de harde grond.* Or—*de rivier z’n water, etc.*

**English** - - - No one has ever trodden the bottom of this terrible abyss.

**Old Book Dutch** - *Niemand heeft ooit den bodem dezen vreeselijken afgronds betreden.*

**Simplified Dutch** - *Niemand heeft ooit de bodem van deze vreeselike afgrond betreden.*

**English** - - - Have you considered the action of the sun’s heat on the leaves of this tree?

**Old Book Dutch** - *Hebt gij de werking der zonnewarmte op de bladeren dezen booms nagegaan?*

**Simplified Dutch** - *Heeft u de werking van de zonnewarmte op de blaren van deze boom nagegaan?*

**English** - - - I have intimated the king’s pleasure to your old father.

**Old Book Dutch** - *Ik heb uw oude vader den wil den konings bekend gemaakt.*

**Simplified Dutch** - *Ik heb uw oude vader de wil van de koning (or—de koning z’n wil) bekend gemaakt.*

**VERBS WEAK AND STRONG.**

Thus far, in the Speak-and-Act Exercises, Verbs have been introduced promiscuously, the student noticing much diversity in the formation of their principal parts, yet remaining ignorant of the rules guiding such formation. It is thus that a child acquires his mother tongue; so also the learner should acquire the elements of a foreign language. Acquisition of word-forms should precede theory.
The time has now come to explain to the student that there are two great classes of Verbs; one, called the Weak Conjugation, keep their stems intact throughout the entire conjugation, merely adding a suffix or prefix to such stems to mark Moods and Tenses; the other, called the Strong Conjugation, introducing vowel-changes into their stems.

Of these two great classes examples will now be given, which the student should study carefully, though he may be already acquainted with much of what here follows.

CONJUGATION OF THE WEAK VERB "leren", to learn, and the STRONG VERB "stelen", to steal.

Stems "leer" and "steel".

Indicative Mood.—Aantonende Wijs.

Present Tense—Onvolmaakt Tegenwoordige Tijd.

ik leer, I learn.
jij (je) leert, thou learnest.
hij (u) leert, he learns.
wij leren, we learn.
jullie leren (gij leert), you learn.
zij leren, they learn.

ik steel, I steal.
jij (je) steelt, thou steals.
hij (u) steelt, he steals.
wij stelen, we steal.
jullie stelen (gij steelt), you steal.
zij stelen, they steal.

Perfect Tense—Volmaakt Tegenwoordige Tijd.

ik heb geleerd, I have learned.
jij (je) hebt geleerd, thou hast learned.
hij (u) heeft geleerd, he has learned.
wij hebben geleerd, we have learned.
jullie hebben (gij hebt) geleerd, you have learned.
zij hebben geleerd, they have learned.

ik heb gestolen, I have stolen.
jij (je) hebt gestolen, thou hast stolen.
hij (u) heeft gestolen, he has stolen.
wij hebben gestolen, we have stolen.
jullie hebben (gij hebt) gestolen, you have stolen.
zij hebben gestolen, they have stolen.
Imperfect Tense—Onvolmaakt Verleden Tijd.

*ik leerde, I learned.*

*jij (je) leerdest, thou learnedst.*

*wij leerden, we learned.*

*jullie leerden (gij leerdet), you learned.*

*zij leerden, they learned.*

Pluperfect Tense—Volmaakt Verleden Tijd.

*ik had geleerd, I had learned.*

*jij (je) hadt geleerd, thou hadst learned.*

*hij (u) had geleerd, he had learned.*

*wij hadden geleerd, we had learned.*

*jullie hadden (gij hatl) geleerd, you had learned.*

*zij hadden geleerd, they had learned.*

Future Tense—Onvolmaakt Toekomende Tijd.

*ik zal leren, I shall learn.*

*jij (je) zult leren, thou wilt learn.*

*hij (u) zal leren, he will learn.*

*wij zullen leren, we shall learn.*

*jullie zullen (gij zult) leren, you will learn.*

*zij zullen leren, they will learn.*

Future Perfect Tense—Volmaakt Toekomende Tijd.

*ik zal geleerd hebben, I shall have learned.*

*jij (je) zult geleerd hebben, thou wilt have learned.*

*hij (u) zal geleerd hebben, he will have learned.*

*wij zullen geleerd hebben, we shall have learned.*

*jullie zullen (gij zult) geleerd hebben, you will have learned.*

*zij zullen geleerd hebben, they will have learned.*

*ik zal gestolen, I shall steal.*

*jij (je) zult gestolen, thou wilt steal.*

*hij (u) zal gestolen, he will steal.*

*wij zullen gestolen, we shall steal.*

*jullie zullen (gij zult) gestolen, you will steal.*

*zij zullen gestolen, they will steal.*
Subjunctive Mood—Aanvoegende Wijs.

Future Tense—Onvolmaakt Toekomende Tijd.

\[ \text{i}k \text{ zou leren, I should learn.} \quad \text{i}k \text{ zou stelen, I should steal.} \]
\[ \text{jij (je) zou \text{d} leren, thou wouldst learn.} \quad \text{jij (je) zou stelen, thou wouldst steal.} \]
\[ \text{hij (u) zou leren, he would learn.} \quad \text{hij (u) zou stelen, he would steal.} \]
\[ \text{wij zouden leren, we should learn.} \quad \text{wij zouden stelen, we should steal.} \]
\[ \text{jullie zouden (gij \text{zoudt}) leren, you would learn.} \quad \text{jullie zouden (gij \text{zoudt}) stelen, you would steal.} \]
\[ \text{zij zouden leren, they would learn.} \quad \text{zij zouden stelen, they would steal.} \]

Future Perfect Tense—Volmaakt Toekomende Tijd.

\[ \text{i}k \text{ zou geleerd hebben, I should have learned.} \quad \text{i}k \text{ zou gestolen hebben, I should have stolen.} \]
\[ \text{jij (je) zoude geleerd hebben, thou wouldst have learned.} \quad \text{jij (je) zoude gestolen hebben, thou wouldst have stolen.} \]
\[ \text{hij (u) zou geleerd hebben, he would have learned.} \quad \text{hij (u) zou gestolen hebben, he would have stolen.} \]
\[ \text{wij zouden geleerd hebben, we should have learned.} \quad \text{wij zouden gestolen hebben, we should have stolen.} \]
\[ \text{jullie zouden (gij \text{zoudt}) geleerd hebben, you would have learned.} \quad \text{jullie zouden (gij \text{zoudt}) gestolen hebben, you would have stolen.} \]
\[ \text{zij zouden geleerd hebben, they would have learned.} \quad \text{zij zouden gestolen hebben, they would have stolen.} \]

Imperative Mood—Gebiedende Wijs.

Singular—Enkelvoud.

\[ \text{laat mij leren, let me learn.} \quad \text{laat mij stelen, let me steal.} \]
\[ \text{leer, learn (thou).} \quad \text{steel, steal (thou).} \]
\[ \text{laat hem leren, let him learn.} \quad \text{laat hem stelen, let him steal.} \]

Plural—Meervoud.

\[ \text{laat ons leren (leren wij), let us learn.} \quad \text{laat ons stelen (stelen wij), let us steal.} \]
\[ \text{leert, learn (ye).} \quad \text{steelt, steal (ye).} \]
\[ \text{laat hen leren (leren zij), let them learn.} \quad \text{laat hen stelen (stelen zij), let them steal.} \]
THE STANDARD DUTCH GRAMMAR

Infinitive Mood—Onbepaalde Wijs.

Present Tense—Onvolmaakt Tegenwoordige Tijd.
(te) leren, to learn. (te) stelen, to steal.

Perfect Tense—Volmaakt Tegenwoordige Tijd.
geleerd (te) hebben, to have gestolen (to) hebben, to have learned.

Future Tense—Onvolmaakt Toekomende Tijd.
te zullen leren (no equivalent).
te zullen stelen (no equivalent).

Future Perfect Tense—Volmaakt Toekomende Tijd.
(tc) zullen geleerd hebben (no equivalent).
(tc) zullen gestolen hebben (no equivalent).

Present Participle—Tegenwoordig Deelwoord.
lerende, learning.
stelende, stealing.

Past Participle—Verleden Deelwoord.
gelcerd, learned.
gestolen, stolen.

Like "leren" conjugate the Weak Verbs: spelen, speelde, gespeeld, to play; delen, deelde, gedeeld, to divide (to share); leven, leefde, geleefd, to live; bouwen, bouwde, gebouwd, to build; vertellen, vertelde, verteld, to tell.

Like "stelen" conjugate the Strong Verbs: slapen, sliep, geslapen, to sleep; nemen, nam, genomen, to take; roepen, riep, geroepen, to call; geven, gaf, gegeven, to give; meten, mat, gemeten, to measure; wegen, woog, gewogen, to weigh.

TRANSLATION EXERCISE No. 5.

1.

Fourth Rule of Construction.—When a Subordinate Sentence precedes the Principal one, the construction of the latter is inverted, i.e., the Verb is placed before its Subject. If the Verb consists of two parts, the Auxiliary only precedes the subject, and the Principal Verb closes the Sentence (see first rule).
Notice here the need of the comma, for separating two Verbs which belong to different sentences.
Leave out words between [], and translate words in ()

If you [have learned] that long lesson (have learned), (can—kan) you [can] go. If he had a book, (would) he [would] learn the alphabet. When I asked your uncle to tell that story, (said) he [said] that he had told it already. When dogs [are] young (are), (are) they [are] lively. If the man has stolen the money, (is) he [is] a thief. After (nadat) he had weighed the parcel, (gave) he [gave] it to the boy. If my sister has no pain, (sleeps) she [sleeps] very well. Because the man was ill and poor, (was) he [was] miserable. When I was rich, (had) I [had] many friends. As I had no horse, (could—kon) I [could] not go. If I had had a garden behind the house, (would) I [would] have been glad (blij) (have been). As the boy had a spade, (worked) he [worked] in the garden. When my uncle's horses (the horses of my uncle) had much grass, (were) they [were] fat. If the child had been at (op) school, (would) it [would] have been tired (have been). If he asks for (om) the inkpot, (will) my mother [will] give it (him) (give). When the child has played [for] an hour, (will) it will [be] satisfied (be).

2.

**Translation of Present Participle.**—Present Participles are rarely used. They are translated in various ways. The following rendering should be noted first.

Having a book, the boy is happy=as the boy has a book, he is happy=daar de jongen een boek heeft, is hij gelukkig.

Being ill, the child was at home=as the child was ill, it was at home=duur het kind ziek was, was het thuis.

Having parents, (is) the child [is] happy. Having books, (was) the boy [was] contented. Being small, the girl had little work. Having a spade, the boy
worked (werkte) in the garden. Being obedient, the child was happy. Having been ill (as he had been sick), the man was poor. The poor man being ill, was (he) miserable. The boy, having tools, was (he) happy. The child having been (as the child had been) at (op) school, was (it) tired. The weather having been bad, the harvest was small. Having had rain, the trees had leaves. Having no bread, the children were hungry. The cat having had milk, was (she) contented. My horses were fat, having had much grass. Your cows were thin, having had no forage.

3.

Let us build three houses here. Why three? There is room for four. There is no room for four houses on this small piece of ground. Would he have stolen the old horse if there (er) had been a young [one]? If you tell me this, I shall not ask you again. What will he ask me? He will ask you to give up the key which he gave (has given) you. This is the little bird that built its pretty nest among the green twigs. How long did the dog live? It (he) lived five years. I had a horse once which was twenty years old. If your uncle built (has built) on the new piece of ground, I will build on the old [one]. He has not built yet; but he will build on the large new piece of ground next to the old inn. Because he wanted to (wilde) play in the afternoon, he learned his lessons in the morning. You have had the money in your pocket; why did you play (played you) with it (ermce)?

4.

NOTE.—"To like to" and "to want to" are both rendered by "wollen, wilde, gewild".

The boy wants to learn those difficult words. Yes, but he does not want to (wil . . . niet) [learn] his lesson for his teacher (not learn). I should like to
(zou . . . willen) ask you for (om) the paper. The old man did not want to ask for money. Would you like to have a large house and a pretty garden? I should like to have many good books. He wants to give all his money to the poor. Give me those roses! No, I do [not] want to (wil . . . niet) [give] you those roses (not give); they are too pretty and too fresh. Do you want to have more ink? Who would not [like to be] rich and happy (like to be)? I should not [like to build] in this street (like to build); there are already too many large houses. He wanted to call his father, but he was not in his room. The carpenter wants to measure the table. Let him first measure the height of the door.

5.

Observe the translation of certain expressions, which are marked in the above conjugations as having "no equivalent".

*Hij hoopt te zullen slapen*—he hopes that he will sleep.

*Hij verwacht te zullen bouwen*—he expects that he will build.

*Hij denkt te zullen komen*—he thinks that he will come.

*Hij gelooft morgen beter te zullen zijn*—he believes that he will be better tomorrow.

*Hij zegt om één uur daar geweest te zullen zijn*—he says that at one o'clock he will have been there.

*Hij belooft zijn lessen dan geleerd te zullen hebben*—he promises that then he will have learned his lessons.

**Note:**—The latter part of these sentences may also be made to follow the English rendering: *Hij belooft, dat hij zijn lessen dan zal geleerd hebben.*

She hopes that she will live. I expect that I shall call you. They think that they will come to-morrow. He promises that he will have given the money. She believes that she will be ill to-morrow. Having slept, the child was much better. Let the bird live, boys! Having built
a strong castle, the king was safe. John and Henry, share the marbles! Let them also share the money! Let us tell the story of that fearful fire to our parents. The carpenter expects that he will build three large houses. The girl believes that she [will] one day [be] very rich (will be). Let us measure these sticks; they are long and strong. Do not always play, children! Let them play now; they will (the next hour) learn their spelling (spelles) [the next hour]. Charles, call the servant, I want to [ask] him something (ask). Yes, father, I shall call him.

6.

Note.---Correct choice between the various expressions taking the place of the English Progressive Form, is not an easy matter. Much practice will be required on the student’s part to know what particular form is most suitable. The following sentences are supplied with numbers referring to the examples of p. 134.

The woman is weighing (2) the meat. He was calling (2) his father. The child was sleeping (no Progr.) all (the whole) day. He was telling me (1) about (van) his mother, who [is] dead (is). We have been learning (5) our spelling, and we have been playing (1) in the room. The thief has been stealing (5) again. The good dog was still living (no Progr.) Did you call me? No, I was calling (no Progr.) your brother. How long did your sister sleep? She slept [for] three hours. She is always sleeping (1) when (als) I want to go out (uit­gaan). Will you be measuring the carpet (Gaat u misschien het tapijt meten)? I have measured it already, but I shall measure it again. Was the mason building (1) the house? He has been building (no Progr.) two houses on the main road, and [now] he is building (2) (now) a third. Were you telling him (1) about that crow with the large wings? Tell me that too. I will tell you by and by.
NOTE.—The word "when" is translated by "toen", when an action is expressed in the Past Tense, purporting to name a fact which has occurred once.

In sentences, the Verb of which is in the Present or Future Tense or in the Past Tense expressing a habit or regularly occurring event, the word "when" is rendered by "wanneer" or "als".

You were sleeping (1) when (toen) I called. My father was measuring the door (1) when (toen) I gave him the letter. You play when (wanneer) you must learn (must—moet). He had the letter in his hand when (toen) he was playing (1). When (wanneer) will you call the cat? I called the cat when I was in the passage. When you divide the marbles, you must (moet) call me. When the postman had weighed the book he gave it to me. Were you building the wall (2) when I [saw] you (saw, zag)? Yes, I was building the wall (2) when you called me to (om te ) measure the door. When did the thief steal the money? He stole the money at (om) 5 o'clock. Were you sleeping (1) when he stole it? He took it when we were in [the] house, but we were all sleeping. Was he dividing (2) the marbles when you asked him to play? He always gives me his books when he plays.

SPEAK-AND-ACT EXERCISE No. 11.

De schoorsteen vegen.—To sweep the chimney.

1. De schoorsteenweger
goit zijn pak op de achterplaats neer.

2. Hij zet een ladder tegen het dak op.

3. Hij klimt op de leer naar de schoorsteen.

4. Hij laat een harde bezem aan een touw in de pijp neer.

The chimney-sweep throws down his pack in the yard.

He puts a ladder up against the roof.

He goes up the ladder to the chimney.

He lets down a hard broom by a rope into the flue.
5. Zijn maat wacht onder op de bezem.
   His mate waits for the broom below.
6. Hij knoopt een tweede touw aan de bezem vast.
   He ties a second rope to the broom.
7. Zij trekken samen de bezem op en neer door de schoorsteen.
   They pull the broom up and down through the chimney together.
8. Waar zij bij kunnen, krabben zij schoon met ijzers.
   What they can reach, they scrape clean with irons.
   They sweep up all the soot into a bag.
10. Zo wordt de schoorsteen geveegd.
    So the chimney is swept.

VERB EXERCISE.

gooien—ik gooi, gooide, heb (had) gegooid, zal gooien (gegooid hebben).
zetten—ik zet, zette, heb (had) gezet, zal zetten (gezet hebben).
klimmen—ik klim, klom, heb (had) geklommen, zal klimmen (geklommen hebben).
neerlaten—ik laat neer, liet neer, heb (had) neergelaten, zal neerlaten (neergelaten hebben).
wachten—ik wacht, waachtte, heb (had) gewacht, zal wachten (gewacht hebben).
knopen—ik knoop, knoopte, heb (had) geknoopt, zal knopen (geknoopt hebben).
trekken—ik trek, trok, heb (had) getrokken, zal trekken (getrokken hebben).
krabben—ik krab, krabde, heb (had) gekrabd, zal krabben (gekrabd hebben).
opvegen—ik veeg op, veegde op, heb (had) opgeveegd, zal opvegen (opgeveegd hebben).

SUBSEQUENT EXERCISES.

Of all the Verbs which have thus far been used in the Speak-and-Act Exercises, the leading features have been given in the Verb Exercises.

What should now be done is:

1. Make a list of all these Verbs, writing down their Infinitive, Past Tense, and Past Participle forms.
2. Observe any alterations in the stems (which are shown in the Past Tense), and mark such verbs *Strong*, whereas all those whose Stem-vowels have remained unchanged, should be marked *Weak*.

3. Among the Strong, some will be noticed whose stems undergo a greater change in the Past Tense than a mere vowel-alteration. Such Verbs are, for example: *gaan, ging, gegaan; komen, kwam, gekomen; zijn, was, geweest; hebben, had, gehad*. These should be marked *Irregular, or Anomalous*.

**READING EXERCISE.**

Ik wil u eens vertellen wat mij gisteren
I want to you just (to) relate what to me yesterday
overkomen is. Ik was op weg naar het dorp Vredefort.
happened (has). I was on my way to the town (of) Vredefort.
Ik reed in een kaapse kar, en had mijn koetsier bij
I was driving in a Cape cart, and had my driver with
mij. Omtrent het middag uur zagen wij een lange,
me. About the midday hour saw we a long,
zwarte streep aan de horizon op de bergen liggen, die
black strip at the horizon on the mountains lying, which
zich scheen te bewegen, en, daar de wind naar ons toe
itself seemed to move, and, as the wind towards us
was, kwam hij in onze richting. Mijn koetsier zei mij,
was, was coming it in our direction. My driver said to me,
dat dat hagel was, en dat wij ons moesten
that that hail was, and that we ourselves must
klaar houden voor zwaar weer, al scheen de
ready hold for heavy weather, although shone the
zon nog zo helder. Wij reden verder, en na een
sun ever so brightly. We drove on, and after an
uur kwam de streep zichtbaar nader, en werd
hour was coming the strip visibly nearer, and became
de wind kouder. Plotseling begonnen er hagelstenen
the wind colder. Suddenly began there hailstones
te vallen, en binnen een paar minuten moesten wij de kart stilhouden, zo vreselijk was de storm. De paarden lieten de koppen hangen, en wij maakten ons toe, zo goed wij konden. Nooit in mijn leven had ik zo'n hail storm gezien. Hij duurde maar tien minuten, maar toen de zwarte streep voorbij geschoven was, lag de hail twaalf duim dik om ons heen.

KONVERSATIE.

Het Weder.

1. De lucht is bewolkt.
2. We zullen onweer krijgen.
3. De donder ratelt; het onweert.
4. Het licht; zag u 't weerciel?
5. Die bliksemstraal was erg fel.
6. Het weer klaart op; 't zal morgen mooi weer zijn.
7. Wat een prachtige regenboog!
8. Wat voor weer heeft u op uw reis gehad?
10. Er heeft een harde, doordringende wind gewaaid.
11. De wind heeft een aantal schoorstenen afgewaaid.
12. De wind is gaan liggen.
14. Het is erg koud; het hagelt, sneeuwt, vriesst.
15. De sneeuw is aan het smelten.
16. De rivier is bevroren.

CONVERSATION.

The Weather.

The sky is cloudy.
We shall have a thunderstorm.
The thunder roars; it thunders.
There is lightning; did you see the lightning?
That flash of lightning was very vivid.
The weather is clearing; it will be fine tomorrow.
What a splendid rainbow!

What sort of weather did you have on your journey?
Rough, stormy weather.
There has been a strong, piercing wind.
The wind has blown a number of chimneys down.
The wind has abated.
It is raining hard.
It is very cold; it hail,s, snows, freezes.
The snow is melting.

The river is frozen.
17. Het vriest dat het kloekt.
18. Het is buitengewoon koud.
19. De vorige winter was bijzonder streng.
20. Het is nu zacht weer.
22. De maan gaat van avond om acht uur op.
23. We hebben, heerlijk, bekoorlijk, mooi weer.
24. Gisteren was het triestig, somber, onaangenaam, veranderlijk.
25. Het is hier vochtig en naar in de winter.
26. De hitte in de zomer is vreselijk op de vlakten.

**Naar de Winkels Gaan.**

1. Laat ons die winkel binnen gaan — ik heb verscheidene dingen nodig.
2. Ik zou graag wat hoeden willen zien.
3. Deze zijn naar de laatste smaak, mijnheer.
4. Laat ons wat zwart laten zien, als 't u pleit.
5. Dit is niet fijn genoeg.
6. Wat kost het?
7. U heeft geen keus.
8. De prijs is te hoog.
9. Ik moet een paar handschoenen hebben.
10. Dit paar is te groot: ik draag nummer 7.
11. Heeft u sterke leren schoenen?
12. Die zijn te lang, te nauw, te kort.
13. Ik houd van lage hakken.
14. Het fatsoen berust me niet.
15. Laat me eens wat zakdoeken en daspen zien.
16. Wil u mij uw beste zijden paraplu's wijzen?
17. Wat kost deze?
18. Vijftien shillings, mijnheer.
19. Ik zou graag witte linnen boorden en manchetten zien.
20. Zo is het genoeg; dank u.

It is freezing very hard.
It is extremely cold.
Last winter was particularly severe.
This is mild weather.
The sun is shining.
The moon rises at eight o'clock to-night.
We are having delightful, charming, fine weather.
Yesterday it was gloomy, dull, disagreeable, changeable.
It is damp and dismal here in winter.
The heat is terrible in the plains in summer.

**To go Shopping.**

Let us go into that shop—there are several things I want.
I should like to see some hats.
These are the newest style, sir.
Show us some black cloth, please.
This is not fine enough.
What is the price?
You have no selection.
The price is too high.
I want a pair of gloves.

This pair is too large: I wear No. 7.
Have you strong leather boots?
Those are too long, too narrow, too short.
I like low heels.
I don't like the shape.
Show me some handkerchiefs and some ties.
Can I see some of your best silk umbrellas?
What is the price of this one?
Fifteen shillings, sir.
I wish to see some white linen collars and cuffs.

That will do; thank you.
I. Adjectives denote distinguishing attributes or qualities of persons and things: *de trouwe vriend*, the faithful friend; *het witte papier*, the white paper.

II. Adjectives may be used attributively and predicatively. An Adjective used attributively, *Attributief Bijvoegelijk Naamwoord*, is connected directly with its Noun: *de warme koffie*, the warm coffee.

An Adjective used predicatively, *Predikatief Bijvoegelijk Naamwoord*, is connected with its Noun by means of some form of one of the Copulative Verbs (*Koppelwoorden*): *zijn*, to be; *worden*, to become; *blijven*, to remain; *heten*, to be called; *schijnen*, to seem; *lijken*, to seem to be; *blijken*, to appear; e.g. *Hij is goed*, he is good; *Zij blijft trouw*, she remains faithful; *Dat heet mooi*, that is called pretty.

Observations.

1.—The Adjective, when used predicatively, is not declined, but it may be inflected to express Degrees of Comparison: *De boom is hoog, maar deze is hoger*, that tree is high, but this one is higher.

2.—Other Verbs besides those mentioned above may be accompanied by an Adjective used predicatively, when, namely, such Adjective refers to a Noun, and not to the action expressed by the Verb; e.g. *De deur is bruin geschilderd*, the door has
been painted brown. Here, obviously, "brown" does not refer to the action of painting, but qualifies "door"; it is therefore, not an Adverb, but an Adjective.

III. The Attributive Adjective agrees with the Noun to which it is attached in gender, number, and case, even though the agreement is no longer expressed by flexion-endings. (See Chapter on Declension.)

Observations.

1.—The Adjective never changes its form when it follows its Noun directly, instead of directly preceding it. This was of frequent occurrence in the Dutch of former times, but is found rarely now. Vaderlief=dear father; kindlief=dear child; Staten-Generaal=States General (House of Assembly), are surviving examples.

2.—When the Indefinite Article "een" stands between the Noun and its Adjective: Hoe wijs een man, how wise a man; Te groot een verlies, too great a loss; Zo vroom een vrouw, so pious a woman.

IV. After the words een, a; geen, no; enig, any; elk, every; ieder, each; menig, many; zeker, certain; and welk, which, when occurring before the name of a male person, the Adjective, by its being either declined or not, applies the same quality with a different meaning to the person to whose name it is attached.

The uninflected Adjective in such a case refers to those qualities which pertain to the profession or office of the person; the inflected Adjective refers to his inner qualities as a man, irrespective of the name he bears: een goed koning, a good king; een goede koning, a good-hearted king; een knap schoenmaker, an able shoemaker; een knappe schoenmaker, a good-looking shoemaker; een groot koopman, a merchant who has a large business; een grote koopman, a tall merchant; een oud soldaat, a soldier who has been long in the service; een oude soldaat, an old man who is a soldier.

Note.—een oudsoldaat means a former soldier; likewise does een oudleerling mean a former pupil.
V. The following kinds of Attributive Adjectives never change their form:

1. Adjectives denoting a material, and which end in *en*; e.g. *een zijden japon*, a silk dress; *gouden horloges*, gold watches.

2. Adjectives of three or more syllables, when they end in *en*; e.g. *een afgelegen plaats*, a lonely place.

Note.—This rule may be taken as optional, when the Adjective is preceded by *de*, *die*, or *deze*. The same may be said of a similar rule regarding the Comparative Degrees of Adjectives which are frequently taken as indeclinable when preceded by *een* and *geen*.

3. Adjectives which by means of the ending *er* are derived from the names of places, villages or towns; e.g. *de Kamper boot*, a steamer plying between Kampen and some other town; *de Rotterdamer markt*, the market of Rotterdam.

Note.—The ending *er* is not the usual ending for Adjectives derived from names of places. The common ending is *s*: *beaufortse schapen*, Beaufort sheep; *wellingtonse wijn*, Wellington wine.

4. Adjectives which end in *lei* or *hande*: *allerlei vee*, all kinds of cattle; *allerhande boeken*, all kinds of books.

5. The two Adjectives *rechter*, right, and *linker*, left, because they never stand alone, but form part of, and are written together with the Noun which they qualify; *mijn rechterhand*, my right hand; *zijn linkerbeen*, his left leg.

6. The Adjective "*eigen*", when it is taken in the meaning of *dezelfde*, the same: *Hij stierf op de eigen dag, waarop zijn broeder geboren werd*, he died on the same day on which his brother was born.
THE ADJECTIVE

Note 1.—If *eigen* is taken in the usual meaning of "own", it is declined in the ordinary way: *mijn eigen zuster*, my own sister.

Note 2.—If two or more Adjectives are attached to one Noun, together expressing but *one* quality, the last of these Adjectives is declined and the others remain unchanged: *Holland heeft een rood, wit en blauwe vlag*, Holland has a red, white and blue flag.

VI. DEGREES OF COMPARISON.  
*(Trappen van Vergelijking.)*

Objects may possess a quality absolutely or comparatively. Absolute possession is expressed by the Positive Degree, *Stellende Trap*, i.e. the unchanged form of the Adjective: *Mijn les is lang*, my lesson is long.

Comparative possession, i.e., possession in comparison with other objects having the same quality, is expressed in two ways:

1. By the Comparative Degree, *Vergrotende Trap*, which indicates that an object possesses the like quality with another, only in a higher degree: *Het paard is groter dan de koe*, the horse is bigger than the cow.

2. By the Superlative Degree, *Overtreffende Trap*, which indicates that one object possesses some quality in a higher degree than any other object to which it is compared: *Onder alle bloemen is *de mooiste*, among all flowers this is the prettiest one.

The Comparative Degree is formed by adding *er* to the Positive form of the Adjective: *groot, groter, great, greater.*
The Superlative Degree is formed by adding *st* to the Positive form of the Adjective: *groot, grootst*, great, greatest.

**Note.**—In forming the comparative of Adjectives ending in *f* or *s*, also of those which change a double vowel into a single one, or a single final consonant into a double, take note of the rules for the formation of the plural of Nouns.

**Observations.**

1.—Adjectives ending in *r*, and in a vowel (except *e* mute and *i*) form their comparative by adding *der*, instead of *er*: *verder; na, near, nader; blo, timid, bloder.*

2.—Adjectives in *s* form their superlative by adding *t*, instead of *st*: *wiser, wise, wiijer, wiijst* (not *wiijst*); *fris, fresh, frisser, frist.*

3.—*Meer*, more, and *meest*, most, may not, as a rule, be used in Dutch for the formation of the degrees of comparison. The endings *er* and *st* are added, irrespective of the number of syllables. In one case, however, the ending *st* of the superlative stands in the way of easy pronunciation, namely in *woestst*, most desolate, which should be *meest woest.*

4.—There is a case in which the word *meer* must invariably be used to indicate the Comparative degree, viz., when two qualities attributed to one and the same object are compared, e.g., *Deze tafel is meer enig dan mooi,* this table is more unique than pretty; *Een koe is meer nuttig dan gezellig,* a cow is more useful than sociable.

**Note.**—*Meer* and *meest* must also be employed in the comparison of the Past Particles used as predicate Adjectives: *Zij is meer vermoeid dan haar broeder,* she is more tired than her brother; *Mijn schoenen zijn de meest versleten van alle,* my boots are the most worn-out ones of all.

5.—In using superlatives, the student should be careful about the article that precedes the Adjective. When we speak of different objects among which one stands prominent, the article to be chosen is *de* or *het* according as the Noun requires, and the superlative ends in *ste*: *De mooiste stad van de ganze omtrek,* the finest town of the whole neighbourhood; *Het nieuwste boek, dat ik bezit,* the newest book I possess. When, however, parts of the same thing are compared, the superlative ends in *st*, and the article preceding it is *het* in all cases: *Aan de zuidzijde is de stad het mooist,* the town is prettiest on the south side; *De zieke is 's morgens het zwakst,* the patient is weakest in the morning.
6.—Some Adjectives from their nature can have no Degrees of Comparison. Such are:

(a) Adjectives which indicate a material: *ccn zijden japon*, a silk dress.

(b) Adjectives whose meaning is complete in the Positive Degree: *dood*, dead; *stom*, dumb; *ledig*, empty; *luchtdicht*, air-tight; *splinternieuw*, brand-new; *gitzwart*, jet-black; *ontelbaar*, innumerable; *overallegenoordig*, omnipresent; *driëenig*, triune; *bloedrood*, blood-red; *almachtig*, almighty; *aards*, earthly; *engels*, English; *frans*, French, etc.

(c) Adjectives derived from Adverbs: *voormalig*, former; *dagelik*, daily; *trapsgewijze*, gradual; *schriftelijk*, in writing; *mondeling*, oral.

7.—A few Adjectives have an irregular comparison:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>goed,*</td>
<td>beter</td>
<td>best</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kwaad</td>
<td>erger</td>
<td>ergst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>veel</td>
<td>meer</td>
<td>meest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>weinig</td>
<td>minder</td>
<td>minst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vroeg</td>
<td>vroeger (eerder), vroegst (eerst)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Note.—The old Positive Degree was *bet* or *bat* = *goed*, which is still found in the word *Betuwe* (*bat ouwe*, good soil), also in *betovergrootvader*, grandfather’s grandfather, and in *betweter*, wiseacre.

8.—After comparatives *dan*, than, must be used, and not *als*: *Hij is rijker dan ik*, he is richer than I.

**GRAMMAR EXERCISES.—Taaloeefeningen.**

*Write out the Degrees of Comparison of the following Adjectives:*

1.

*Groot*, great; *zwart*, black; *glad*, slippery; *klein*, small; *hoog*, high; *laag*, low; *rond*, round; *dik*, thick; *lang*, long;
diep, deep; bont, gaudy; vlak, level; krom, crooked; vuil, dirty; bleek, pale; droog, dry; mooi, fine; breed, broad; steil, steep; dicht, close; druk, busy; vroeg, early; dun, thin; laf, insipid; wit, white; heet, hot; koel, cool; echt, real; dood, dead; vroom, pious; koud, cold; flink, thorough.

2.

Boos, angry; gelijk, even; grof, coarse; geleerd, learned; vies, dirty; dor, dry; stevig, firm; vals, false; gouden, gold; lief, dear; broos, frail; gek, mad; bekend, known; duur, expensive; beroemd, celebrated; doof, deaf; levend, alive; kostbaar, costly; dwars, oblique; wijs, wise; fraai, pretty; erg, bad; schuin, slanting; glanzig, glossy; schreef, awry; moe, tired; lui, lazy; bemind, loved; pikzwart, pitchblack; vlijtig, diligent; kras, firm; angstig, anxious; schuw, shy; spits, pointed; mager, thin; braaf, honest.

3.

Versleten, worn out; landelijk, rural; zijden, silk; aards, earthly; aangenaam, agreeable; verteerbaar, digestible; noar, disagreeable; blo, timid; leenloos, lifeless; doornat, drenched; behaard, hairy; blozend, blooming; geëerd, honoured; klaar, clear; vrolijk, merry; ijselik, frightful; sneeuwwit, snow-white; laat, late; getand, indented; levenslustig, merry; na, near; oppassend, respectable; bekwaam, clever; woest, wild; almachtig, almighty; veerkrachtig, elastic; verlept, faded; stuk, broken; oprecht, sincere; menselik, human; begrensd, bounded; gemeten, measured; beproefd, tried; schitterend, brilliant; akelig, dismal; glooiend, sloping; verheven, raised; breedgerand, broad-brimmed.
Fill up the blanks in the following exercises:

1.

--- paars--- lint van --- hoed ziet er flets uit. Toen
The violet ribbon of my hat looks faded. When
ik te Aliwal Noord was, nam ik dageliks --- bad in
I at Aliwal North was, took I daily a bath in
--- warm--- bron---. --- taal van --- dageliks--- leven
the hot springs. The language of the everyday life
nemen men --- omgangstaal. --- wit--- en zwart--- paard
calls one the colloquial language. The white and black horse
van --- postrijder heeft zijn poot gebroken. Amsterdam is
of the postrider has his leg broken. Amsterdam is
op paal--- gebouwd, die door --- dras--- grond tot op ---
on piles built, which through the marshy soil on to the
onderliggend--- vast--- laag heengedreven zijn. Ik kan niet
underlying firm layer driven down are. I can not
zoveel in --- man zien, mij lijkt hij --- zeer alledaag---
so much in the man see, to me looks he a very common
mens. Bij --- ros--- gloed die --- brand verspreidde,
person. In the ruddy glow which the fire cast,
liep --- arm--- man wanhopig naar --- zijn---
ran (about) the poor man in despair for his wife and children
te zoeken. Mijn vader is --- kras--- man; ofschoon hij ---
looking. My father is a vigorous man; though he a
tijdgenoot van uw grootvader is, wandelt hij nog elk--- dag
contemporary of your grandfather is, walks he still every day
--- uur. Als --- jong--- mensen zich op --- bros---
(for) an hour. If these young people themselves on the brittle
ips wagen, gaan zij --- gewis--- dood tegemoet.
Ice venture, go they a certain death to meet.

2.

--- woorden --- --- wijz--- zijn als goud--- appel--- op
The words of the wise are like golden apples on
zilver--- schaal---. Van --- plafond hingen groot---
silver dishes. From the ceiling were hanging large
kristal—kroonlampen af, die — zaal met —
crystal candelabra down, which the hall with a
toverachtig—licht vervulden. — vreemdeling droeg
fairy-like light filled. The stranger wore
—zwaar—goud—ring aan —middelvinger ——recht—
a heavy gold ring on the middle finger of his right
hand. Zet —beid—raam—wijd open, er is
hand. Throw (the) both windows wide open, there is
een vuns—licht in —kamer. —groot—steen—
a stuffy smell in the room. The large stone
vaas—op — stoep —v66r —huis zijn van —
vases on the verandah in front of our house are of the
fijnst—aardewerk. Sinds —neef naar —universiteit
finest earthenware. Since your cousin to the university
gegaan is, is hij —verwaand— —weter geworden, met
gone is, has he a conceited wiseacre become, with
wie ik lief—niets meer te doen wil hebben.
whom I rather nothing more to do will have

3.

paard behoort tot —edeler—diersoort dan
The horse belongs to a nobler kind of animal than
—koe. —vroeg—bezitter van —landgoed
the cow. The former owner of this estate
stamde in —recht—lijn van Lodewijk —Eerst—af.
descended in the direct line from Louis the First.
—jong—boer ontving ons met —eigen—gastvrijheid,
The young farmer received us with the same hospitality
die —vader gekenmerkt had. Bij —onderzoek
which his father characterised had. At the inquiry
bleek, dat —Kompanjie —schip aan —
(it) appeared, that the Company the vessel to an
onervaren kapitein had toevertrouwd. Bij —flauw—
inexperienced captain had entrusted. By the faint
TRANSLATION EXERCISE No. 6.

1.

(On § IV.)

The good-looking son of our schoolmaster has become an able carpenter. Louis the Sixteenth of France was a good man, but not a good king. The blacksmith in the village is a former soldier. There is a very old soldier in the hospital. The captain who called (een visite maakte) last night, is a soldier of long standing. There is not a good doctor in the town. Any good-hearted doctor would have had pity on that poor woman. No bad clerk ever makes a good manager. Many [a] great man is not duly appreciated until (dan) after his death. My uncle Henry is such a tall man that he goes by the name of Goliath. This poor man was a great merchant once, but he failed in business and since then has never been able (heeft ... kunnen) to get on. Of late years Austria has been a faithful ally to (voor) Germany. This young man is but (nog maar) a young mason.

2.

(On § VI.)

The soap-manufactory is the highest house in the town. Your brother is more diligent than mine (de
The river was deepest where we attempted to cross. Colonial coal is not so dear as foreign coal. In many parts of South Africa the scenery is more grand than pretty. The almond-tree blossoms first of all the trees in our garden. This bread is the least palatable that (dat) I have tasted for a long time (in lange tijd). A more faithful dog than mine I have never seen. Your dress looks more worn than your cloak. This young barrister is the most learned of all his colleagues. Our dog barked loudest as (toen) we neared the gorge. King Solomon was the wisest man of his time. The horse is liveliest when it has been in the stable (op stal gestaan heeft) [for] a few days. The wildest (woest) parts of the country are the least fertile (sup. of onvruchtbaar). Figs are among (behoren tot) the most wholesome [of] fruits. Of all these lamps this [one] is the least expensive. [A] cheaper cloth than the one (hetgeen) you have, is no good (doegt niet). A more terrific thunderstorm than yesterday's (die van) I have never witnessed.

CONJUGATION of the WEAK VERB "dansen", to dance, and the STRONG VERB "lezen", to read.

Stems “dans” and “lees”.

Indicative Mood.—Aantonende Wijs.

Present Tense.—Onvolmaakt Tegenwoordige Tijd.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{ik dans, I dance.} & \quad \text{ik lees, I read.} \\
\text{jij (je, u) dans, thou dancest.} & \quad \text{jij (je, u) leest, thou readest.} \\
\text{hij dans, he dances.} & \quad \text{hij leest, he reads.} \\
\text{wij dansen, we dance.} & \quad \text{wij lezen, we read.} \\
\text{jullie dansen (gij dans), you dance.} & \quad \text{jullie lezen (gij leest), you read.} \\
\text{zij dansen, they dance.} & \quad \text{zij lezen, they read.}
\end{align*}
\]
THE ADJECTIVE

Perfect Tense.—Volmaakt Tegenwoordige Tijd.

ik heb gedanst, I have danced.
jij (je) hebt gedanst, thou hast danced.
hij (u) heeft gedanst, he has danced.
wij hebben gedanst, we have danced.
jullie hebben (gij hebt) gedanst, you have danced.
zij hebben gedanst, they have danced.

ik heb gelezen, I have read.
jij (je) hebt gelezen, thou hast read.
hij (u) heeft gelezen, he has read.
wij hebben gelezen, we have read.
jullie hebben (gij hebt) gelezen, you have read.
zij hebben gelezen, they have read.

Imperfect Tense.—Onvolmaakt Verleden Tijd.

ik danste, I danced.
jij (je) danstet, thou dancedst.
hij (u) danste, he danced.
wij dansten, we danced.
jullie dansten (gij danstet), you danced.
zij dansten, they danced.

ik las, I read.
jij (je) lasst, thou readest.
hij (u) las, he read.
wij lasen, we read.
jullie lasen (gij laast), you read.
zij lasen, they read.

Pluperfect Tense.—Volmaakt Verleden Tijd.

ik had gedanst, I had danced.
jij (je) hadt gedanst, thou hadst danced.
hij (u) had gedanst, he had danced.
wij hadden gedanst, we had danced.
jullie hadden (gij hadt) gedanst, you had danced.
zij hadden gedanst, they had danced.

ik had gelezen, I had read.
jij (je) hadt gelezen, thou hadst read.
hij (u) had gelezen, he had read.
wij hadden gelezen, we had read.
jullie hadden (gij hadt) gelezen, you had read.
zij hadden gelezen, they had read.

Future Tense.—Onvolmaakt Toekomende Tijd.

ik zal dansen, I shall dance.
jij (je) zult dansen, thou wilt dance.
hij (u) zal dansen, he will dance.

ik zal lezen, I shall read.
jij (je) zult lezen, thou wilt read.
hij (u) zal lezen, he will read.
wij zullen dansen, we shall dance.
jullie zullen (gij zult) dansen, you will dance.
ziJ zullen dansen, they will dance.

wij zullen lezen, we shall read.
jullie zullen (gij zult) lezen, you will read.
ziJ zullen lezen, they will read.

Future Perfect Tense.—Volmaakt Toekomende Tijd.

ik zal gedanst hebben, I shall have danced.
jij (je) zult gedanst hebben, thou wilt have danced.
hij (u) zal gedanst hebben, he will have danced.
wij zullen gedanst hebben, we shall have danced.
jullie zullen (gij zult) gedanst hebben, you will have danced.
ziJ zullen gedanst hebben, they will have danced.

ik zal gelezen hebben, I shall have read.
jij (je) zult gelezen hebben, thou wilt have read.
hij (u) zal gelezen hebben, he will have read.
wij zullen gelezen hebben, we shall have read.
jullie zullen (gij zult) gelezen hebben, you will have read.
ziJ zullen gelezen hebben, they will have read.

Subjunctive Mood.—Aanvoegende Wijs.

Future Tense.—Onv. Toek. Tijd.

ik zou dansen, I should dance.
jij (je) zoult dansen, thou wouldst dance.
hij (u) zou dansen, he would dance.
wij zouden dansen, we should dance.
jullie zouden (gij zoult) dansen, you would dance.
ziJ zouden dansen, they would dance.

ik zou lezen, I should read.
jij (je) zoult lezen, thou wouldst read.
hij (u) zou lezen, he would read.
wij zouden lezen, we should read.
jullie zouden (gij zoult) lezen, you would read.
ziJ zouden lezen, they would read.

Future Perf. Tense.—Volm. Toek. Tijd.

ik zou gedanst hebben, I should have danced.
jij (je) zoult gedanst hebben, thou wouldst have danced.
hij (u) zou gedanst hebben, he would have danced.

ik zou gelezen hebben, I should have read.
jij (je) zoult gelezen hebben, thou wouldst have read.
hij (u) zou gelezen hebben, he would have read.
THE ADJECTIVE

wij zouden gedanst hebben, we should have danced.
jullie zouden (gij zoudt) gedanst hebben, you would have danced.
zij zouden gedanst hebben, they would have danced.

wij zouden gelezen hebben, we should have read.
jullie zouden (gij zoudt) gelezen hebben, you would have read.
zij zouden gelezen hebben, they would have read.

Imperative Mood.—Gebiedende Wijs.

Singular.—Enkelvoud.

laat mij dansen, let me dance.
dans, dance (thou).
laat hem dansen, let him dance.

laat mij lezen, let me read.
iets, read (thou).
laat hem lezen, let him read.

Plural.—Meervoud.

laat ons dansen, let us dance.
danst, dance (ye).
laat hen dansen, let them dance.

laat ons lezen, let us read.
leest, read (ye).
laat hen lezen, let them read.

Infinitive Mood.—Onbepaalde Wijs.

Present Tense.—Onvolmaakt Tegenwoordige Tijd.

(te) dansen, to dance.

(te) lezen, to read.

Perfect Tense.—Volmaakt Tegenwoordige Tijd.

gedanst (te) hebben, to have danced.

gerlezen (te) hebben, to have read.

Future Tense.—Onvolmaakt Toekomende Tijd.

(te) zullen dansen (no equivalent).

(te) zullen lezen (no equivalent).

Future Perfect Tense.—Volmaakt Toekomende Tijd.

(te) zullen gedanst hebben (no equivalent).

(te) zullen gelezen hebben (no equivalent).

Present Participle.—Tegenwoordig Deelwoord.

dansende, dancing.

lezende, reading.

Past Participle.—Verleden Deelwoord.

gedanst, danced.

gelezen, read.
Like *dansen* conjugate the Weak Verbs: *kloppen, klopt, geklopt*, to knock; *straffen, strafte, gestraft*, to punish; *gissen, gist, gegist*, to guess; *blaffen, blafte, geblaf*, to bark; *hakken, hakte, gehakt*, to chop; *missen, miste, gemist*, to miss, to spare.

Like *lezen* conjugate the Strong Verbs: *wijzen, wees, gewezen*, to show, to point out; *verliezen, verloor, verloren*, to lose; *genezen, genas, genezen*, to cure; *prijzen, prees, geprezen*, to praise; *springen, sprong, gesprongen*, to jump; *rijzen, rees, gercezen*, to rise.

3.

Note.—Translate if by *indien* or *als*, the shorter word being sometimes preferred.

Can you spare [me] one of these new pencils? Yes, I shall give you one (*er . . . een*), because you ask me for it (*er . . . om*). If these girls dance in their room, they will be punished. Did you call (Have . . . called) your own dog or (the) mine? I have called mine three times, but he does not hear, for he is barking at (*tegen*) another dog. If you lose your books, will the teacher punish you? He praised the little boy when he had learned that long verse. If the man had chopped the wood, I should have asked him nothing. Can you guess why he called me? Would she lose all these plants if it should freeze (*froze*)? Read, children, and tell me what is (*staat*) in the letter. Let me knock at (*aan*) the door. If you give me the medicine, it will cure me. If they had shown the money, the thief would have stolen it. If you had guessed the contents of the letter, would you have read (*voorgelezen*) it to your friend? Do not bark so, old dog, your voice is hoarse with it (*er van*).
**THE ADJECTIVE**

4.

Note.—"Then" is translated by "dan", when introducing a conclusive sentence, following a conditional one:

If he goes, then I must stay, *als hij gaat, dan moet ik blijven.*

Suppose he had said so, then you would have answered, *veronderstel dat hij dit gezegd had, dan zou je geantwoord hebben.*

"Then", when an Adverb of Time, is translated by "dan" with the Present and Future tenses, and by "toen" with the Past tense.

I go to the baker, and then to the butcher, *ik ga naar de bakker en dan naar de slager.*

He will come, and then I shall hear it, *hij zal komen, en dan zal ik het horen.*

She ran to her mother and then fainted, *zij liep naar haar moeder toe, en viel toen flauw.*

In the latter meaning it may usually be translated by *daarna* as well, especially when there is a clear succession of events in point of time.

The boy asked his friend (om) to play with him, and then they ran about in the field. I shall miss you when you are gone (*weg*), for then I shall have no one to (om te) play with me. Were they all praising the girl that night (*avond*)? They praised her very* [much], and showed me her beautiful prizes. When the shopkeeper weighed the sugar, he found out his mistake. He will measure the ground first, and then he will build a large dwelling-house on it (*er op*). Were the children sleeping when you called them? No, they were not sleeping any more, they were playing; the girls had dolls, and the boys

*Note.—This "very" is best translated by "erg". The real meaning of "erg" is "bad(ly)", but in sentences like the above it represents "very much": *Ik heb mij erg gcamuseerd*, I amused myself very much.
had marbles. One boy was chopping wood for his mother in the yard, and the eldest boy was sitting reading (te lezen) in a corner of the dining-room. Would you like to go to the post-office first (eerst), and then to the station? I should rather (liever) go to the station first. You want to show me the pictures, my little boy? Having lost her money, the poor woman was in great distress.

5.

Fifth Rule of Construction.—When the object (direct or indirect), or an adverbial extension stands first in a principal sentence, the subject is placed after the predicate.

Yesterday (showed) my brother [showed] me the new house. Five pounds (gave) the man [gave] for the old donkey. Him (called) he [called], not you. To dance (Rule 2) [on] that night (avond), would have been [a] shame. (It) to have missed [it], would have been to have lost it. Now that my mother is gone (weg), my all (alles) is gone. The passage (would) you [would] not measure for me, (said) you [said]; why not? (The) life on earth is pleasant to (voor) some people, but miserable to many. At school I learn, in my bed I sleep; when I am at table I eat, and when (I am) in the garden, I play. That you must (moet) not ask me, for how can (kan) I tell it you? Would the thief have stolen your money, if you had given him some bread? Work [you] must (you) whether (of) you are rich or (of) poor; all people must work. After the battle the soldiers divided the spoil amongst (onder) them (zich). Behind the house is a large garden with many valuable fruit-trees.
VII. THE NUMERAL ADJECTIVE.—Het Telwoord.

Numeral Adjectives, though taken in Dutch as a separate part of speech, are real Adjectives expressing a quantity. That quantity may be defined or not, hence the distinction between *Bepaalde Telwoorden*, Definite Numeral Adjectives and *Onbepaalde Telwoorden*, Indefinite Numeral Adjectives. Besides expressing a quantity, these Adjectives may also point out the place a certain object takes in a series, hence the distinction between *Hoofdgetallen*, Cardinal Numbers, and *Ranggetallen*, Ordinal Numbers. The place or order may again be defined or not. The distinctions are shown in the following table:—

**Telwoorden.—Numerical Adjectives.**

1. *Hoofdgetallen* (Cardinals)  
   a. *Bepaalde* (definite).
   b. *Onbepaalde* (indefinite).
2. *Ranggetallen* (Ordinals)  
   a. *Bepaalde* (definite).
   b. *Onbepaalde* (indefinite).

**Examples:**

1. a.—*een*, one; *twee*, two; *twintig*, twenty; *beide*, both; etc.

1. b.—*Veel*, much, many; *alle*, all; *enige*, some, any; *wat*, some; *weinig*, little, few; *sommige*, some; *geen*, no etc.

2. a.—*eerste*, first; *derde*, third; *vijftigste*, fiftieth, etc.

2. b.—*hoeveelste*, which (in the order); *zoveelste*, such an one (in the order); *laatste*, last; *middelste*, the middle one.

Sentences on 1. b.

*Dit man heeft enige huizen te koop*, this man has some houses for sale.

*Hij heeft veel nieuwe boeken*, he has many new books.
Sommige dagen heb ik te veel lessen, on some days I have too many lessons.

Er zijn geen appelcn aan de boom, there are no apples on the tree.

Heeft u alle (al de) eieren in die mand? have you got all the eggs in that basket?

Note.—If the word alle is followed by the Definite Article or a Demonstrative Pronoun, its form is undecorated, e.g., ik heb al (not alle) de huizen geteld, I have counted all the houses.

Sentences on 2 b.

De hoecessie plaats heeft uw broeder in de klas? which place has your brother in the class?

U zegt, dat dit het twintigste boek is? ik wist niet dat het al het zocurrency was, you say that this is the twentieth book? I did not know we had got so far on (literal rendering is impossible).

Het middelste huis in de straat is het mijne; the middle one of the houses in the street is mine.

Note.—Num. Adj. both definite and indefinite, like all Adjectives, may be used as Nouns, and take a Plural: Vele eersten zullen de laatsten zijn, many (that are) first shall be last; Sommigen ruden dit aan, anderen wat anders, some advise this, others something else.

VIII. Cardinals are not declined except “één”, one (usually accented to distinguish it from the indefinite article een), and beide.

Één, moreover, is not declined when it occurs in combination with another cardinal: een en twintig jaren, twenty-one years. For this the form eenentwintig is used as well. When preceded by the Definite Article or a Demonstrative Pronoun, it is declined like an Adjective, and even takes a Plural: Aan de ene kant zou ik er wel lust in hebben, in one way I should like it; De enen zeggen dit, de anderen dat, some say this and others that.
THE ADJECTIVE 171

**Note.**—All cardinals have a plural form when used as the names of arithmetical figures: Schrijf vier vieren op uw lei, put down four fives on your slate. Hier staan twee even, here you see two ones.

Observation.—Honderden and duizenden, real Substantives, though treated as Adjectives, never change their form: Honderden waren ver, hundreds of hours distant.

**Beide**, meaning "both", has only a plural form. Referring to persons, the Nom. and Acc. case of it are beiden: Ik heb van beiden evenveel vriendelijkheid ondervonden, I have experienced equal kindness from both. But when referring to things, or when used to qualify a Noun, these cases are beide: Licht en duisternis zijn mij beide even welkom op hun beurt, light and darkness are both equally welcome to me in their turn; mijn beide broeders zijn dood, both my brothers are dead. There is likewise a Genitive form in use, which is written beider; e.g. Beider oordeel is mij even nuttig geweest, the opinion of both (either of them) has been alike useful to me.

IX. The **indefinite Cardinals**, as well as the **definite** and **indefinite Ordinals**, are all declined like common Adjectives. When used separately, and referring to persons, they all take *n* in the plural, but they drop this *n* when they refer to things.

X. **Notice the following idiomatic renderings:**—

(a) Of the word Some.


**Note.**—Een beetje, literally "a little bit", is likewise used before materials, some (a little) water, *een beetje water*; some cake, *een beetje koek*;—and een paar, a few, or een stuk of *wat*, before plurals: some few sheep, *een paar schapen*; some (a few) stones, *een stuk of wat stenen*. 
2. Before plural words: some houses, *enige* (*een paar*) huizen; some cows, *enige* (*een paar*) koeien.

3. With the meaning of "a little": May I give you some (a little) of this? *mag ik u hiervan iets (wat) geven?*

4. With the meaning of "a few": Some (a few) of these birds are green, *enkele van deze vogels zijn groen.*

5. To point out "kind" or "sort": Some flour is good, and some is not, *sommig meel is goed en ander niet;* Some (kinds of) people can do that, and others not, *sommige mensen kunnen dat, en anderen niet.*

*Note.—The principal idea of *enige* is "number", and of *sommige* "various kinds".*

6. Signifying "several": We tarried there some days, *wij vertoefden daar verscheidene dagen.*

7. In its most indefinite signification: I should like to give him some (kind of) reward, *ik zou hem graag de ene of andere beloning geven;* Some day I hope to see you again, *de ene of andere dag hoop ik u weer te zien.*

(b) Of the word *Any.*

1. In questions: Have you any books? *heeft u (ook) boeken?* Are there any children in the lane? *zijn er ook kinderen in de laan?*

2. In negations: Have you those pears? No, not any, *Heeft u die peren? Neen, geen enkele;* He had not any money with him, *hij had volstrekt geen geld bij zich.*

With emphasis, before a Plural Noun: I expect you under any circumstances, *ik zal u onder alle omstandigheden verwachten;* the safe is proof against any attacks by thieves, *de brandkast is bestand tegen alle aanvallen van dieven.*

4. In a general sense: He did as well as any boy could have done, *hij deed het zo goed als een jongen het.*

5. Before an Adjective: Any other horse would have kicked, *ieder ander paard zou geschopt hebben.*

XI. Mark further the following expressions:

1. At one o’clock, *om één uur.*
2. At half-past two, *om half-drie.*
3. At a quarter to four, *om kwartier (kwart) voor vier.*
4. At a quarter past six, *om kwartier over zes.*
5. At twenty minutes past eight, *om tien minuten voor half-negen.*
6. At twenty-five minutes to ten, *om vijf minuten over half-tien.*
7. At about five o’clock, *omstreeks (omtrent) vijf uur.*
8. Some six pounds, *een pond of zes (een unaccented).*
9. Some twenty years, *een jaar of twintig (this way of expression is not customary for numbers higher than twenty).*
10. Some hundred books, *een honderd boeken.*
11. Some few sheep, *een schaap of wat.*
12. Some fifteen young trees, *een stuk of vijftien jonge bomen.* (Use ongeveer or omtrent before large quantities.)
13. About a fortnight, *een veertien dagen* (*een dag of veertien*).

14. About four weeks, *een vier weken* (*een week of vier*).

15. About fifty bags of rice, *een vijftig zakken rijst*.

16. Some eight days, *een acht dagen* (*een dag of acht*).

17. Chapter four, *hoofdstuk vier* or *het vierde hoofdstuk*.

18. The tenth verse, *vers tien* or *het tiende vers*.

19. London, the twelfth of May, *Londen, twaalf Mei* (no other form is used).


21. What day of the month is it? *de hoeveelste is het vandaag?*

22. This paper is sold at ten shillings a ream, *dit papier wordt verkocht tegen tien shillings per* (or *de*) *riem*.

23. Pens for sale, four a penny, *pennen te koop, vier voor een stuiver*.

24. The two of us, *wij tweeën*.

25. The whole of us, *wij allen*.

26. I saw all four of them, *ik zag hen alle vier*.

27. Only the three of them are going, *zij gaan maar met hen drieën*.

28. We four were alone, *wij vieren waren alleen*.

29. Twenty of them will climb the mountain, *zij gaan met hen twintigen de berg op*.

XII. Common Adjectives are formed from Cardinal Numbers by the addition of *voudig* or *vuldig*, meaning "fold". Such Adjectives are called *Verdubbeltallen* (*multiplicatives*): *twee*-*voudig*, twofold; *vier*-*voudig*, fourfold; *menig*-*vuldig*, manifold; *veel*-*voudig*, manifold. They are treated like ordinary Adjectives.
XIII. By means of the endings *lei* and *hande* (both obsolete Dutch words, meaning "kind" or "sort"), Adjectives are formed from Cardinal Numbers; these, however, are *indeclinable*. On account of their meaning they are called *Soortgetallen* (*Variatives*): *enerlei*, of the same kind; *velerlei*, of various kinds; *allerlei*, all sorts of; *tweeërlei*, of two kinds; *zesderlei*, of six different kinds; *honderderlei*, *duizenderlei*, etc.

XIV. There are also a few Adverbs derived from Cardinal Numbers by means of the endings *maal*, *werf*, and *keer*, all meaning "time" or "turn". They are called *Herhalingsgetallen* (in English, Adverbs of Number): *driemal*, *driewerf*, *driekeer*, three times; *eenmaal*, once, etc.

Note 1.—*Maal* and *keer* are also used as Substantives: *Ik zie hem drie malen op één dag*, I see him three times in one day; *Ik heb hem voor de derde keer gewaarschuwd*, I have warned him for the third time.

Note 2.—Like *maal* and *keer*, the word *reis* was formerly used to express time or turn. It is very seldom heard now but in one contraction, which the student must needs be acquainted with, viz., *creis*, pronounced *crus*, a contraction of *een reis*, once.

XV. One and a half is translated *anderhalf* (in South African Dutch, *een en een half*). The meaning of this is "one whole (not expressed) and the other half". In the same manner *derdehalf*, two and a half; *vierdehalf*, three and a half; *vijfdehalf*, four and a half; and *zesdehalf*, five and a half, are made use of, though less frequently.

XVI. List of Cardinal and Ordinal Numbers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cardinals</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Ordinals</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>één</em>,</td>
<td>one</td>
<td><em>de</em> or <em>het eerste</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>twee</em>,</td>
<td>two</td>
<td>&quot;&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>drie</em>,</td>
<td>three</td>
<td>&quot;&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>vier</em>,</td>
<td>four</td>
<td>&quot;&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>vijf</em>,</td>
<td>five</td>
<td>&quot;&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>zes</em>,</td>
<td>six</td>
<td>&quot;&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>tweede</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>derde</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>vierde</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>vijfde</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>zesde</em>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Cardinals.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dutch</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Netherlandish</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>zeven</td>
<td>seven</td>
<td>de of het zevende.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acht</td>
<td>eight</td>
<td>achtste.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>negen</td>
<td>nine</td>
<td>negende.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tien</td>
<td>ten</td>
<td>tiende.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>elf</td>
<td>eleven</td>
<td>elfde.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>twaalf</td>
<td>twelve</td>
<td>twaalfde.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dertien</td>
<td>thirteen</td>
<td>dertiende.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>veertién</td>
<td>fourteen</td>
<td>veertiende.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vijftien</td>
<td>fifteen</td>
<td>vijftiende.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zestien</td>
<td>sixteen</td>
<td>zestiende.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zeventien</td>
<td>seventeen</td>
<td>zeventiende.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>achtien</td>
<td>eighteen</td>
<td>achttiende.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>negentien</td>
<td>nineteen</td>
<td>negentiende.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>twintig</td>
<td>twenty</td>
<td>twintigste.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>een en twintig</td>
<td>twenty-one</td>
<td>een en twintigste.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>twee en twintig</td>
<td>twenty-two</td>
<td>twee en twintigste.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drie en twintig</td>
<td>twenty-three</td>
<td>drie en twintigste.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dertig</td>
<td>thirty</td>
<td>dertigste.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>veertig</td>
<td>forty</td>
<td>veertigste.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vijftig</td>
<td>fifty</td>
<td>vijftigste.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zestig</td>
<td>sixty</td>
<td>zestigste.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zeventig</td>
<td>seventy</td>
<td>zeventigste.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tachtig</td>
<td>eighty</td>
<td>tachtigste.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>negentig</td>
<td>ninety</td>
<td>negentigste.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>honderd</td>
<td>one hundred</td>
<td>honderdsté.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>honderd één</td>
<td>one hundred and one</td>
<td>honderd en eerste.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>honderd twee,</td>
<td>one hundred and two</td>
<td>honderd en tweede.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>honderd tien,</td>
<td>one hundred and ten</td>
<td>honderd en tiende.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>twee honderd,</td>
<td>two hundred</td>
<td>tweé honderdsté.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>twee honderd één,</td>
<td>two hundred and one</td>
<td>tweé honderd en eerste.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drie honderd,</td>
<td>three hundred</td>
<td>drie honderdsté.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vier honderd,</td>
<td>four hundred</td>
<td>vier honderdsté.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duizend,</td>
<td>a thousand</td>
<td>duizéndste.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duizend en één,</td>
<td>one thousand and one</td>
<td>duizénd en eerste.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duizend en twee,</td>
<td>one thousand and two</td>
<td>duizénd en tweede.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duizend en tien,</td>
<td>one thousand and ten</td>
<td>duizénd en tiende.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duizend één hon-</td>
<td>one thousand one hundred</td>
<td>duizénd één hon-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>derd.</td>
<td></td>
<td>derdsté.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>twee duizend,</td>
<td>two thousand</td>
<td>twee duizéndste.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tien duizend,</td>
<td>ten thousand</td>
<td>tien duizéndste.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>een miljoen,</td>
<td>a million</td>
<td>miljoenste.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
NOTE 1.—Ordinals up to 20th, except eerste and achtste, are derived by the suffix de; the remainder all take the ending ste.

NOTE 2.—Miljoen is a Noun: een miljoen sterren, a million of stars.

NOTE 3.—Be careful not to write achtien with one t. Its composition demands a double t.

NOTE 4.—Mark acht, achtien, and tachtig. The t in this latter word is prefixed.

NOTE 5.—A (or one) hundred, and a (or one) thousand should simply be translated honderd (not een honderd), and duizend (not een duizend).

NOTE 6.—In summing up, translate first, second, third, fourth, fifth, sixth, etc., only by ten eerste, ten tweede, ten derde, ten vierde, ten vijfde, ten zesde.

In South African Dutch eerstens, tweedens, dertdens, vierdens, etc., are used as well.

GRAMMAR EXERCISE.

(On Writing out Numbers.)

Write out in words the numbers given below, noticing specially the following points:

Unlike the English:

(a) Vijf honderd twee; drie honderd twintig=five hundred and two; three hundred and twenty.

(b) Vijf en twintig=twenty-five.

(c) Duizend=a thousand; honderd=one hundred.

Like the English:

(a) Duizend en één, duizend en twintig=a thousand and one, a thousand and twenty.

(b) De honderd en eerste, de honderd en twintigste=the one hundred and first, the hundred and twentieth. De honderd twintigste is used as well.

(c) Een miljoen en één=a million and one.

5340; 3003; 525; 1,000,001; 720,540; 4400; 505; 8808; 7,070,070; 6,006,006; 9,900,099; 1,001,100.

Write out the Ordinals derived from the above Cardinal Numbers.
TRANSLATION EXERCISE No. 7.

1.

Some ten of our young rose-trees are frostbitten (doodgerijpt). Give the child some hot milk to drink. The battle of Waterloo was fought on the eighteenth of June, eighteen hundred and fifteen. A party of twenty young men went up the mountain together. Some few sheep among the lot were poor, but all the rest were in splendid condition (zagen er bijzonder goed uit). I should like to give this poor boy some reward for his honesty. The merchant showed me a few samples [of] Java coffee, the best of which (waarvan) is (wordt) sold at (voor) eighteen pence a (the) pound. After we had spent about a fortnight at (aan) the seaside, my mother was taken (became) so ill that all of us had to (must) return home (naar huis). I did not have any mistakes in my dictation today. The last house in the street is my brother's (that of—). There are two kinds of seed in this bag. This man has received a fourfold reward.

2.

This parcel weighs a pound and a half. The child was punished twice today. There are various kinds of books in our school library. The painter painted the wall three times. For some reason or other the child had not done her work. May I give you some of this meat? Yes, thank you (if you please = als 't u belieft). In less than ten minutes there were hundreds [of] people at the scene of the fire. What day of the month was (it) yesterday? It was the twenty-fifth. The letter was dated: Rotterdam, June 22nd, 1894. Are there any children that have no pens? Some of the fowls had their wings clipped (werden gekortwickt). Some of the sugar (which) we have had from that shop has been very bad. I gave the child some cake and sent her home. Some advise me
to go by rail (per spoor), others to take the steamer; and being a stranger (as I am—), I do not know what will be best.

3.

Sixth Rule of Construction.—The position of niet in negative sentences is mostly the same in Dutch as in English, only in Dutch "niet" follows the direct object. If such object is preceded by "a", "not... a", niet is translated by the distinguishing Adjective geen.

Did he not tell you a story? He did not take the money from my eldest brother. We did not play in the garden, but in the dining-room. Lions do not live longer than elephants. When we travel in the mountains, we do not sleep in teuts, but in caves. Did the medicine cure your poor mother? Did the children learn all their lessons in an hour and a half? Did he have any stories to tell? He told (er) some (een paar), but not many. Did you not ask him to weigh the meat? The boys did not play (with) marbles, when they were in the field. Did not your grandfather live till (tot) the house was built? The teachers did not praise the children when they had done (gedaan) their work, but they punished them whenever it was not done. I should not have taken the books, if I had not asked him. The dogs would not have barked at (tegen) the boys, if they had not played in the street.

4.

Translation of Present Participle. II.—Present Participles are secondly translated by means of the Conjunction terwijl, while.—Take care, she said, laying her hand on his shoulder, pas op, zei ze, terwijl ze haar hand op zijn schouder legde.

Do not make a mistake in telling him (while you tell him) the story. The dog barked at (tegen) me, showing (while he showed) (liet zien) his teeth in between (tussen
in). Asking the shop-keeper to show him some boots, he stole the laces. Dividing the apples amongst (onder) her children, the mother lost (er) one. She walked up and down her room, learning her lesson. Coming up to me (naar mij toe), the stranger handed me this letter. Reading over the sentence, I discovered my mistake. Playing with the hatchet, the little boy hurt his hand. Looking for shells on the beach, I found this pretty gold ring. Oh, my brother, [she] cried (riep) (she), running towards him and embracing him. Taking up her bundle of sticks, the old woman walked off.

5.

An Irishman was in (had once) want of money. He thought he would go [and] steal. Looking about in his house, he found an old rusty pistol. He took the weapon and went to a spot where (the) farmers used to (plachten) pass on [their] way (naar) home from (the) market. Placing himself behind a large tree, he waited (transl. he placed . . . and waited) till someone came past. After half an hour a cart appeared, in which [there] sat an old farmer. The thief jumped [from] out his hiding-place (te voorschijn), and made for (ran towards) the horse. Grasping the reins, he levelled the pistol at the farmer's head, and cried "Your money or your life!" The farmer replied, "Do not kill me; let us rather make an agreement. I give you my money, and you give me that pistol." Hereupon the thief handed over his weapon, and the farmer handed over his purse. The thief ran off with his prize, but the farmer jumped down from his cart and ran after him (hem achterna). He soon overtook him, and seizing him by his collar, exclaimed (he), "Now my money, or your life!" "Oh," cried the Irishman, "shoot away (schiet maar toe), there is no powder in my pistol!"
**KONVERSATIE.**

**Familiebetrekkingen.**

1. _Deze oude heer is het hoofd van de familie._
2. _Leven uw ouders nog?_
3. _Mijn vader leeft nog, maar mijn moeder is reeds enige jaren dood._
4. _Heeft u veel familiebetrekkingen?_
5. _Zeer weinig nabestaanden._
6. _Ik heb een oom in Amerika en verscheidene neven in Indië._
7. _Hoe is die jonge man aan u verwant?_
8. _Hij is mijn neef, en dit jonge meisje is mijn nicht._
9. _Mijn tante en nichten komen vandaag._
10. _Onze dochter en schoonzoon zijn gisteren aangegaan._
11. _Mijn oom schrijft iedere week aan zijn kinderen._
12. _Mijn schoonvader gaf mij dit boek, en mijn schoonmoeder zond mij een horloge._
13. _Wanneer zullen mijnheer M. en mijnvrouw K. trouwen?_
14. _De geboden zijn verlezen Zondag afgelezen._
15. _Haar grootouders hebben kostbare geschenken gezonden._

---

**CONVERSATION.**

**Family Relations.**

This old gentleman is the head of the family.
Are your parents still alive?
My father is alive, but my mother died some years ago.
Have you many relations?

Very few near relatives.
I have an uncle in America and several cousins in India.
How is that young man related to you?
He is my nephew and this young girl is my niece.
My aunt and cousins are coming today.
Our daughter and son-in-law arrived yesterday.
My uncle writes to his children every week.
My father-in-law gave me this book, and my mother-in-law sent me a watch.
When are Mr. M. and Miss K. to be married?

The banns were published last Sunday.
Her grandparents have sent valuable presents.
17. Is die heer familie van u?
18. Hij is een verre bloedverwant van mij.
19. Met wie is uw tante getrouwd?
20. Met Kapitein Innes, haar achterneef.
21. Is u op de bruiloft geweest?
22. Neen, maar mijn schoonzuster is er geweest.
23. Zij zal een uitstekende vrouw zijn.
24. Mijn broeders en zussters zijn allen getrouwd, en wonen te Londen.
25. Hebben zij kinderen?
26. Mijn oudste broder heeft vijf zoons en twee tweelingdochter.
27. Mijn moeder houdt heel veel van haar kleinkinderen.
28. Is mijnheer R. weduwenaar?
29. Ja, zijn vrouw is vorig jaar gestorven, en heeft een dochtertje van vier jaar en een kindje van pas een paar maanden nagelaten.

My great-grandparents are still alive. Is that gentleman a relation of yours? He is distantly related to me. Whom has your aunt married? Captain Innes, her second cousin. Were you at the wedding? No, but my sister-in-law was there. She will make an excellent wife. My brothers and sisters are all married and live in London. Have they any children? My eldest brother has five sons and two twin daughters. My mother is very fond of her grand-children. Is Mr. R. a widower? Yes, his wife died last year, and left one little girl of four years and a baby of only a few months old.
I. A Pronoun, *Voornaamwoord*, as the name indicates, stands for a Noun, that is, takes the place of a Noun.

II. The kinds of Pronouns in use in Dutch are—

*Persoonlijke* (Personal).
*Betrekkelijke* (Relative).
*Vragende* (Interrogative)
*Onbepaalde* (Indefinite).
*Bepaling aankondigende* (Correlative).
*Aanwijzende* (Demonstrative).
*Bezittelike* (Possessive).

III. Personal Pronouns. The Personal Pronouns are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1st Person</th>
<th>2nd Person</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Singular</td>
<td>Plural</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>ik</em> I</td>
<td><em>wij (we)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>3rd Person</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Singular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>hij</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

IV. The Pronouns of the first and second persons have no distinction of gender, but those of the third person have. Their declension is as follows:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Persoon. Geslacht</th>
<th>Enkelvoud</th>
<th>Meervoud</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Eerste</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mann., Vr. of Onz</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. nv. I, ik</td>
<td>we, wij, we</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. nv. mine, mijner, ours, onzer, ons.</td>
<td>mijn</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. nv. me, mij, me.</td>
<td>us, ons.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. nv. me, mij, me.</td>
<td>us, ons.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tweede</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mann., Vr., or Onz</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. nv. thou, gij, ge; you, gij, ge; jij, je</td>
<td>jullie</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. nv. thine, uwer, yours, uwer; van ur; van jou</td>
<td>jullie</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. nv. thee, u; jou, je you, u; jullie</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. nv. thee, u; jou, je you, u; jullie</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Derde. Mannelijk</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. nv. he, hij</td>
<td>they, zij, ze</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. nv. his, zijner, zijn.</td>
<td>hun</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. nv. him, hcm.</td>
<td>them, hun, ze</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. nv. him, hem.</td>
<td>them, hun, ze</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Derde. Vrouwelijk</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. nv. she, zij, ze.</td>
<td>Like the Singular</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. nv. hers, harch, haar.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. nv. her, haur, ze.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. nv. her, haar, ze.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Derde. Onzijdig</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. nv. it, het.</td>
<td>Like the Masculine Plural</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. nv. its, zijns, zijn.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. nv. it, het.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. nv. it, het.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Observations.

1.—The old form of the 2nd Person Singular, *du* (thou), possessive case *dijn* (thine), is obsolete. The disappearance from the language of this Pronoun has created a difficulty, which has been hinted at before. The following rules should be adopted:—

(a) In books, correspondence, and public speaking *gij* (or *ge*) is used, singular and plural, with Verb in 2nd person. More and more the use of this Pronoun is being restricted. As long, however, as the Bible has it, and no other Pronoun is admissible in addressing God in prayer, it will retain its place in the language.
(b) In polite speaking use *u*, singular and plural, with Verb in 3rd person for Singular, and (mostly) in 2nd person for Plural. This Pronoun, which is an abbreviation of the old *UEdel* (a form used of old by serfs in addressing the nobility), is now being largely used for correspondence purposes, replacing *gij*.

(c) In familiar talk to children, brothers, sisters, and close friends, use *je* (with emphasis *jij*) singular, with Verb in 2nd person, and *jullie*, plural, with Verb in 3rd person.

2.—*Ik* is usually pronounced *'k*, and often written so. *Hij* is often pronounced *i*, especially after words ending in *t*, but in writing remains *hij*. *Ge, je*, and *we*, being soft forms for *gij*, *jij*, and *wij*, are very commonly used, both in speaking and writing, when no emphasis is required. *Het* is mostly shortened to *'t*.

3.—Personal Pronouns agree with the natural and not with the grammatical gender of the Nouns to which they refer: *Dat meisje heeft haar boek verloren; zij* (not *het*) is erg verdrietig, that girl has lost her book; she is very sad.

4.—Personal Pronouns also agree in number with the Noun for which they stand, even in the case of Collective Nouns: *Toen de bende dit hoorde, ging hij* (singular) *uiteen*, when the crowd heard this, they dispersed.

5.—*Elkander* or *elkaar*, *malkander* or *mekaar*, meaning "each other" or "one another", are called Reciprocal Pronouns, *Wederkerige Persoonlike Voornaamwoorden*, because their meaning indicates that the action of the Verb with which they stand, passes continually from one person to another: *Zij slaan elkander*, they beat each other; *Zij bedriegen elkander*, they deceive one another.

Note.—When used as above, these Pronouns have neither a Nominative nor a Possessive case. They may, however, be used as Adjective Pronouns indicating possession, in which case they take a Genitive form: *Wij verhuizen ons in elkanders gezelschap*, we delight in each other's company.
6.—Zich, one's self, is the Reflexive Pronoun, Terugwerkend Voornaamwoord, of the 3rd Person (Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter), only used in 3rd and 4th cases, while for the Reflexive Pronouns of the 1st and 2nd Persons the Objective cases of these Pronouns are used. This applies to Reflexive Verbs only.

Examples:

*ik* was *mij*, I wash myself.

*gij* wast *u*, you wash yourself.

*jij* wast * jou*, you wash yourself.

*u* wast *u*, you wash yourself.

*hij* wast *zich*, he washes himself.

*zij* wast *zich*, she washes herself.

*het* wast *zich*, it washes itself.

*men* wast *zich*, one washes oneself.

*wij* wassen *ons*, we wash ourselves

*gij* wast *u*, you wash yourselves.

*jullie* wassen *je* (*jullie*), you wash yourselves.

*u* wast *u*, you wash yourselves.

*zij* wassen *zich*, they wash themselves.

Note 1.—Notice particularly that "I myself", etc. when otherwise used, is translated by *ik* *zelf*, and not *ik* *mijzelf*, etc., e.g. I go myself, *ik* *ga* *zelf*; She will do it herself, *zij* zal *het* *zelf* *doen*. The addition of the Pronoun *zelf* with Reflexive (like above) forms is admissible, but serves to accentuate the meaning, so that it should only be added where emphasis is required. "Must I go and wash myself?" should therefore be rendered, *Moet ik mij gaan wassen?* unless there is any question of 'not washing some one else', in which case alone it should be: *Moet ik mijzelf gaan wassen?* with full emphasis on the word "*zelf*".

Note 2.—When the Reflexive Pronoun forms the preposition-object of the Verb, the Dutch expression corresponds with the English one.

He said to himself, *hij* *zelf* *bij* *zichzelf*.

I thought to myself, *ik* *dacht* *bij* *mijzelf*.

7.—Declension of the Personal Pronoun with the word *zelf*.

**Mannelijk.**

1 *nv.* *ik*, *gij*, *hij* *zelf*, *Ik myself*, *etc.*

2 *nv.* van *mijzelf*, *uzelf*, hem-*zelf*, *etc.*

3 *nv.* *mijzelf*, *uzelf*, hem-*zelf*.

4 *nv.* *mijzelf*, *uzelf*, hem-*zelf*.

**Vrouwelik.**

*ik*, *gij*, *zij* *zelf*, *Ik myself*, *etc.*

*van* *mijzelf*, *uzelf*, haar-*zelf*.

*mijzelf*, *uzelf*, haar-*zelf*.
THE PRONOUN

ONZIJDIG.

1 nv. ik, gij, hetzelf, I myself, etc.
2 nv. van mijzelf, uzelf, hetzelf.
3 nv. mijzelf, uzelf, hetzelf.
4 nv. mijzelf, uzelf, hetzelf.

MEERVOUD VOOR DE DRIE GESLACHTEN.

1 nv. wij, gij, zijzelven (of persons)—zijzelve (of things).
2 nv. van onszelven, etc.
3 rv. ons, u, hunzelven.
4 rv. ons, u, henzelven.

Not only Personal Pronouns, but also Nouns may take this word zelf to render their meaning more emphatic:

MANNELIK. VROUWELIK. ONZIJDIG.

De broeder zelf de zuster zelf het kind zelf.

MEERVOUD.

de broeders, zusters, kinderen zelven, de boeken zelve.

Note.—Mark the difference between this word and the word zelfs, meaning "even", which is often confused with it.

8.—The Possessive case of Personal Pronouns is now rarely used, but is met with in some time-established expressions (geijkte termen), such as: gedenk mijner, think of me; erbarm u zijncr, have pity on him; de meesten hunner, most of them; velcn uwcr, de meesten uwer, many of you, most of you; Uwer is het koninkrjck, Thine is the kingdom.

Sometimes the Possessive case of Personal Pronouns is found compounded with another word, so as to form an Adverbial phrase: Ik doe het uwentwege, om uwentwil, uwenhalve, I do it for your sake. The t in these compounds is inserted for the purpose of facilitating pronunciation.

Note.—Write: Ik ben u beider vriend, I am a friend of both of you (not—uwcr beider vriend, nor—uw beider vriend); hun aller broeder, a brother of them all (not: hunner aller broeder).
Note 2.—The English double Possessive is not used in Dutch: "A friend of mine" is translated *een vriend van mij*, or *een van mijn vrienden*. "At my aunt's" should be rendered: *bij mij tante aan huis*, "At the butcher's" is simply: *bij de slager*.

V. Possessive Pronouns, *Bezittelijke Voornaamwoorden*.—For the Possessive case of Personal Pronouns two different forms have been given. The second of those forms is that of the Possessive Adjectives, from which again the Possessive Pronouns are formed. Hence we have:

Possessive Adjectives:

\[
\begin{align*}
mijn, & \text{ my; uw, jouw, thy; zijn, his; haar, her; onze, our; uw, jullie, your; hun, their (Masc. and Neut.); haar, their (Fem.).}
\end{align*}
\]

Possessive Pronouns:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Mannelijk.} & \quad \text{Vrouwelijk.} & \quad \text{Onzijdig.} & \quad \text{Meervoud.} \\
\text{De mijne,} & \quad \text{de mijne,} & \quad \text{het mijne,} & \quad \text{de mijne of mijnent, mine.} \\
\text{De uwe,} & \quad \text{de uwe,} & \quad \text{het uwe,} & \quad \text{de uwe or uwen, \{thine.} \\
\text{De jouwe,} & \quad \text{de jouwe,} & \quad \text{het jouwe,} & \quad \text{de jouwe or jouwen, \{his.} \\
\text{De zijne,} & \quad \text{de zijne,} & \quad \text{het zijne,} & \quad \text{de zijne or zijnen, his.} \\
\text{De hare,} & \quad \text{de hare,} & \quad \text{het hare,} & \quad \text{de hare or haren, hers.} \\
\text{De onze,} & \quad \text{de onze,} & \quad \text{het onze,} & \quad \text{de onze or onzen, ours.} \\
\text{*De uwe,} & \quad \text{de uwe,} & \quad \text{het uwe,} & \quad \text{de uwe or uwen, yours.} \\
\text{De hunne,} & \quad \text{de hunne,} & \quad \text{het hunne,} & \quad \text{de hunne or hunnen, theirs, \{Masc.} \\
\text{De hare,} & \quad \text{de hare,} & \quad \text{het hare,} & \quad \text{de hare or haren, theirs, F.}
\end{align*}
\]

\text{*Jullie cannot take the declined form of the possessive pronoun: van jullie is used instead; as: De boeken zijn van jullie, the books are yours.}

Observations.

1.—Possessive Pronouns may be used as Adverbial expressions of place in connection with the Preposition *te*: *Zal ik u te mijnent of te uwent ontmoeten?* Shall I meet you at my house or at yours?

Note.—*Mijnent* is the old Dative case of *mijn* with *t* added for the sake of euphony. It also occurs in *mijnentwege*, on my behalf, and *mijnenthalve*, for my sake.
2.—Possessive Pronouns referring to more than one person, must be in the plural: *Mijn broeder en zuster doen hui jaarliks reisje*, my brother and sister are making their yearly trip; *U en ik hebben ons werk klaar*, you and I have finished our work. *U en hij hebt beiden uw zin*, you and he both have what you wanted.

It will be seen from these examples that in such cases the 1st person predominates over the 2nd, and the second over the third; likewise the Masculine gender over the Feminine.

VI. Interrogative Pronouns, *Vragende Voornaamwoorden*. These are: *wie? wat? welk? hoedanig een? wat voor een?*

*Wie*, who, inquires after persons;

*Wat*, what, inquires after things;

*Welk*, translates ‘which’ in the expression “which of”;

*Welk*, which, or what, is an Adjective Pronoun inquiring into the nature of its Noun;


**Examples:**

*Wie is daar?* Who is there?

*Wat valt daar?* What falls there?

*Welk van de boeken wil u hebben?* Which of the books will you have?

*Welke bomen worden omgehaakt?* Which trees are to be cut down?

*Wat voor een (hoedanig een) mens is hij?* What kind of a man is he?

*Hoedanige stenen (wat voor stenen) zijn het, waarvan hij spreekt?* What kind of stones are they of which he speaks?
Observations.

1. Declension of Interrogative Pronouns:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mannelijk</th>
<th>Vrouwelik</th>
<th>Onzijdig</th>
<th>Meervoud voor de drie Geslachten</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Enkelvoud.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Enkelvoud.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Enkelvoud.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Enkelvoud voor de drie Geslachten.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 nv. wie,</td>
<td>wie,</td>
<td>wat,</td>
<td>wie,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 nv. wiens, van wie,</td>
<td>van wie,</td>
<td>waarvan,</td>
<td>wier, van wie,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 nv. wie,</td>
<td>aan wie,</td>
<td>waaraan,</td>
<td>wie,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 nv. wie,</td>
<td>wie,</td>
<td>wat,</td>
<td>wie,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 nv. welke, welk,</td>
<td>welke,</td>
<td>welk,</td>
<td>welke,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 nv. van welke,</td>
<td>van welke,</td>
<td>van welk,</td>
<td>van welke,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 nv. welke,</td>
<td>welke, aan welk,</td>
<td>welk,</td>
<td>welke,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 nv. welke,</td>
<td>welke,</td>
<td>welk,</td>
<td>welke.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Mannelijk.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Enkelvoud.</strong></th>
<th><strong>Meervoud.</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 nv. wat voor een man,</td>
<td>1 nv. wat voor mannen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 nv. van wat voor een man,</td>
<td>2 nv. van wat voor mannen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 nv. aan wat voor een man,</td>
<td>3 nv. aan wat voor mannen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 nr. wat voor een man.</td>
<td>4 nr. wat voor mannen.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2.—Notice that *het* (Pers.), *dit* and *dat* (Demon.), and *wat* (Interr.) can never be used after Prepositions. New compounds are therefore formed as follows:

With *het*, the word becomes *er*, and has the Preposition annexed: *erin, eruit*, etc.

With *dit*, the word becomes *hier*, and has the Preposition annexed: *hierin, hieruit*, etc.

Likewise those with *dat*, become *daarin, daaruit*, etc.

And those with *wat*, become *waarin, waaruit*, etc.

Whenever things, and even animals, are referred to, these compound forms are used rather than the separate Pronouns, as: *Het paard waarover* (not *over hetwelk*) *ik sprak*, the horse of which I spoke; *De bloemen waarvan* (not *van welke*) *ik zoveel houd*, the flowers, of which I am so fond. In the case of names of persons, these compounds should not be used.
VII. Indefinite Pronouns, *Onbepaalde Voornamwoorden*—Indefinite Pronouns give a name to what is either unknown or too little defined to receive any special name. They refer to persons as well as to things, to names of objects as well as to names of materials. Most of them stand alone, and one requires a Noun after it. To the former belong: men, one, iemand, somebody, niemand, nobody, sommigen, some people, iets, something, niets, nothing, een, one, someone, geen, no one, alwie, anyone, alwat, anything; the latter is zeker, a certain.

Notice the following:

*Deze en gene,* one and another (some people);
*Deze of gene,* some one or other;
*De een of ander,* some one or other;
*De een of de ander,* one or the other;
*Het een of ander,* something or other;
*Het een of het ander,* (the) one thing or the other (another);
*Het een en ander,* some things.

In the following examples, the different translations of *men* should be specially noticed:

*Men moet daar altijd lang wachten,* one has always to wait a long time there;
*Men moet oppassen voor natte voeten,* you should beware of damp feet;
*Men spreekt gewoonlijk te veel,* people usually speak too much;
*Men zegt wel eens, dat oorlog goed is,* they say sometimes that war is a good thing;
*Men heeft mij tweemaal bedrogen,* I have been twice deceived;
*Men zegt,* it is said.
Observations.

1.—The Pronoun *men* can only be used in the Nom. case, and is consequently the subject of the sentence in which it is found. Being a Pronoun of the 3rd person, the Possessive and Reflexive Pronouns referring to it must be those of the same person, as:

> Door zich te veel aan koude en natte tijd bloot te stellen, bezaaidt men zijn gezondheid, by exposing oneself too much to cold and damp weather, one injures one's health.

2.—Notice that the Pronoun *one*, occurring after an Adjective, is not translated:

> Ik heb een hond, en een goede. Here are two books, both new ones, *hier zijn twee boeken, beide (alle twee) nieuwe.*

3.—Whoever and whatever are translated by *wie ook* and *wat ook*, likewise *which(so)ever* by *welke ook*, *how(so)ever* by *hoe ook*, and *where(so)ever* by *waar ook*, the word “ook” being separated from its Pronoun, and placed just before the Verb of the sentence.

> Wat hij ook doet, whatever he does.
> Wie hem dat ook zegt, whoever tells him that.
> Waar hij u ook mocht treffen, wherever he might meet you.

4.—The Indefinite Pronouns *iemand, niemand, iets, niets*, and *wat*, together with the Adjectives *weinig, veel, enig, geen*, and *heel wat*, when followed by an Adjective of quality, cause this Adjective to end in *s* (genitive), as:

> iemand vreemds, any strangers?
> niemand vreemds, no strangers;
> iets goeds, anything good?
> niets bijzonders, nothing particular;
> Weinig nieuws, little news;
> veel kwaads, much evil;
> enig nieuws, anything new?
> geen goeds, nothing good;
> heel wat slechts, a good deal of bad (things).
Correlative Pronouns, *Bepaling aankondigende Voornaamwoorden*, are distinguished from all other Pronouns by the necessity of their being followed by a complement in the form of an Adjective Sentence, in order to render their meaning complete.

1. They are collected from among the Personal, Indefinite, and Demonstrative Pronouns, but perform a distinctly different function.

_Hij, die tevreden is, is gelukkig_, he who is content, is happy. Here the person represented by the pronoun _hij_ only becomes known to the hearer, after the Adjective sentence defining that person has been added. _Hij_, therefore, is here not a Personal, but a Correlative Pronoun.

The Pronouns belonging to this class are: _hij_, he; _die_, _diegene_, that one; _deze_, this one; _dat_, _hetgene_, and _datgene_, that, the thing (which); _degene_, the one; _dezelfde_, _hetzelfde_, the same; _zulken_, such; _zodanigen_, suchlike (the latter two only used in the plural).

**Examples:**

_Degenen, die schuldig bevonden werden_, zijn _allen gestraft_, those that were found guilty, have all been punished.

_Hij sprak mij over _hetgeen_, dat u hem verteld heeft_, he spoke to me about what (the thing which) you told him.

_Die kunnen _allen rustig zijn_, die _er geen deel aan genomen hebben_, all those may feel at ease, who have taken no part in it.

**Observations.**

1._-_Dezelve_ is a Personal Pronoun of the third person. It is obsolete, and now only occurs in old documents. Its declension is like that of _degene_. When, however,
dezelve occurs in the Possessive case before a Noun, it takes the form of deszelfs for the Masculine and Neuter singular, and derzelver for the plural and the Feminine singular, as: Mct deszelfs toestemming, with his consent; in derzelver behoeften voorzien, to provide for their wants.

2.—Declension of the pronouns degene and dezelfde:

ENKELVOUD.

Mannelijk en Vrouwelik.              Onzijdig.
1 nv. degene, dezelfde;               hetgeen, hetzelfde.
2 nv. van degene, dezelfde;           van hetgeen, hetzelfde.
3 nr. aan degene, dezelfde;           aan hetgeen, hetzelfde.
4 nv. degene, dezelfde;               hetgeen, hetzelfde.

MEERVOUD.

Voor Personen.                        Voor Zaken.
1 nv. degenen, dezelfden;             dezelfde.
2 nv. van degenen, dezelfden;         van dezelfde.
3 nv. aan degenen, dezelfden;         aan dezelfde.
4 nv. degenen, dezelfden;             dezelfde.

IX. Demonstrative Pronouns, Aanwijzende Voor-
naamwoorden. These define the place of persons and
objects spoken about, indicating whether the distance
between them and the speaker is greater or smaller. They
are: deze, (neut.) dit, this; die, (neut.) dat, that; gene,
(also) gindse, (neut.) ginds, yonder.

Observations.

1.—The Genitive singular, Masculine and Neuter of
die used to be diens, with an n inserted. This was not,
however, the original form, the 2nd case being dies, as
may be seen from the expression “wat dies meer zij”
(what there be more of it), for “et cetera”.

2.—There are other old forms of the second case
singular of die, in the Masculine and Feminine, viz,
des and der, which are now principally found in com-
pound words: een deskundige, a person knowing about
it (an expert); desgelijks, likewise; deswege, on account of; desniettemin, yet; desniettegenstaande, notwithstanding; desverkiezende, so electing (choosing); derhalve, therefore; dergelijke, such.

3.—Both of these forms (des and der) may occur as separate words: Wij zijn des gewis, we are certain of it; Hoeveel van uw kinderen heeft u verloren? Wij hebben er (der) reeds vier verloren, How many of your children have you lost? We have already lost four (of them). This er (uneducated people will make it der) stands for a Noun understood after a Numeral Adjective.

Note.—On the use of er:

Er (Pronoun) takes the place of the logical subject in sentences which have an Intransitive Verb, thereby rendering such sentences more fluent: Er gebeurde heel wat die avond, many things happened that evening.

It occurs before numerals, when the Noun by which they should be followed is understood: Heeft u veel boeken? Ik heb er tien. Have you many books? I have ten (books).

Observation.—In South African Dutch the first er is replaced by daar, and the second omitted: Daar gebeurt veel, much happens; Heb jij veel ossen? Ik heb twintig, Have you many oxen? I have twenty. Both errors are due to the influence of English on the local Dutch.

As an Adverb of place, it is the translation of Eng. “there”: Is u in de kerk geweest? Ja ik ben er geweest. Have you been in church? Yes, I have been there. When emphasis is necessary, this “there” is translated by daar, as is also invariably done in the South African Dutch.

Er is used in the Verb “er uitzien”, to look, and expressions like the following:

Er is mij gezegd, I have been told;
Er wordt geschoten, there is shooting going on;
Er wordt daar goed gewerkt, there is some good work done there.

4.—The second case of deze occurs in two expressions: schrijver dezes, the author (of this); brenger dezes, the bearer (of this).

5.—The old Dative case of die and deze, Neuter gender (i.e. of dat and dit) is found before many het-words governed by those Prepositions which in old Dutch
required the Dative; *te dien opzichte*, in that respect; *van dezen huize*, of this family; *te dien einde*, to that end (for that reason); *uit dien hoofde*, on that account.

6.—The Dative case of *die* and *deze*, Feminine gender, is found in: *te dier* (*dezer*) *uic*, at that (this) time; *in dier rocge*, after that fashion.

7.—Whenever the Demonstrative Pronouns and the Personal Pronouns of the 3rd person, used as such, are not immediately followed by their Nouns, but separated from them by one of the Copulative Verbs (*zijn*, *worden*, *heten*, *blijven*, *schijncn*, *lijken*, *blijken*), they take the form required by a *het*-word, no matter whether the Noun pointed out by them is a *het*-word or a *de*-word; e.g. That was a pleasant meeting, *dat* (not *die*) *was een aangename vergadering*; This is my own father, *dit* (not *die*) *is mijn eigen vader*; These were hard words, *dit* (not *die*) *waren harde woorden*; They are rotten trees, *het zijn verrotte bomen*.  

This rule applies equally in the inverted construction: Are these all the books, *zijn dit* (not *deze*) *al de boeken*?

X. Relative Pronouns *Betrekkelijke Voornaamwoorden*.—Adjective sentences which define or extend the meaning of Nouns or Pronouns, are introduced by Pronouns, which, as they refer to a Noun or Pronoun already mentioned in the principal sentence, are called Relative Pronouns.

They are: *die*, *dat*, *wie*, *wat*, *welke*, *hetwelk*, and *hetgeen*.

Observations.

1.—Touching the declension of the Relative Pronouns, it must be remarked that none of them have their forms of declension complete, but that one helps to complete the cases of the other. The following is the declension:


**THE PRONOUN**

---

### ENKELVOND.

#### Mannelijk.

1. *nr.* die, welke,
2. *nr.* wiens,
3. *nr.* aan wie, aan welke,
4. *nr.* die (wij), welke.

#### Vrouwelijk.

*die, welke.*

*wiens, welker.*

*(aan) wie, aan welke.*

*die (wij), welke.*

### MEERVOLD.

#### Onzijdig.

1. *nr.* dat, wat, hetwelk.
2. *nr.* — waarvan, welks.
4. *nr.* dat, wat, hetwelk.

*die, welke.*

*wier, welker.*

*(aan) wie, welke.*

*die (wij), welke.*

---

2.—*Die* and *welke* (Neuter, *dat* and *hetwelk*) are used indiscriminately for persons and things, though *die (dat)* is most commonly used.

*Wie* is used to make up the missing cases of *die*; also after Prepositions.

*Wie* likewise translates "he who".

*Wat* is used as a relative after *alles* and *al*, and in compounds with Prepositions.

*Wat* also translates "what" (that which); "what" may, however, likewise be rendered by *hetgeen*.

The specific use of *hetgeen* (which is not declined) is to translate the Relative Pronoun "which", referring back to a sentence, and not to a Noun.

Notice the following examples:

1. *Hij, die dat gedaan heeft, is een kwade jongen,* he who has done this thing, is a bad boy.
2. *De bomen, welke in dat bos groeien, zijn alle hoog,* the trees which grow in that forest, are all high.
3. *De man, wiens vrouw onlangs overleden is,* the man whose wife died a short while ago.—This sentence may also read: *De man, van wie de, enz.*
4. *Elk dier, welks hoeven gespleten zijn, herkauwt,* every animal whose hoofs are divided, ruminates.—This sentence may be expressed: *Elk dier, de hoeven waarran, enz.*
5. Dat is een vrouw, wie schoonheid overal geprezen wordt, she is a woman whose beauty is praised universally.

6. Toon mij de man, wie zij die belediging hebben aangedaan, show me the man, whom they have insulted in that manner.

7. Mijn jongste zuster is het, aan wie ik, dat geschenk gegeven heb, it is my youngest sister, to whom I have given that present.

8. Breng mij naar het plekje, waaraan zooveel herinneringen verbonden zijn, take me to the spot, to which so many memories clinging.

9. Hier is de jongen, naar wie u gevraagd heeft, here is the boy for whom you have enquired.

10. Zij is een vrouw, die men vertrouwen kan, she is a woman whom one can trust.

11. Was het een oud schaap, dat (hetwelk) de slager vandaag geslacht heeft? was it an old sheep the butcher killed to-day?

12. Wie stelt, is een dief, he who steals is a thief.

13. Dit is alles (or al) wat ik te zeggen heb, this is all I have to say.

14. Denk aan de zaak, waarvan ik gesproken heb, think of the matter I spoke of.

15. U moest niet aarzelen te zeggen wat (hetgeen) waar is, you should not hesitate to say what (that which) is true.

16. Zij zijn niet gekomen; hetgeen betekent dat zij ziek zijn, they have not come, which means that they must be ill.

3.—Relative Pronouns must be used, whether expressed or not in English:—This is the man he spoke of, dit is de man van wie hij sprak; There stands the house I want, daar staat het huis, dat ik hebben wil.

4.—The Relative Pronoun must agree with its antecedent both in number and gender (not in case). In number it always does agree, but with regard to gender, the Pronoun follows the natural and not the grammatical gender, when the genitive case is used: Mijn arm nichtje, wie (not welks) arm gebroken is, my poor little niece whose arm is broken.
GRAMMAR EXERCISES.—Taaloeefeningen.

1.

In the following sentences substitute Pronouns of the third person for those of the first.

Toen ik jong was, nam mijn vader mij dikwels mede, als hij uit rijden ging. In het gras onder het raam van mijn kamer heb ik deze steen gevonden. Waarom heb ik niet naar de raad van mijn ouders geluisterd? Had ik het gedaan, dan bevond ik mij nu niet in deze moeilijkheid. Ik kan mij niet herinneren, dat ik deze man ooit gezien heb. Ik ben mij niet bewust, deze uitdrukking gebruikt te hebben. Ik maak mij zeer bekommerd over de toestand van mijn vader. Ik heb mijn bezigheid verkocht, en wil mijn laatste dagen nu stil op mijn landgoed gaan doorbrengen. Ik ben van morgen mijn plaats rondgereden om te zien, of mijn veewachters mijn bevel nagekomen zijn. Mijn vader antwoordde mij, dat ik mij niet verbeelden moest, dat ik mijzelf rechtvaardigen kon. Ik ben ervan overtuigd, dat mijn vriend zich mijner ontfermen zal, als ik mij in mijn nood tot hem wend.

2.

In the above change the Pronouns of the first person singular into (1) the first person plural, and (2) the third person plural.

3.

Fill up the blanks in the following exercise:

Are these all the pears, which you bought have? With whom spoke you just now? With the same gentleman,
over — wij — morgen spraken. — die about whom we this morning were speaking. Those who
— werk af hebben, kunnen heen gaan. Waar their work finished have, can away go. Where
woont — vrouw, — kind gisteren gestorven is? lives the woman, whose child yesterday died (has)?
Er gaat — lijst rond voor — man, — There goes a subscription-list round for the man, whose
louis afgebrand is. Onthoud al — ik — gezegd house burnt down is. Remember all that I you told
heb. Zijn — — kinderen — er vroeger zo have. Are those the same children that formerly so
gezond uitzagen? De knecht heeft — paard — healthy looked? The servant has the horse whose
hoezijzer los is, naar — hoevemid gebracht. Zover ik shoe loose is, to the farrier taken. As far as I
— herinneren kan, gebeurde er — avond myself remember can, happened there that evening
niets biezonder—. Weet — nog — — — geld nothing particular. Know you still whom you the money
gegeven hebt? De dame met — ik van avond zat given have? The lady with whom I this evening sat
to praten, is — dochter van — oud vriend — —. Weet talking, is the daughter of an old friend of mine. Know
— — linnen gemaakt wordt? Ja, — onderwijzer you of what linen made is? Yes, my teacher
heeft — — verteld. — is een — — boeren, — has it me told. This is one of the farmers, whose
landerijen door — overstroming verwoest zijn. lands by the flood devastated have been.
— jonge man behoort tot — — onwillekeurig ver-
This young man belongs to those who involuntarily con-
trouwen inboezemen.
tidence inspire.
Bij — lezing gaf — gehoor door luid applaudiseren. — tevredenheid te kennen. — twee honden hebben zo their satisfaction to know. Your two dogs have so met — gevochten, dat — bloed — langs — with each other fought, that the blood (to) them along the kop liep. — buur— doen niets ander— dan head ran. My neighbours do nothing else but — goede naam belasteren. Ik heb — jongen gezegd one another’s reputation run down. I have the boy told — te gaan wassen. — honden zijn — — himself to go (and) wash. What dogs are they about — u spreekt? — zijn — — wij van which you speak? They are the same that we this morgen gezien hebben. — en — vader kunt morgen morning seen have. You and your father can to-morrow — geld komen halen. — van de meisjes hebben your money come (and) fetch. Which of the girls have — les— gekend? Ik heb van — — — their lessons known? I have from one and another gehoord, dat er veel goed— van — nieuw-- ministerie heard, that much good of the new ministry te verwachten is. — — zal gedaan moeten to (be) expected is. Something or other will have to be worden voor — arme vrouw — — omgekomen is done for this poor woman whose husband killed has been bij — spoorweg ongeluk, — gisteren bericht in the railway accident of which yesterday news ontvangen is. — zaak— moesten in — raad received has been. Such cases should in the council liever met gesloten deuren behandeld worden. — rather with closed doors discussed be. The beid— ouders zijn dood. parents of both of them are dead.
Translate into English (no reference to vocabulary).

Hij heeft mij het een en ander gezegd.
Hij heeft mij een en ander laten zien.
U zal wel (you are sure to) de een of ander vinden.
Zal u niet het een of ander gebruiken (take)?
De een of de ander moet vertrekken.
Het een of het ander moet waar zijn.
Deze en gene heeft mij opgezocht (come to see ...).
Deze of gene zal zich wel over het kind ontfermen (to have pity on).
Er wordt in dit land veel gerookt (roken = to smoke).
Men vermoedt (vermoeden = to suppose), dat de man gek (insane) is.
Deze koeien zien er beter uit dan de mijne.
Dergelijke zaken komen altijd aan het licht (to light).
Waaraan dacht u, toen ik u stoorde (disturbed)?
Een deskundige zou nooit zulk een raad gegeven hebben.
De beide meisjes zijn met haar goevernante (governess) gaan wandelen.
Welke weg ik ook insloeg (turned into), ik kon geen uitweg (way out) vinden.
Al wat mijn vriend onderneemt (undertakes), gelukt hem (he is successful in).

TRANSLATION EXERCISE No. 8.

1.

This young girl has her hat full [of] fresh roses. Those that have told you so (dit) have misled you. These are the books which I returned to you last night. Which of the two sisters is to sing (zal ...) tonight? What kind of flower is this? It is a flower that grows wild (in het veld) in the Tulbagh (Tulbagse) district, but of which
I do not know the name. That must be the same gentleman I met at my uncle's this (van) morning. (About) what where these ladies talking (about)? They were talking about what had been discussed at the meeting. These men are always sober at their work, it is (zijn) such that never lack employment (zonder werk zijn). These pears are the same (which) I have had at Mrs. Johnson's (bij Mevrouw J.). We met an old friend of ours yesterday, and asked him to have dinner with us (bij ons te komen dineren) this (van) evening: Some one or other must have used my scissors. Either the one or the other must go. Please give bearer the parcel I left at your house (bij u). Your father and yourself have both been mistaken. If you will call this evening, I shall tell you some things that will interest you.

2.

Being afraid to be late (te laat) for breakfast, I dressed myself in a quarter of an hour this morning. Not having a nurse, my little nieces are accustomed to dressing themselves. Being ashamed of his dirty hands, the boy would not come in. It is said that (er) a railway accident (has) occurred in the Hex River Pass early this morning. Any one hearing (hears) my case will say that I am right (gelijk heb). Whoever comes this way (hierheen), must beware of the dogs; they are very fierce [ones]. Whatever you do, you will never get (er toe krijgen) that child to apologise (exkuus te vragen). As long as one is not faultless oneself, one should (moest) not find fault with one's neighbour. How many fowls have you? I have twenty-five, and some of them are very good [ones]. There was a good deal of heavy betting at the races yesterday. My vines look so sickly, that I shall have to (moeten) consult an expert about them. I myself told the man, that unless he applied himself (zich aanpakken) better, I would dismiss him.
May, when implying permission, is translated by *mogen*; when implying possibility, it is translated by *mogen* and *kunnen*, or the colloquial phrase *het kan zijn dat* . . . :

He may come yet, *hij mag (or kan) nog komen*; or, *het kan zijn dat hij nog komt*.

*Might*, when implying permission, is translated by *mocht*; when implying possibility, it is translated by *zou kunnen*, or *het zou kunnen zijn dat* . . . :

They might see you from there, *zij zouden u van daar kunnen zien*; or, *het zou kunnen zijn, dat zij u van daar zagen*.

*Might have*, followed by a Past Participle, is translated by *zou hebben* (or *had*) *kunnen*:

He might have done the work, *hij zou het werk hebben kunnen doen*; or, *hij had het werk kunnen doen*.

1. *Should* is translated by *zou*, if futurity is implied.


3. *Should* . . . *behoorde* or *moest*, if equivalent to *ought to*.

4. *Should* . . . *mocht* to bring out the idea of probability.

1. I told him that I should go into town, *ik zei hem, dat ik naar de stad zou gaan*.

2. I should go to see her, if she were at home, *ik zou haar gaan zien, als zij thuis was*.

3. You should have learned your lessons, *u had uw lessen moeten (behoren te) leren*.

4. If you should meet the man, tell him, etc., *als u de man ontmoeten mocht, zeg hem, enz*.

May I go out when my work is finished? I cannot give you permission, you should have asked your father before he went out. The boy might finish his lessons in time, if he would only come in (binnen) earlier. My uncle told me this morning that I might buy that fine dog. That accident might have been prevented, if the driver had been more careful. I may have seen that man before, but I do not recollect his face. If there were a doctor at hand, the child’s life might be saved. I was always
of opinion that they might have shown that young man some kindness. These plants should be planted before the sun gets hot. Should you see my brother when he comes home, tell him, we may (permission) go to the concert this evening. You might have saved yourself all this trouble, if you had heeded your uncle's warnings. We should not have left our friend alone, if we had known he was in trouble. My aunt felt sure (was er zeker van), that I should not like those people (would not please me); she may have been right, at all events I am glad she told me I should not accept the situation. You should have taken better care of the little girl; could you not see that she was ill? If Mr. B. should call while I am gone, ask him to wait till my return (I return); I shall not be long (be = uitblijven). These children should be (do) more careful [about] their work; every one of these words might have been translated correctly, if they had turned to the vocabulary (if they had looked them up in, etc.).

4.

Will and would are frequently used in English by way of idiom. In sentences as "Boys will do mischief", and "The bird would come and eat from her hand", the forms "will" and "would" express neither futurity, nor determination. When thus used, they are not translated, but an Adverb is joined to the principal Verbs to express the idiom. "Boys will do mischief" becomes "Boys always do mischief", jongens doen (maar) altijd kattekwaad; and "The bird would come and eat from her hand", de vogel kwam dikwels uit haar hand eten.

A little girl had a bird that she kept locked up (opgesloten hield) in a cage. Now and then, however, she would let it out. It would then fly about, and would sit on her shoulder. How is (komt) it, that this child will always take so much? The boy would say, Basket, Tiny (naar de mand, Tiny); and then the little lap-dog would steal away to her basket (with the) tail between her
legs. This horse will always put his nose into one’s (iemand’s) face, if one (men) goes near him. You may (kan) do what you like, these children will always boast.

**Will and would**, expressing “wish”, are translated by the Verb *wollen, wilde, gewild*.

Will you help me, Charles? Yes, certainly. He wanted to (would) say something, but he could (kon) not get it out. Will you come (meekomen) with me? This way (kant), please. The boy said (that) he would not do it. Did he say that he would not (geen) have [any] milk in his coffee? He said (that) he wanted (would) no sugar (have). Does he not want to (will) answer you, or can (kan) he not answer you? The girl said positively that she did not want to (would not) come. And what did you answer? I said “Very well (heel goed), if you do not want to (will not) come, you may (can) stay away.”

**Will and would**, expressing futurity or determination, are translated by the future tenses (Ind. and Subj.) of the Verb (See Conjugation).

He won’t go, unless you speak to (met) him. The girl would have read it, if her eyes had been good. Will he meet you at the office? He would meet me, if he knew that I would be there. I shan’t take the medicine, said the naughty boy.

The conjunction *if*, when equivalent to *whether*, is translated by *of*, and not by *indien* or *als*.

Tell me, if you will write. He asked if his father would come. He doubted (het) whether it would not be in vain. If you have the courage for it (er . . . toe), it is still the question if you have the required ability. If a man should come (came) with a revolver in his hand, would you open the door to (voor) him?
As if is rendered by als of, or sometimes of.

He looked as if he were hungry (had hunger). He spoke to me, as if he were (was) my master. The lion licked Androcles’ hands, as if to thank him (as if he would thank him). The robber did as if he wanted to kill me. If you want the doctor to cure (that the doctor cures) you, you must not speak as if you were quite well. The boy knelt down as if he were going to (would go) pray. The sun rose (kwam op) with such splendour, as if there had never been a storm. If the boy had not thrown (gegooid) the stone with so much force, as if he wanted to kill the pig, I should ask his father, if he would not forgive him this time.

6.

The Verb “to know” is translated by weten and kennen. Weten implies being aware of a fact. Kennen implies acquaintance with, or knowledge as the result of learning.

Examples: I know when he came, ik wist wanneer hij kwam.
He did not know that I was ill, hij wist niet, dat ik zieken was.
Do you know that man? Ken je die man?
I know my tables by heart, ik ken mijn tafels van buiten.

Whither I go, you know, and the way you know. We do not even know the man; how should we know his whereabouts (where he lives)? It is a thing (iets) (that) we all know, that winter is the cold, and summer the hot time of the year. When do you think you will know the result[s] of your examination? We shall know them in a fortnight, I believe. There is a difference between knowing (te kennen) the road, and knowing something about (van) the road. Have you learned your poetry, Charles? Yes, Sir, but I cannot say that I know it. How long will it be before you know French, John? Oh, father, a long time yet. My teacher says I am beginning to know something about it, but that is not knowing it. Did your sister know that you were here? Whether you have heard it or not, you must know it. The soldiers knew that the
enemy was behind the hill. Know yourself, I said to someone; but he could (kon) not, for he was nobody. To know oneself (zich) leads to great humility. If I had only (maar) known that you had done the work, I should (it) have let (laten) him know. I knew yesterday that he would not live. The last fortnight the boy has known all his lessons.

7.

Used to followed by an Infinitive Verb, is either translated by "was (were) accustomed to", or by the Past Tense of the following Verb, strengthened by an Adverb of time.

Example: The boy used to sit there, de jongen was gewoon 'daar te zitten'; or, de jongen zat gewoonlik, or altijd, or dikwijls daar.

The man always used to say that he was very poor. He used to round to (bij) his friends, and tell them of his misery. We used to see him often, but he does not visit us any (in het geheel niet) more now. The old man used to tell me about his daughter, when I took (deed) a walk with him. When we were in Paris, we used to go to a concert nearly every night. If the boy were used to speaking the truth, he would not have said this. Why not? Because this is decidedly a falsehood. And he knew that!

To be used to is translated by gewoon zijn aan.

I am used to his bad temper. She is used to being ill (aan ziek zijn). Are you used to that kind of treatment? I have been used to hard words all my (my whole) life. The donkey is used to drawing (het trekken van) that heavy load. Poor beast! and to beating (slaan) too.

Seventh Rule of Construction.—Among the extensions of the predicate, that of time takes the first place: as, I saw him with his sister in church yesterday, ik zag hem gisteren met zijn zuster in de kerk.

When you were in London yesterday you (have) missed Mr. Bran, did you not (niet waar)? Yes, I missed him,
that is to (wil) say, I did not wait for him. I should have (had . . . moeten) seen him at (aan) his house last night, but I was afraid to go out in the cold so late. I received a letter from my father yesterday. Where is he now? He was in Paris two days ago, and must now be at Lyons according to (naar) what he writes. Has there been any (nog een) great war in Europe since the year eighteen hundred and seventy? No, there have been rumours of war many times, but it has never come to an open breach of the peace. He was (is) born at Baarn, a village in the province [of] Utrecht, Holland, on the sixth of March, eighteen hundred and fifty one. At Smithfield in the Orange River Colony a rumbling noise underground frightened some of the inhabitants yesterday. There was (has been) an explosion in the mine last week, whereby twenty-six workmen lost their lives (het leven). It is not so easy to be faithful to one’s (zijn) duty, whatever (wat ook) happens, and at all times (te allen tijde).

**KONVERSATIE.**

Reizen op het Land en per Spoortrein.

1. Waar gaat u heen?
2. Ik ben op reis naar Londen, Brussel en Venetië.
3. Wanneer vertrekt uw zuster?
4. Zij vertrekt de volgende week naar Europa.
5. Op welke wijze reist zij?
6. Per trein van Port-Elizabeth naar Kaapstad, en van daar per boot.
7. Mijn vriend heeft per diligence gered.
8. Hij heeft plan te paard terug te komen.
9. Welke weg heeft hij genomen?
10. Na het tolhek te zijn doorgegaan, is hij rechts afgedraaid, en heeft de grote weg naar Beaufort genomen.

**CONVERSATION.**

Travelling by Land and Rail.

1. Where are you going?
2. I am on my way to London, Brussels, and Venice.
3. When does your sister leave?
4. She departs for Europe next week.
5. How does she travel?
6. By rail from Port-Elizabeth to Cape Town, and from there by steamer.
7. My friend has travelled by coach.
8. He intends returning on horse-back.
9. Which road did he take?
10. After passing the toll-gate, he turned to the right, and took the high-road to Beaufort.
11. Dat was een hele omweg.
12. Welke weg zal u nemen?
13. Ik zal de eerste weg aan de linkerhand nemen.
14. Hoe ver is het naar het spoorwegstation?
15. Een kwartier per trem.
16. Ik zal een rijtuig nemen.
17. Waar is uw bagage (goed)?
18. Ik heb het grootste deel ervan in het goederenregister ge- laten.
19. Mijn handkoffertje is in de wagen.
20. Zal ik de ambtsgrener vrager uw zware bagage per goederentrein te laten zenden?
21. Neen, zie er naar, dat het in de goederenwagen komt, als 't u belieft.
22. Roep toch even een rijtuig, als 't u belieft.
23. Wat kost het van hier naar Woodstock?
24. Een halve kroon de enkele rit.
25. Houdt deze trein op bij alle tussenliggende stations?
26. Neen, het is de sneltrein van Londen naar Edinburgh; hij houdt alleen bij de voornaamste stations op.
27. Houdt u van reizen per trein?
28. Ik verkiez het boven diligence, kar of ossewagen.
29. Heeft u uw kaartje?
30. Neen, ik wil er nu om gaan.
32. De trein vertrekt om vier uur.
33. Geef mij retoer tweede klasse naar Wellington.
34. Dat is een speciale trein.

That was a very round-about way.
Which road will you take?
I shall take the first road to the left.
How far is it to the railway-station?
A quarter of an hour by tram.
I shall take a cab.
Where is your luggage?
I left most of it in the cloakroom.

My small portmanteau is in the carriage.
Shall I ask the official to have your heavy luggage sent on by goods-train?
No, see it put in the van, please.

Just hail a cab, please.

What is the fare from here to Woodstock?
Single fare half-a-crown.
Does this train stop at all intermediate stations?
No, this is the express from London to Edinburgh; it only stops at the principal stations.

Do you like travelling by rail?
I prefer it to coach, cart, or bullock waggon.

Have you your ticket?
No, I'll go and get it now.
Give me one first-class single fare to Victoria West.

The train starts at four o'clock.
Give me a return second-class to Wellington.
That is a special train.
CHAPTER IX.

THE VERB.
(Het Werkwoord).

I. Definition.—An action may be expressed in two different ways: 1. By a real Verb; 2. By a Verbal Noun.

Examples:—

1. I saw the enemy besiege the city, ik zag de vijand de stad belegeren.

2. I read about the siege of the city, ik las over het beleg (de belegering, het belegeren) van de stad. The Verbal Noun belegeren having the same form as the Infinitive Present of the Verb belegeren, the necessity arises of marking how the action is expressed, before a correct translation can be given.

II. Stem:—The Infinitive form of Dutch verbs ends in en except in six cases, where the ending is n. These six are the irregular monosyllabic Verbs: doen, gaan, slaan, staan, zien, and zijn.

The stem of the Verb is found by removing the ending en. To determine the stem is a matter of importance, as will be seen from the conjugation-form in paragraph III, A. Often the stem, so found, is different from
what may be termed the working-stem, the latter receiving
its shape (spelling) from pronunciation. To determine
this spelling, the following rules should be observed:

1. Of the monosyllabic Verbs mentioned above, the
   stems are respectively doe, ga, sla, sta, zie, and zij (or
   wees).

2. If the ending en is preceded by a single consonant,
   which again is preceded by a single vowel, this vowel is
doubled so as to preserve its full sound: huren, stem
   huur, to hire; leren, stem leer, to learn.

3. If the ending en is preceded by a double consonant,
   the stem takes a single consonant: straffen, stem straf,
   to punish.

4. If the ending en is preceded by v or z, the stem
takes f or s: leven, stem leef, to live; vrezen, stem vrees,
to fear.

Note.—This f of the stem changes back into the v of the Infinitive
form, and likewise s into z, whenever the stem takes one of
the endings e, et, or en in the course of the conjugation, in
which cases also the double vowel assumed under Rule 2,
is changed back into the single one of the Infinitive.

III. A. Conjugation, Weak and Strong: Two different
Conjugations are distinguished:

(a) The Weak Conjugation, marked by—

1. Unchanged vowel-sound throughout; e.g.: baden,
   baadde, gebaad.

2. Formation of the Past Tense by adding to the stem
ten, when the last letter of such a stem is one of the
sharp consonants t, k, f, s, ch, and p (all of which
are found in the compound, 't kofschip), and de
in all other cases; e.g.: hakken, hakte; schoppen,
schopte; halen, haalde; gunnen, gunde.
3. Formation of the Past Participle by prefixing *ge* to the stem, and adding *t*, or *d* to it according to the particulars of No. 2, e.g.: gehakt, geschopt, gehaald, gegund.

(b) The Strong Conjugation, marked by—

1. Change of vowel-sound in Past Tense, or sometimes there and in Past Participle;

2. Formation of Past Participle by prefixing *ge* to the stem (original or modified), and adding *en*.

The full list of Strong Verbs is given on page 252.

Note.—In (a) 2 and 3, the letters *f* and *s* of the stems, which are *v* and *z* in the Infinitive forms, are followed by *de* and *d*, and not by *te* and *t*.

III, B.—A Complete Form of Conjugation, *Vorm van Vervoeging*:

**Indicative Mood.**

(Aantonende Wijs).

**Subjunctive Mood.**

(Aanvoegende Wijs).

**Present Tense.—Onvolmaakt Tegenwoordige Tijd.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>1 p. stem.</th>
<th>1 p. (inf. less final <em>n</em>).</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>— <em>t</em>.</td>
<td>2 „ (*„ „ „ *) <em>t</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>— <em>t</em>.</td>
<td>3 „ (*„ „ „ *)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>— <em>en</em>.</td>
<td>1 „ (full Inf. form).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>— <em>t</em>.</td>
<td>2 „ (like 2nd pers. sing.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>— <em>en</em>.</td>
<td>3 „ (like 1st pers. plur.).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Observation.—The 3rd Pers. Sing. Pres. Tense ends in *t* in every Verb, the ending being *dt* when the Verb-stem ends in *d*.

The forms here given for the 2nd Pers. are for *jij*, Sing. and *gij*, Plur.

**Perfect Tense.—Volmaakt Tegenwoordige Tijd.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>1 p. <em>hebb</em> or <em>ben</em></th>
<th>1 p. <em>hebb</em> or <em>zij</em></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>„ <em>hebt</em> „ <em>zijt</em></td>
<td>2 „ <em>hebbet</em> „ <em>zijt</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>„ <em>heeft</em> „ <em>is</em></td>
<td>3 „ <em>hebbet</em> „ <em>zij</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 „ <em>hebben</em> „ <em>zijn</em></td>
<td>1 „ <em>hebben</em> „ <em>zijn</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>„ <em>hebt</em> „ <em>zijt</em></td>
<td>2 „ <em>hebbet</em> „ <em>zijt</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>„ <em>hebben</em> „ <em>zijn</em></td>
<td>3 „ <em>hebben</em> „ <em>zijn</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Past Tense.—Onvolmaakt Verleden Tijd.

[For Weak Verbs.]

1 p. stem with te or de. 1 p. stem with te or de.
1 " " " " t. or det. 2 " " " " t. or det.
3 " " " " te or de. 3 " " " " te or de.
1 " " " " ten or den. 1 " " " " ten or den.
2 " " " " t. or det. 2 " " " " t. or det.
3 " " " " ten or den. 3 " " " " ten or den.

[For Strong Verbs.]

1 p. modified stem. 1 p. modified stem e.
2 " " " t. 2 " " " et.
3 " " " e. 3 " " " e.
1 " " " en. 1 " " " en.
2 " " " t. 2 " " " et.
3 " " " en. 3 " " " en.

Observation.—The 3rd Pers. Sing. Past Tense does not end in a t.

Pluperfect Tense.—Volmaakt Verleden Tijd.

1 p. had or was 1 p. hadde or ware
2 " hadt " waart 2 " haddet " waret
3 " had " was 3 " hadde " ware
1 " hadden " waren 1 " hadden " waren
2 " hadt " waart 2 " haddet " waret
3 " hadden " waren 3 " hadden " waren

Future Tense.—Onvolmaakt Toekomende Tijd.

1 p. zal with Infinitive Pres. 1 p. zou with Infinitive Pres.
2 " zult " " " " 2 " zoudt " " " "
3 " zal " " " " 3 " zou " " " "
1 " zullen " " " " 1 " zouden " " " "
2 " zult " " " " 2 " zoudt " " " "
3 " zullen " " " " 3 " zouden " " " "

Future Perfect Tense.—Volmaakt Toekomende Tijd.

1 p. zal hebben or zijn. 1 p. zou hebben or zijn.
2 " zult " " " " 2 " zoudt " " " "
3 " zal " " " " 3 " zou " " " "
1 " zullen " " " " 1 " zouden " " " "
2 " zult " " " " 2 " zoudt " " " "
3 " zullen " " " " 3 " zouden " " " "

THE STANDARD DUTCH GRAMMAR
Imperative Mood.—*Gebiedende Wijs.*

Singular (Enkelvoud)—stem. | Plural (Mevervoud) — stem with *t.*
---|---

Infinitive Mood.—*Onbepaalde Wijs.*

Present. | Perfect.
Name of the Verb. | Past Participle with *hebben* or *zijn.*

Future. | Future Perfect.
*(Te) zullen* with Infinitive Present. | *(Te) zullen* with Participle and *hebben* or *zijn.*

Participles.—*Deelwoorden.*

Present (*Tegenwoordig*). Infinitive form with ending *de* or *d.*
Past (*Verleden*).

For Weak Verbs—prefix *ge*, stem, and ending *t* or *d.*
For Strong Verbs—prefix *ge*, stem, and ending *en.*

IV. Auxiliaries.—All verbs require the aid of Auxiliary Verbs to complete their conjugation.

Auxiliaries (*Hulpwerkwoorden*) are of three different kinds:

1. Of Tense: *hebben*, to have, *zijn*, to be, *zullen*, shall or will.

2. Of Voice: *worden*, to become, used for Eng. “to be” as auxiliary of the Passive Voice.

3. Of Mood: *kunnen*, can; *moeten*, must; *laten*, let; *mogen*, may; *willen*, to be willing to; *durven*, to dare to.

In Dutch a Verb is conjugated with *zijn*, to be:

1. To indicate a state or condition: The wound is cured, *de wond is genezen.*
2. When Intransitive, and indicating change of place or condition, such as: *groeien*, to grow; *sterven*, to die; *veranderen*, to change; *smelten*, to melt; *gaan*, to go; *komen*, to come; *vertrekken*, to depart; *aankomen*, to arrive; *verschijnen*, to appear; *ontvluchten*, to escape.

*Het kind is gevallen*, the child has fallen; *hij is gestorven*, he has died.

3. The following Verbs take *zijn*: *zijn*, to be; *blijven*, to remain; *worden*, to become; *ontstaan*, to originate; *gebeuren* and *geschieden*, to happen; *voorvallen*, to take place; *beginnen*, to commence; *voorkomen*, to occur; *geraken*, to get into.

Note on (2).—When no actual change of place is indicated, the Intrans. Verbs take *hebben*. Compare the following:

*Ik ben in de kamer rondgelopen*, I have walked about in (change of place).

*Ik heb in de kamer rondgelopen*, I have walked about in the room (motion confined to the space of a room—no actual change).

Note on (3).—It is worthy of note that the Verbs *bestaan*, to exist, *plaats hebben*, to take place, and *plaats vinden*, to take place, are conjugated with *hebben*.

V. Complete Conjugation of the Auxiliary Verb of Tense, *hebben*, to have.

**Indicative Mood.**

*(Aantonende Wijs).*

**Subjunctive Mood.**

*(Aanvoegende Wijs).*

**Present Tense.—Onvolmaakt Tegenwoordige Tijd.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Indicative Mood</th>
<th>Subjunctive Mood</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ik heb, I have.</td>
<td>ik heb, if I have.</td>
<td>gj (jij, je) heb, thou hast.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gij (jij, je) hebt, thou hast.</td>
<td>gj (jij, je) heb, if thou have.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hij (u) heeft, he has.</td>
<td>hij (u) heb, if he have.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wij hebben, we have.</td>
<td>wij hebben, if we have.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gij hebt (jullie hebben), you have.</td>
<td>gij heb, if you have.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zij hebben, they have.</td>
<td>zij hebben, if they have.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Perfect Tense.—Volmaakt Tegenwoord. Tijd.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Indicative Mood</th>
<th>Subjunctive Mood</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ik heb gehad, I have had, etc.</td>
<td>ik heb, if I have had, etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gij (jij, je) heb, if I have had, etc.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Past Tense.—Onvolmaakt Verleden Tijd.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Past Tense</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Past Tense</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ik</td>
<td>had</td>
<td>ik</td>
<td>had</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gij (ji, je)</td>
<td>hadt, thou hadst.</td>
<td>gij (ji, je)</td>
<td>hadt, if I had.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hij (u)</td>
<td>had, he had.</td>
<td>hij (u)</td>
<td>had, if he had.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wij</td>
<td>hadden, we had.</td>
<td>wij</td>
<td>hadden, if we had.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gij hadt</td>
<td>(jullie hadden), you had.</td>
<td>gij haddet</td>
<td>(jullie hadden), if thou had.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zij hadden</td>
<td>they had.</td>
<td>zij hadden</td>
<td>if they had.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Pluperfect Tense.—Volmaakt Verleden Tijd.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Pluperfect Tense</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Pluperfect Tense</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ik</td>
<td>had gehad, I had had.</td>
<td>ik hadde gehad, if I had had, etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gij (ji, je)</td>
<td>haddet, thou hadst.</td>
<td>gij (ji, je)</td>
<td>hadt, if thou had.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hij (u)</td>
<td>hadde, if he had.</td>
<td>hij (u)</td>
<td>hadde, if he had.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wij</td>
<td>hadden, we had.</td>
<td>wij</td>
<td>hadden, if we had.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gij haddet</td>
<td>(jullie hadden), if thou had.</td>
<td>gij haddet</td>
<td>(jullie hadden), if thou had.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zij hadden</td>
<td>if they had.</td>
<td>zij hadden</td>
<td>if they had.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Future Tense.—Onvolmaakt Toekomende Tijd.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Future Tense</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Future Tense</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ik</td>
<td>zal hebben, I shall have.</td>
<td>ik zou hebben, I should have.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gij (ji, je)</td>
<td>zult hebben, thou wilt have.</td>
<td>gij (ji, je)</td>
<td>zoudt hebben, thou wouldst have.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hij (u)</td>
<td>zal hebben, he will have.</td>
<td>hij (u)</td>
<td>zou hebben, he would have.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wij</td>
<td>zullen hebben, we shall have.</td>
<td>wij zouden hebben, we should have.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gij zult</td>
<td>(jullie zullen) hebben, you will have.</td>
<td>gij zoudt</td>
<td>(jullie zouden) hebben, you would have.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zij</td>
<td>zullen hebben, they will have.</td>
<td>zij zouden hebben, they would have.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Future Perfect Tense.—Volmaakt Toekomende Tijd.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Future Perfect Tense</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Future Perfect Tense</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ik</td>
<td>zal gehad hebben, I shall have had, etc.</td>
<td>ik zou gehad hebben, I should have had, etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gij (ji, je)</td>
<td>zult gehad hebben, thou wilt have had.</td>
<td>gij (ji, je)</td>
<td>zoudt gehad hebben, thou wouldst have had.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hij (u)</td>
<td>zal gehad hebben, he will have had.</td>
<td>hij (u)</td>
<td>zou hebben, he would have had.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wij</td>
<td>zullen gehad hebben, we shall have had.</td>
<td>wij zouden hebben, we should have had.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gij zult</td>
<td>(jullie zullen) hebben, you will have had.</td>
<td>gij zoudt</td>
<td>(jullie zouden) hebben, you would have had.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zij</td>
<td>zullen gehad hebben, they will have had.</td>
<td>zij zouden hebben, they would have had.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Imperative Mood.—Gebiedende Wijs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>Imperative Mood</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Singular (Enkelvoud), heb, have (thou).</td>
<td>Plural (Mcervoud), hebt, have (ye).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Infinitive Mood.—Onbepaalde Wijs.

Present Tense.

Present Tense.

Perfect Tense

Future Tense.

Future Tense.

Participles.—Deelwoorden.

Participles.

hebbende, having.

gehad, had.
## VI. Complete Conjugation of the Auxiliary Verb Tense, *zijn*, to be.

### Indicative Mood.  
*(Aantonende Wijs).*

**Present Tense.—Onvolmaakt Tegenwoordige Tijd.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ik</td>
<td><em>ben</em></td>
<td>I am.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gij</td>
<td><em>zijt</em> (jij, je bent)</td>
<td>thou art.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hij (u)</td>
<td><em>is</em></td>
<td>he is.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wij</td>
<td><em>zijn</em></td>
<td>we are.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gij</td>
<td><em>zijt</em> (bent)</td>
<td>you are.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jullie</td>
<td><em>zijn</em></td>
<td>you are.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zij</td>
<td><em>zijn</em></td>
<td>they are.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Perfect Tense.—Volmaakt Tegenwoordige Tijd.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ik</td>
<td><em>ben geweest</em></td>
<td>I have been, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gij</td>
<td><em>zijt</em> (jij, je geweest)</td>
<td>thou has been, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hij (u)</td>
<td><em>was</em></td>
<td>he was.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wij</td>
<td><em>waren</em></td>
<td>we were.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gij</td>
<td><em>waret</em> (jullie waren)</td>
<td>you were.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zij</td>
<td><em>waren</em></td>
<td>they were.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Past Tense.—Onvolm. Verleden Tijd.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ik</td>
<td><em>was</em></td>
<td>I was.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gij</td>
<td><em>(jij, je) waart</em></td>
<td>thou wast.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hij (u)</td>
<td><em>was</em></td>
<td>he was.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wij</td>
<td><em>waren</em></td>
<td>we were.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gij</td>
<td><em>(jullie waren)</em></td>
<td>you were.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zij</td>
<td><em>(jullie waren)</em></td>
<td>they were.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Pluperfect Tense.—Volmaakt Verleden Tijd.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ik</td>
<td><em>was geweest</em></td>
<td>I had been, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gij</td>
<td><em>(jij, je geweest)</em></td>
<td>thou had been, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hij (u)</td>
<td><em>ware</em></td>
<td>he had been, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wij</td>
<td><em>waren</em></td>
<td>we had been, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gij</td>
<td><em>(jullie waren)</em></td>
<td>you had been, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zij</td>
<td><em>(jullie waren)</em></td>
<td>they had been, etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future Tense.—Onvolm. Toekomende Tijd.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ik</td>
<td><em>zal zijn</em></td>
<td>I shall be.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gij</td>
<td><em>(jij, je zult zijn)</em></td>
<td>thou wilt be.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hij (u)</td>
<td><em>zal zijn</em></td>
<td>he will be.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wij</td>
<td><em>zullen zijn</em></td>
<td>we shall be.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gij</td>
<td><em>(jullie zullen zijn)</em></td>
<td>you will be.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zij</td>
<td><em>(jullie zullen zijn)</em></td>
<td>they will be.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Subjunctive Mood.  
*(Aanvoegende Wijs).*

**Present Tense.—Onvolmaakt Tegenwoordige Tijd.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ik</td>
<td><em>zij</em></td>
<td>if I am.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gij (jij, je)</td>
<td><em>zijt</em></td>
<td>if thou art.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hij (u)</td>
<td><em>zij</em></td>
<td>if he is.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wij</td>
<td><em>zijn</em></td>
<td>if we are.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gij</td>
<td><em>(bent)</em></td>
<td>if you are.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jullie</td>
<td><em>zijn</em></td>
<td>if you are.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zij</td>
<td><em>zijn</em></td>
<td>if they are.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Perfect Tense.—Volmaakt Tegenwoordige Tijd.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ik</td>
<td><em>zijt</em></td>
<td>if I have been, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gij (jij, je)</td>
<td><em>zijt</em></td>
<td>if thou have been, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hij (u)</td>
<td><em>zij</em></td>
<td>if he be.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wij</td>
<td><em>zijn</em></td>
<td>if we be.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gij</td>
<td><em>(bent)</em></td>
<td>if you be.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jullie</td>
<td><em>zijn</em></td>
<td>if you be.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zij</td>
<td><em>zijn</em></td>
<td>if they be.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Past Tense.—Onvolm. Verleden Tijd.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ik</td>
<td><em>ware</em></td>
<td>if I was.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gij (jij, je)</td>
<td><em>waret</em></td>
<td>if thou wast.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hij (u)</td>
<td><em>ware</em></td>
<td>if he was.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wij</td>
<td><em>waren</em></td>
<td>if we were.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gij</td>
<td><em>(jullie waren)</em></td>
<td>if you were.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zij</td>
<td><em>(jullie waren)</em></td>
<td>if they were.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Pluperfect Tense.—Volmaakt Verleden Tijd.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ik</td>
<td><em>ware</em></td>
<td>if I had been, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gij (jij, je)</td>
<td><em>waret</em></td>
<td>if thou had been, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hij (u)</td>
<td><em>ware</em></td>
<td>if he had been, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wij</td>
<td><em>waren</em></td>
<td>if we had been, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gij</td>
<td><em>(jullie waren)</em></td>
<td>if you had been, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zij</td>
<td><em>(jullie waren)</em></td>
<td>if they had been, etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future Tense.—Onvolm. Toekomende Tijd.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ik</td>
<td><em>zou zijn</em></td>
<td>if I shall be.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gij (jij, je)</td>
<td><em>zoudt zijn</em></td>
<td>thou wilt be.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hij (u)</td>
<td><em>zou zijn</em></td>
<td>he would be.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wij</td>
<td><em>zouden zijn</em></td>
<td>we should be.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gij</td>
<td><em>(jullie zouden zijn)</em></td>
<td>you would be.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zij</td>
<td><em>(jullie zouden zijn)</em></td>
<td>they would be.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Future Perfect Tense.—Volmaakt Toek. Tijd.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{ik zal geweest zijn, I shall have been, etc.} \\
\text{ik zou geweest zijn, I should have been, etc.}
\end{align*}
\]

Imperative Mood.—Gebiedende Wijs.

Singular (Enkelvoud), wees, be (thou).

Plural (Meervoud), weest or zijn, be (ye).

Infinitive Mood.—Onbepaalde Wijs.

Present Tense.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{zijn, to be.} \\
\text{geweest zijn, to have been.}
\end{align*}
\]

Perfect Tense.

Future Tense.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{te zullen zijn (no equivalent).} \\
\text{te zullen geweest zijn (no equivalent).}
\end{align*}
\]

Participles.—Deelwoorden.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{zijnde, being.} \\
\text{geweest, been.}
\end{align*}
\]

VII. Conjugation of the Auxiliary Verb of Tense, "zullen", "shall" or "will".

Indicative Mood.—Aantonende Wijs.


\[
\begin{align*}
\text{ik zal, I shall.} \\
\text{gij (jij, je) zult, thou wilt.} \\
\text{hij (u) zal, he will.} \\
\text{wij zullen, we shall.} \\
\text{gij zult (jullie zullen), you will.} \\
\text{zij zullen, they will.}
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{ik zou, I should.} \\
\text{gij (jij, je) zoudt, thou wouldst.} \\
\text{hij (u) zou, he would.} \\
\text{wij zouden, we should.} \\
\text{gij zoudt, (jullie zouden), you would.} \\
\text{zij zouden, they would.}
\end{align*}
\]
VIII. Conjugation of the Verb *worden*, to become.

**Indicative Mood.**

*(Aantonende Wijs.)*

**Present Tense.—Onvolm. Tegenwoordige Tijd.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Present Tense</th>
<th>Subjunctive Mood</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Ik</em></td>
<td><em>ik word,</em> I become.</td>
<td><em>ik worde,</em> if I become.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Gij</em></td>
<td><em>gij (jij, je) wordt,</em> thou be-</td>
<td><em>gij (jij je) worde,</em> if thou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Hij</em></td>
<td><em>hij (u) wordt,</em> he becomes.</td>
<td><em>hij (u) worde,</em> if he become.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Wij</em></td>
<td><em>wij worden,</em> we become.</td>
<td><em>wij worden,</em> if we become.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Gij wordt</em></td>
<td>*gij wordt (jullie worden), you</td>
<td><em>gij wordet (jullie worden)</em> if you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Zij</em></td>
<td><em>zij worden,</em> they become.</td>
<td><em>zij worden,</em> if they become.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Perfect Tense.—Volmaakt Tegenw. Tijd.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Present Tense</th>
<th>Subjunctive Mood</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Ik</em></td>
<td><em>ik ben geworden,</em> I have be-</td>
<td><em>ik zij geworden,</em> if I have be-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>come, etc.</td>
<td>come, etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Past Tense.—Onvolm. Verl. Tijd.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Present Tense</th>
<th>Subjunctive Mood</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Ik</em></td>
<td><em>ik word,</em> I became.</td>
<td><em>ik worde,</em> if I became.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Gij</em></td>
<td><em>gij (jij, je) werd,</em> thou be-</td>
<td><em>gij (jij je) wordet,</em> if thou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>camest.</td>
<td>becamest.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Hij</em></td>
<td><em>hij (u) werd,</em> he became.</td>
<td><em>hij (u) worde,</em> if he become.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Wij</em></td>
<td><em>wij werden,</em> we became.</td>
<td><em>wij worden,</em> if we become.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Gij werd</em></td>
<td>*gij werd (jullie werden), you</td>
<td><em>gij wordet (jullie werden),</em> if you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>became.</td>
<td>became.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Zij</em></td>
<td><em>zij werden,</em> they became.</td>
<td><em>zij worden,</em> if they become.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Pluperfect Tense.—Volmaakt Verl. Tijd.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Present Tense</th>
<th>Subjunctive Mood</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Ik</em></td>
<td><em>ik was geworden,</em> I had become.</td>
<td><em>ik ware geworden,</em> if I had be-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>etc.</td>
<td>come, etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future Tense.—Onvolmaakt Toekomende Tijd.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Present Tense</th>
<th>Subjunctive Mood</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Ik</em></td>
<td><em>ik zal worden,</em> I shall become.</td>
<td><em>ik zou worden,</em> I should be-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>come.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Gij</em></td>
<td><em>gij (jij, je) zult worden,</em> thou</td>
<td><em>gij (jij je) zoudt worden,</em> thou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>will become.</td>
<td>wouldst become.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Hij</em></td>
<td><em>hij (u) zal worden,</em> he will</td>
<td><em>hij (u) zou worden,</em> he would</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>become.</td>
<td>become.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Wij</em></td>
<td><em>wij zullen worden,</em> we shall be-</td>
<td><em>wij zouden worden,</em> we should</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>come.</td>
<td>become.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Gij zult</em></td>
<td><em>gij zult (jullie zullen) worden,</em> you</td>
<td>*gij zoudt (jullie zouden) wor-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>will become.</td>
<td>den,* you would become.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Zij</em></td>
<td><em>zij zullen worden,</em> they will</td>
<td><em>zij zouden worden,</em> they would</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>become.</td>
<td>become.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Future Perfect Tense.—Volmaakt Toekomende Tijd.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{ik zal geworden zijn, I shall have become, etc.} & \quad \text{ik zou geworden zijn, I should have become, etc.} \\
\end{align*}
\]

Imperative Mood.—Gebiedende Wijs.

Singular (Enkelvoud), word, Plural (Meervoud), wordt, become (thou).

Infinitive Mood.—Onbepaalde Wijs.

Present Tense. Perfect Tense.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{worden, to become.} & \quad \text{geworden zijn, to have become.} \\
\end{align*}
\]

Future Tense. Future Perfect Tense.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{te zullen worden, (no equivalent).} & \quad \text{te zullen geworden zijn, (no equivalent).} \\
\end{align*}
\]

Participles.—Deelwoorden.


IX. Voice:—The Dutch Verb, like the English one, has two voices, the Active Voice (Aktieve or Bedrijvende Vorm), and the Passive Voice (Passieve or Lijdende Vorm). The form of the Passive Voice is more pronounced, for the reason that its Auxiliary verb is worden, to become, and not zijn, to be, as in English.

X. Comparison between the Active and Passive Voices of the verb “bijten”, to bite.

Infinitive Mood.


Present Tense.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Bijten, to bite.} & \quad \text{Gebeten worden, to be bitten.} \\
\end{align*}
\]

Perfect Tense.
Gebeten hebben, to have bitten.  Gebeten (geworden) zijn, to have been bitten.

Future Tense.
Te zullen bijten.  Te zullen gebeten worden.

Future Perfect Tense.
Gebeten te zullen hebben.  Gebeten te zullen (geworden) zijn.

Indicative Mood.

Present Tense.
Ik bijt, I bite.  Ik word gebeten, I am bitten.

Imperfect Tense.
Ik beet, I bit.  Ik werd gebeten, I was bitten.

Perfect Tense.
Ik heb gebeten, I have bitten.  Ik ben gebeten (geworden), I had been bitten.

Pluperfect Tense.
Ik had gebeten, I had bitten.  Ik was gebeten (geworden), I had been bitten.

Future Tense.
Ik zal bijten, I shall bite.  Ik zal gebeten worden, I shall be bitten.

Future Perfect Tense.
Ik zal gebeten hebben, I shall have bitten.  Ik zal gebeten (geworden) zijn, I shall have been bitten.

Subjunctive Mood.

Present Tense.
Ik bijte, if I bite.  Ik worde gebeten, if I be bitten.

Imperfect Tense.
Ik bete, if I bit.  Ik werde gebeten, if I were bitten.

Perfect Tense.

**Ik hebbe gebeten,** if I have bitten. 

**Ik zij gebeten (geworden),** if I have been bitten.

Pluperfect Tense.

**Ik hadde gebeten,** if I had bitten. 

**Ik ware gebeten (geworden),** if I had been bitten.

Future Tense.

**Ik zou bijten,** if I should bite. 

**Ik zou gebeten worden,** if I should be bitten.

Future Perfect Tense.

**Ik zou gebeten hebben,** if I should have bitten. 

**Ik zou gebeten geworden zijn,** if I should have been bitten.

Imperative Mood.

Present Tense.

Sing. **bijt,** bite (thou). 

**word gebeten,** be (thou) bitten.

Plur. **bijt,** bite (ye). 

**wordt gebeten,** be (ye) bitten.

Participles.

Present.

**bijtende,** biting. 

**gebeten wordende,** being bitten.

Past.

**gebeten,** bitten. 

**gebeten (geworden),** having been bitten.

Note.—The bracketed "geworden" is not usually expressed.

X. A. Notice carefully the following examples:

**Het paard wordt vandaag verkocht,** the horse is being sold to-day.

**Het paard is vandaag verkocht,** the horse has been sold to-day.

**De bloemen werden gisteren geplant,** the flowers were (being) planted yesterday.
De bloemen waren gisteren geplant, the flowers had been planted yesterday.

De schapen zullen morgen geschoren worden, the sheep will be shorn tomorrow.

De schapen zullen morgen geschoren zijn, the sheep will have been shorn tomorrow.

De kamers zouden veranderd worden, the rooms would be altered.

De kamers zouden veranderd zijn, the rooms would have been altered.

X. B. Comparison between the same forms of the Verb *zijn* used as a Copulative and as an Auxiliary of the Passive Voice.

Cop. Het brood is gerezen, the bread is risen.

Pas. Het brood is gisteren niet gebakken, maar vandaag, the bread was not baked yesterday, but today.

Pas. and Cop. De tuin was wel aangelegd, maar was geheel verwilderd, the garden had been laid out, but was altogether wild.

Cop. Ik ben verwonderd geweest over uw antwoord, I have been surprised at your answer.

Pas. Ik ben bedrogen (geworden) door mijn tuinman, I have been deceived by my gardener.

Cop. De sneeuw zal gauw gesmolten zijn, the snow will soon be melted.

Pas. Het orgel zal goed gespeeld worden, the organ will be played well.

Cop. Het water zou bevrogen geweest zijn, als, enz., the water would have been frozen over, if, etc.

Pas. Het gehele bos zou verbrand (geworden) zijn, als, enz., the whole wood would have been burned down, if, etc.
Deze oefening was verbeterd, toen ik hem terugkreeg, this exercise was corrected when I got it back.

De oefening was door de onderwijzer verbeterd, the exercise had been corrected by the teacher.


The fact that in English the Verb to be is used both as a Copulative Verb to express "state or condition", and as the Auxiliary Verb of the Passive Voice, whereas in Dutch there are two separate Verbs, viz., zijn as the Copulative, and worden as the Auxiliary of the Passive Voice, makes it difficult to English students to acquire the use of the correct Passive forms, which should therefore be made a subject of thorough enquiry and practice, more especially, as the Verb worden is conjugated with the help of zijn. The following observations should receive special attention.

1. "Am", "was", "have been", etc., are translated by "ben", "was", "ben geweest", etc., when Copulatives, and by "word", "werd", "ben geworden", etc., when Auxiliaries of the Passive Voice.

2. Where in the Perfect, Pluperfect, or Future Perfect Tense the word "geworden" has been given in brackets, it is commonly left out. This omission leads to the following comparison:

Present: Ik word gebeten, I am bitten.
Past: Ik werd gebeten, I was bitten.
Perfect: Ik ben gebeten, I have been bitten.
Pluperfect: Ik was gebeten, I had been bitten.

from which it will be noticed that the Dutch Perfect Tense is like the English Present, and the Dutch Pluperfect like the English Past.
3. It follows, then, that in the Passive Voice the English "is" and "was" are rendered by the Dutch "wordt" and "werd", and the Dutch "is" and "was" are rendered by the English "has been" and "had been"; from which the inference is drawn, that "worden" is, colloquially, the auxiliary of the simple tenses, and "zijn" of the compound.

4. Notice the peculiar use of the Passive form in Dutch in connection with the Pronoun er (see p. 195).

5. The learner is requested to note that the English language employs the Passive Voice much more profusely than the Dutch; and that, therefore, when translating, the Dutch Active should in many instances be preferred; e.g.: I was told that the diamond was not found by you but by your brother, *Men zei mij, dat u de diamant niet gevonden had, maar uw broer.*

6. (a) **Transposition** of an Active sentence into the Passive Voice is only possible when such Active sentence has a Direct Object.

(b) This Direct Object (Active) is taken as the Subject of the Passive sentence; the Verb agrees with a new subject, and the Subject of the Active sentence furnishes an Indirect Object to the Passive sentence:

**ACTIVE:** *De hond beet de man,* the dog bit the man.

**PASSIVE:** *De man werd door de hond gebeten,* the man was bitten by the dog.

**NOTE.**—In speaking, this passive Past Tense is usually rendered by the Dutch Perfect: *de man is door de hond gebeten* (*geworden* being understood). See p. 235, 3.

(c) Active sentences, having as their Subject the Indefinite Pers. Pron. *men,* lose this Pronoun when they are made Passive:

**ACTIVE:** *Men heeft mij een boodschap gebracht,* they brought me a message.

**PASSIVE:** *Een boodschap is mij gebracht* (*geworden*), or rather—*er is mij een boodschap gebracht* (*geworden*), a message has been (was) brought to me.
(d) Reversely, in bringing back a Passive sentence to its Active form, the Indirect Object (Passive) becomes the Active Subject, and the Passive Subject the Direct Object (Active).

**Passive:** De vos is door de boer gevangen (geworden), the fox was caught by the farmer.
**Active:** De boer heeft de vos gevangen, the farmer has caught the fox.

(e) In Passive sentences, where the action is not assigned to any particular agent, and consequently no Indirect Object is expressed, the Indefinite Pers. Pronoun *men* becomes the subject of the Active sentence:

**Passive:** Het kind is gisteren gevonden (geworden), the child was found yesterday.
**Active:** Men heeft gisteren het kind gevonden, they found the child yesterday.

(f) The same rule holds for sentences as referred to in Obs. 4:

**Passive:** Er is mij gezegd, I have been told.
**Active:** Men heeft mij gezegd, they have told me.
**Passive:** Er wordt hier geschoten, there is shooting going on here.
**Active:** Men schiet hier, they are shooting here.

XI. Conjugation of the Auxiliary Verbs of Mood—

**Aantonende Wijs.—Indicative Mood.**

**Onvolmaakt Tegenw. Tijd.—Present Tense.**

*ik* mag, kan, moet, laat, durft, wil, I may, can, must, let, dare, will.  
*jij* moet, kunt, moet, laat, durft, wilt, thou mayest, canst, etc.  
*hij* (u) mag, kan, moet, laat, durft, wil, he may, can, must, etc.  
*wij* mogen, kunnen, moeten, laten, durven, willen.  
*gij* moogt, kunt, moet, laat, durft, wilt.  
*jullie* mogen, kunnen, moeten, laten, durven, willen.  
*zij* mogen, kunnen, moeten, laten, durven, willen.
**Volmaakt Tegenw. Tijd.—Perfect Tense.**

*ik heb* ——, I have been allowed to.
*jij hebt* gekund, thou hast been able to.
*hij (u) heeft gemoeten*, he has been obliged to.
*wij hebben* ——, we have let (allowed).
*jullie hebben gedurfd*, you have dared.
*zij hebben gewild*, they have been willing to.

**Onvolmaakt Verleden Tijd.—Imperfect Tense.**

*ik mocht*, kon, moest, liet, dorst, wou, I might, could, had to, let, dared, wanted to.
*jij mocht*, konst, moest, liet, dorst, woust, thou mightest, couldst, hadst to, etc.
*hij (u) mocht*, kon, moest, liet, dorst, wou.
*wij mochten*, konden, moesten, lieten, dorsten, wilden.
*jullie mochten*, konden, moesten, lieten, dorsten, wilden.
*zij mochten*, konden, moesten, lieten, dorsten, wilden.

**Volmaakt Verleden Tijd.—Pluperfect Tense.**

*ik had* ——, gekund, gemoeten, ——, gedurfd, gewild, enz., I had been allowed to, had been able to, etc.

(See Perfect Tense).

**Onvolmaakt Toekomende Tijd.—Simple Future Tense.**

*ik zal mogen*, I shall be allowed to.
*jij zult kunnen*, thou wilt be able to.
*hij zal moeten*, he will be obliged to.
*wij zullen laten*, we shall let (allow).
*jullie zullen durven*, you will dare.
*zij zullen willen*, they will be willing to.

**Volmaakt Toekomende Tijd.—Future Perfect Tense.**

*ik zal hebben* ——, gekund, gemoeten, ——, gedurfd, gewild, enz., I shall have been allowed to, been able to, been obliged to, etc.

**Observation.**—The above Verbs, it will be seen, are to a far larger degree complete than their English equivalents. The use, however, of their compound tenses in the above form is limited to the cases in which they are not followed by an Infinitive Verb.

**Examples:**

*Ik heb het niet gedurfd*, I did not have the courage (to do) it.
*Zij hebben niet gewild*, they have not been willing.
*Hij zal niet kunnen*, he won't be able to.
In most cases an Infinitive Verb is made to follow, and then the Past Participles of these Verbs themselves assume the Infinitive form, as:

\[
\begin{align*}
Zij \text{ hebben niet willen horen}, & \text{ they did not want to hear.} \\
Hij \text{ heeft niet kunnen komen}, & \text{ he has not been able to come.} \\
Zij \text{ heeft niet mogen gaan}, & \text{ she was not allowed to go.} \\
Wij \text{ hebben hem niet laten spelen}, & \text{ we have not let him play.}
\end{align*}
\]

In this way the missing Past Participle forms (as shown on p. 228) are replaced.

**MOOD.**

XII.—Mood is the form of a Verb by which is expressed in what *manner* the action is done.


(a) The Indicative Mood represents an action as a *fact, a reality, a truth*. Its use is the same in English and Dutch. Examples: *Dit papier is wit*, this paper is white; *De aarde wendelt om haar as*, the earth rotates on its axis.

(b) The Subjunctive Mood represents an action as a *wish, a possibility, or as dependent on something else*: *Kwam hij slechts*, if he would only come; *Hadde ik mijn plicht gedaan, ik enz.*, if I had only done my duty, I, etc.

*Note.*—The use of the Subjunctive Mood is now much restricted in the Dutch language. It is never heard in speaking, and may be taken as confined to pulpit oratory and poetry. A very few time-honoured expressions form exceptions to this rule, as:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{het zijn zo}, & \text{ may it be so.} \\
\text{hoe dat zij}, & \text{ however that be.} \\
\text{het ga zoals het wil}, & \text{ let it go as it may.}
\end{align*}
\]
(c) The Imperative Mood expresses a command, but likewise a request or advice.

Command: *Jan, breng mij wat water*, Waiter, bring me some water.

Request: *Kom eens bij mij*, do come to me.

Advice: *Gedraag u goed, mijn kind*, behave yourself, my child.

**Note.**—Two Imperatives joined by and reject the connective in Dutch, while the second Verb takes the form of the Infinitive: *Go and tell my father, ga mijn vader zeggen.* Another way of expressing this is: *Ga, zeg mijn vader.*

**Translation of the Infinitive Mood.**

XIII. The Infinitive Mood does not express any action, but merely gives the name of the Verb. For its correct translation the following rules should be observed:

**Rule 1.**—The English Infinitive preceded by “to” is rendered in Dutch in like manner:

*Vergun mij, u te vragen*, permit me to ask you.

*Zij waren niet in staat te komen*, they were unable to come;

*Ik bevel u, het te doen*, I order you to do it;

*Denk eraan, het mij te laten zien*, remember to let me see it.

**Rule 2.**—This *te* is strengthened by *om* (Eng. “for”):

(a) When purpose is expressed:

*Ik zond hem om te vragen*, I sent him (for) to ask.

(b) After Nouns or Pronouns naming or indicating an object or instrument with which an action is performed:

*Hier is een hamer om die spijker in te slaan*, here is a hammer for knocking (to knock) in that nail;

*Geef mij iets om erbij te klimmen*, hand me something to reach it.
(c) After the word genoeg (enough):

Ik heb niet genoeg om te betalen, I have not enough to pay.

(d) After Nouns implying fitness, or Predicative Adjectives:

Heeft hij kracht om dat werk te doen? has he strength to do that work?

Is die melk goed om te drinken? is that milk good for drinking (to drink)?

(e) After te (too) followed by a Predicative Adjective:

Hij is te lui om te werken, he is too lazy to work.

Rule 3.—The Dutch Infinitive rejects both om and te:

(a) When the Infinitive forms the Subject, Object, or Predicate of a sentence:

Wandelen is gezond, walking (to walk) is pleasant;

Niet antwoorden betekent hem beledigen, not to answer means to offend him;

Liggen is bedriegen, to tell lies means to deceive.

Note.—When the first of these sentences is inverted, om te is introduced again:—Het is gezond om te wandelen. Likewise: Rusten is heerlijk, resting is delightful, and—Het is heerlijk (om) te rusten. The “om” would fall out in a longer sentence: It is delightful to rest in the shade of those trees, het is heerlijk te rusten onder de schaduw van die bomen.

(b) After the Auxiliary Verbs of Mood. (See § IV, 3):

Ik mag u niet alleen laten, I may not leave you alone;

Ik durf het hem niet vragen, I dare not ask it of him.

(c) After the Verbs: doen (to do), helpen (to help), gaan (to go), horen (to hear), voelen (to feel), komen (to come), zien (to see), leren (to learn and to teach):

Ik leer hem schrijven, I teach him to write;

Ik kom het huis zien, I come to see the house;

Hij gaat baden, he goes to bathe.

In South African Dutch om te is usually employed after the above Verbs.
XIV. Translation of the Gerund, the Present Participle, and the Past Participle:—

1.—Besides the Infinitive form pure and simple, the following are taken as forming parts of the Infinitive Mood: the Gerund, the Present Participle, and the Past Participle.

2.—The English Gerund is in every case translated by the Dutch Infinitive form. It occurs:

(a) As a Noun, when likewise in Dutch it is a Noun (het-word):

Riding is pleasant, *rijden is prettig*;

The regular bathing did it, *het geregeld baden heeft het gedaan*;

That screaming is annoying, *dat schreeuwen is vervelend*;

and (b) as a Gerundial Infinitive after a Preposition, when it is rendered by the Dutch Infinitive with *te*:

Bread is good for eating (to eat), *brood is goed om te eten*.

By working hard, *door hard te werken*.

3.—Present Participles, with a common ending *de* or *d*, are of rare occurrence in Dutch. Their frequent and varied use in English renders translation a difficult matter.

(a) Occurring in an adjectival enlargement, the Pres. Part. is translated by the Relative Pronoun, with whatever tense of the Verb fits in with the context:

Do you know of anyone going that way? *Wilt u van iemand, die die kant uitgaat?*

I saw a man holding a child by the hand, *Ik zag een man, die een kind aan de hand hield*.

(b) In sentences like the following, “I saw the king sitting on his throne,” where it takes the place of the
The formation of Past Participles is explained on p. 213. In their use they do not differ from their English equivalents. It should, however, be observed as a rule of great importance, that a Past Participle, followed by an Infinitive, assumes the form of the Infinitive, without altering its nature, as:

He is gone to work in the garden, *hij is in de tuin gaan werken*;

He has come to see me, *hij is mij komen bezoeken*.
THE STANDARD DUTCH GRAMMAR

TENSES.

XV. Tense is the change in the form of a Verb by which time is expressed.

An action may be represented as being performed in the Present, to have been performed in the Past, or to be going to be performed in the Future. Hence there are three principal tenses: a Present, a Past, and a Future tense. Each of these three may represent the action as complete, done, or as incomplete, still being done, from which it follows that there must be:

1. A Tense representing the action as being done at the present time: I read and my brother writes, ik lees en mijn broeder schrijft. This Tense is called the Present Tense, de Onvolmaakt Tegenwoordige tijd.

2. A Tense representing the action as done, completed at the present moment: I have read and my brother has written, ik heb gelezen en mijn broeder heeft geschreven. This Tense is called the Perfect Tense, de Volmaakt Tegenwoordige tijd.

3. A Tense representing the action as being done in a time which is past: When I visited him, he read (was reading), etc., toen ik hem bezocht, las hij, enz. This Tense is called the Imperfect (Past) Tense, de Onvolmaakt Verleden tijd.

4. A Tense representing the action as done, completed before another action took place: He had departed before I arrived, hij was vertrokken vóór ik aankwam. This Tense is called the Pluperfect Tense, de Volmaakt Verleden tijd.
5. A Tense representing an action as going to take place at a future time: The small tree will some time be large, de kleine boom zal eenmaal groot zijn. This Tense is called the Future tense, de Onvolmaakt Toekomende tijd.

6. A Tense representing the action as completed at a certain future time: When you return we shall have written our letters, bij uw terugkomst zullen wij onze brieven geschreven hebben. This tense is called the Future Perfect Tense, de Volmaakt Toekomende tijd.

Observations.

The English Imperfect (Past) Tense is translated by the Dutch Imperfect only:

1. When two simultaneous actions or conditions are expressed:

He saw me as soon as I entered the house, hij zag mij, zodra ik het huis inkwam.

He seemed an old man when I was yet young, hij scheen een oude man, toen ik nog jong was.

2. In all narratives and history:

Once there lived a king, er leefde eens een koning.

The Zulus defeated the English at Isandula, but were soon afterwards subjected, de Zools versloegen de Engelsen bij Isandula, maar werden spoedig daarna onderworpen.

3. In all other cases, and especially in easy colloquial style, it is preferable to translate the English Past Tense by the Dutch Perfect:

This morning I gathered fresh roses, van morgen heb ik verse rozen geplukt.

Last summer we travelled in France, verleden zomer hebben wij in Frankrijk gereisd.
4. The Present Tense is idiomatically used for the Future Tense.

Over enige tijd zien wij elkander weer om nooit weer te schieten, after some time we shall meet again never to part any more.

Wanneer komt hij thuis? when will he come home?

5. In describing an event, when the speaker wants to place the scene vividly before the mind of his hearer, he may suddenly change the Past Tense he was using into the Present:

Toen wij op deze wijze het einde van het woud bereikt hadden, hoorden wij plotseling een luid geraas achter ons. Vóór wij ons konden omkeren om te onderzoeken wat het was, vliegt er een koningstijger op uit het dichte struikgewas aan onze linkerrijde, grijpt een van de paarden bij de keel, en werpt het met zijn ruiter ter aarde. When we had thus come to the end of the forest, all at once we heard a loud noise from behind. Before we could turn round to ascertain what it was, a royal tiger darts out from the dense brushwood on our left, seizes one of the horses by the throat and flings it to the ground together with its rider.

This change of tenses is very common in Dutch for the sake of emphasis.

6. The Perfect Tense, Volmaakt Tegenwoordige tijd, represents the action as complete at the present moment:

Ik heb mijn brief geschreven, laat ons hem nu op de post doen, I have written my letter, now let us post it.

7. In the same way as the Present Tense may take the place of the Future Tense, so may the Perfect Tense take the place of the Future Perfect Tense:

De volgende week om deze tijd heb ik het zwaarste al gehad, next week about this time I shall have had the worst (the worst will be over for me).
XVI.—Verbs have two numbers: the Singular, *het Enkelvoud*, and the Plural, *het Meervoud*.

A Verb must agree in number with its Nominative (logical subject). Notice the following differences in idiom:

- It is I.
  - *Ik ben het.*

- It is we.
  - *Wij zijn het.*

- Is it you?
  - *Ben jij het? (Is u het?)*

- The council have decided.
  - *De raad heeft uitgemaakt.*

- It is the cows that did that mischief.
  - *Het zijn de koeien, die dat kwaad hebben gedaan.*

**Note.**—Notice that: *Ik ben het*, is also the translation of “I am he”, or “I am the one”; likewise: *Wij zijn het*, of “We are they”, or “We are the ones (the persons)”.

**Observations.**

1.—After two words joined by “and” the Verb must be in the Plural; after two words joined by “or” or “nor” the Verb must be in the Singular. Examples:

- *Jij en ik moeten vaarwel zeggen*, you and I must say good-bye.
- *Jij of ik moet het doen*, you or I must do it.
- *Hij noch ik kan gaan*, he nor I can go.

**Note.**—This rule is departed from, whenever the two subjects represent one idea: *de zorg en moeite verouderd mijn moeder*, my mother’s care and trouble are ageing her.

2.—When a Verb has two subjects in different persons, the Verb agrees with the 1st person in preference to the 2nd, and with the 2nd in preference to the 3rd:

- *Hij of ik heb het gedaan*, he or I did it.
- *Jij en hij kunt beiden gaan*, you and he may both go.

**XVII. Person.**—The Dutch Verb has three persons, called the first, second, and third person, *de eerste, de tweede, de derde persoon*, each with a singular and a plural form. The endings which distinguish them may be seen from the Conjugation Form (p. 213).
Transitive and Intransitive Verbs.

XVIII. To complete the meaning of a Verb, an Object is often added, such Object indicating the person or thing which is either created or changed by the action of the Verb. The sentence "The man builds", cannot be regarded as complete until the object of his building, the thing created—a house, church, bridge, shed, etc.—has been added. In the complete sentence, "The man builds a house" (de man bouwt een huis), "huis" is the Direct Object of the Verb "bouwen", and "bouwen" figures as a Transitive (Overgankelijk, or Transitief) Verb.

2. All other Verbs, i.e., all those whose meaning is not completed by the addition of a Direct Object, are called Intransitive (Onovergankelijk, or Intransitief).

XIX. 1. Reflexive (Terugwerkende, or Refleksieve) Verbs, whose action returns to the agent, or whose Subject and Direct Object are one and the same person, are manifestly Transitive. In conjugation they take the Reflexive Pronouns, mentioned under Chap VIII, p. 186.

The particulars of this conjugation are as follows:

- **Infinitive Present**: Zich (te) wonen, to wound oneself.
- **Infinitive Perfect**: Zich gewond (te) hebben, to have wounded oneself.
- **Infinitive Future**: Zich (te) zullen wonen.
- **Infinitive Future Perfect**: Zich gewond (te) zullen hebben.
Indicative Present:  

\[Ik \ won\d m\j, \ I \ wound \ myself\]
\[Gij \ won\d \ u \ (jij \ won\d \ jou, \ je \ won\d \ je), \ thou \ wound-\ est \ thyself.\]
\[Hij \ won\d \ zich \ (u \ won\d \ u) \ he \ wounds \ himself \ (you \ wound \ yourself).\]
\[Wij \ won\d \ ons, \ we \ wound \ ourselves.\]
\[Gij \ won\d \ u \ (jullie \ won\d \ je), \ you \ wound \ yourselves.\]
\[Zij \ won\d \ zich, \ they \ wound \ themselves.\]

2. Reflexive Verbs are subdivided into:

(a) Those which are of necessity reflexive, *Noodwendig Terugwerkende Werkw*. Ex. *zich schamen*, to be ashamed; *zich vergissen*, to be mistaken; *zich inbeelden*, to fancy; *zich erbarmen*, to have pity. From these the Reflexive Pronoun is inseparable.

(b) Those which may be either reflexive or not, *Toevallig Terugwerkende Werkw*. Ex. *zich bezeren*, to hurt oneself; *zich wassen*, to wash oneself; *zich veroorloven*, to allow oneself. With these the Reflexive Pronoun is only used when required.

The following verbs are Reflexive in Dutch, and not so in English:

\[zich \ aanmatigen, \quad Hij \ matigt \ zich \ te \ veel \ vrijheid \ aan, \ he \ takes \ too \ much \ liberty.\]

\[zich \ baden, \quad De \ jongens \ baadden \ zich \ in \ de \ rivier, \ the \ boys \ bathed \ in \ the \ river.\]
zich bedenken, Bedenk u wel, consider (the matter) well; 
Ik heb mij bedacht, I have changed my mind.
zich bedienen van, Men bedient zich van dynamiet om dit hout te splijten, dynamite is used for splitting this wood.
zich bedroeven over, Wij bedroeven ons over uw slecht gedrag, we are grieved at your bad conduct.
zich begooven naar, Hij heeft zich naar Afrika begeven, he has gone to Africa.
zich begrijpen, Ik kan mij die zaak niet begrijpen, I can not understand that matter.
zich beklagen, Hij zal zich niet over mij te beklagen hebben, he won't have to complain about me.
zich belasten met, Hij heeft zich met de uitvoering van mijn wens belast, he has taken upon himself to carry out my wish.
zich beroemen op, De man beroept zich op zijn daad, the man boasts of his deed.
zich beroepen op, Ik beroep mij op uw gezond verstand, I appeal to your common sense.
zich bewegen, De man beweegt zich moeilijk, the man has difficulty in moving about.
zich beijveren, De jongen beijvert zich om knap te worden, the boy tries his best to become clever.
zich erbarmen, Erbarm u mijner, have mercy on me.
zich ergeren over, De onderwijzer ergert zich over de onverschilligheid van de leerlingen, the teacher is vexed at the indifference of the pupils.
zich getroosten, Ik moet mij de uitgave getroosten, I must put up with the expense.
zich haasten, Haast u, anders komen wij te laat, hurry up, else we shall be too late.
zich herinneren, Ik herinner mij dat hij mij dat zei, I remember his having told me.
zich hoeden voor, Hoed u voor de vriendschap van die man, beware of the friendship of that man.
zich keren, Hij keerde zich naar mij, en sprak, he turned to me, and said.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dutch Expression</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>zich neerzetten,</td>
<td>De advocaat zal zich te Pretoria neerzetten, the barrister will settle down at Pretoria.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zich onderhouden met,</td>
<td>Wij hebben ons aangenaam met haar onderhouden, we had a pleasant conversation with her.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zich ontfermen over,</td>
<td>Ontferm u over de arme man, have pity on the poor man.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zich ontzien,</td>
<td>Ik ontzie mij, die man te vragen, I hesitate asking that man.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zich schamen over,</td>
<td>De vader schaamde zich over het gedrag van zijn zoon, the father was ashamed at the conduct of his son.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zich storen aan,</td>
<td>Zij stoort zich niet aan de waarschuwingen van haar vrienden, she does not mind the warnings of her friends.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zich verbeelden,</td>
<td>Hij verbeeldt zich heel knap te zijn, he fancies that he is very clever.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zich verblijden over,</td>
<td>Verblijdt u u niet over zijn geluk? are you not glad of his good fortune.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zich vergewissen van,</td>
<td>Hij heeft zich van haar vriendschap vergewist, he has made sure of her friendship.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zich vergissen,</td>
<td>Vergceef mij, ik heb mij vergist, pardon me, I have made a mistake.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zich verheugen over,</td>
<td>Wij verheugen ons over die tijding, we rejoice at those tidings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zich vermeten,</td>
<td>Wie zou zich vermeten, die man te beschuldigen, who would be bold enough to accuse that man?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zich verslikken,</td>
<td>Het kind heeft zich verslikt, daarom hoest het, the child is choking, that's why it coughs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zich verspreiden,</td>
<td>De ziekte verspreidt zich over het land, the disease is spreading in the country</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zich vestigen,</td>
<td>Mijn ouders zullen zich te Kaapstad vestigen, my parents are going to live in Cape Town.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zich voeden met,</td>
<td>Tijgers voeden zich met vlees, tigers live on flesh.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zich voelen,</td>
<td>Hij voelt zich beter van morgen, he feels better this morning.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zich voorbereiden voor,</td>
<td>Ik bereid mij voor twee eksamens voor, I am preparing for two examinations.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**MIXED VERBS.**

XX. 1. Midway between the two kinds of conjugations enumerated under § III, we find a small number (27) of Verbs which partake half of the nature of the Weak conjugation, and half of that of the Strong. These are called *Mixed (Gemengd).*

2. They are the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Past Tense</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bakken,</td>
<td>bakte,</td>
<td>gebakken.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bannen,</td>
<td>bande,</td>
<td>gebannen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>barsten,</td>
<td>barstte,</td>
<td>gebarsten.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braden,</td>
<td>braadde,</td>
<td>gebraad.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brouwen,</td>
<td>brouwde,</td>
<td>gebrouwen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>durven,</td>
<td>dorst,</td>
<td>gedurd.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heten,</td>
<td>hectie,</td>
<td>geheten.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jagen,</td>
<td>joeg (jaagde),</td>
<td>gejaagd.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kunnen,</td>
<td>kon,</td>
<td>gekund.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lachen,</td>
<td>lachie,</td>
<td>gelachen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laden,</td>
<td>laadde,</td>
<td>geladen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leggen,</td>
<td>leide (legde),</td>
<td>gelegd.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>malen,</td>
<td>maalde,</td>
<td>gemalen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ontvouwen,</td>
<td>ontvouwde,</td>
<td>ontvouwd (explained).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ontvouwen (unfolded).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>raden,</td>
<td>raadde,</td>
<td>geraden.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scheiden,</td>
<td>scheidde,</td>
<td>gescheiden.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spannen,</td>
<td>spande,</td>
<td>gespannen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spouwen,</td>
<td>spouwde,</td>
<td>gespouwen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stoten,</td>
<td>stootte,</td>
<td>gestoten.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vouwen,</td>
<td>vouwcde,</td>
<td>gevouwen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vragen,</td>
<td>vroeg (vraagde),</td>
<td>gevraagd.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>waaien,</td>
<td>woei (waide),</td>
<td>gewaaid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wassen,</td>
<td>wies (waste),</td>
<td>gewassen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>weven,</td>
<td>weefde,</td>
<td>geweven.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wreken,</td>
<td>wreukie,</td>
<td>gewreken.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zeggen,</td>
<td>zeide,</td>
<td>gezegd.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zouten,</td>
<td>zoutie,</td>
<td>gezouten.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Notes.—1. Of these twenty-seven Verbs, twenty have a Weak past tense and a Strong past participle, whereas seven have a Strong past tense and a Weak past participle.

2. Leggen and zeggen have an accidental change in their vowel sound (e to ei) by reason of the change of g to i, which is common in Dutch after e; as in: zeil (zegel), sail; slei (sliegel), sledge-hammer.

ANOMALOUS VERBS.

XXI. 1. Where the irregularity of conjugation extends to the consonants of the stem, a Verb becomes out and out Irregular, and hence is no longer called Sterk, but Onregelmatig, Anomalous.

The number of these being small (20), and that of the pure Strong Verbs considerable (170), the former will be given here, and the "List of Strong Verbs" at the end of the Chapter.

2. List of Anomalous (Onregelmatige) Verbs:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INFINITIVE.</th>
<th>PAST TENSE.</th>
<th>PAST PART.</th>
<th>POINTS OF IRREGULARITY.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>brengen</td>
<td>bracht (old D. gebracht. brangede),</td>
<td></td>
<td>Syncope of n from stem; t in 3rd Pers. Sing. Past Tense.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>denken</td>
<td>dacht (old D. gedacht. dankede),</td>
<td></td>
<td>Syncope of n from stem; t in 3rd Pers. Sing. Past Tense.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>denken, to think,</td>
<td>doch,</td>
<td>gedocht.</td>
<td>Syncope of n from stem; t in 3rd Pers. Sing. Past Tense.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dobnken, to seem, to imagine,</td>
<td>doch,</td>
<td>gedocht.</td>
<td>Syncope of n from stem; t in 3rd Pers. Sing. Past Tense.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kopen, to buy,</td>
<td>kocht (old D. gekocht. kopede),</td>
<td></td>
<td>Change of p into ch; t in 3rd Pers. Sing. Past Tense.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zoeken, to seek,</td>
<td>zocht (old D. gezocht. zoekede),</td>
<td></td>
<td>Change of k into ch; 3rd Pers. Sing. Past Tense.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plegen, to be accustomed</td>
<td>placht (old D plag),</td>
<td></td>
<td>Change of g into ch; t in 3rd Pers Sing. Past Tense.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infinitive</td>
<td>Past Tense</td>
<td>Past Part.</td>
<td>Points of Irregularity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hebben, to have (old D. havede)</td>
<td>had</td>
<td>gehad (old D. gehaved)</td>
<td>Syncope of v in Past Tense and Past Part.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>weten, to know</td>
<td>wist</td>
<td>geweten</td>
<td>Change of t into s in Imp. Tense.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moeten, to be obliged</td>
<td>moest (old D. moette)</td>
<td>gemoeten</td>
<td>Change of t into s t in 3rd Pers. Sing. Past Tense.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>houden, to hold</td>
<td>hield</td>
<td>gehouden</td>
<td>Insertion of l before ending of Past Tense.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mogen, to be allowed, do (old D. mag)</td>
<td>mocht (old D. mag)</td>
<td>(wanting)</td>
<td>Change of g into ch, former Imp. now Pres. (see Obs.).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zullen, shall, will (old D. zalde)</td>
<td>zou (contr of zolde)</td>
<td>(wanting)</td>
<td>Former Imp. now Pres. (see Obs.).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>willen, to be willing</td>
<td>wilde, (colloquial wou)</td>
<td>gewild</td>
<td>Former Pres. Subj. now Pres. Ind. (see Obs.).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>doen, to do, (old D. daden)</td>
<td>deed</td>
<td>gedaan (old D. gedaden)</td>
<td>Irregular form of Inf.; contracted Past Part.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gaan, to go, (old D. gangen)</td>
<td>ging</td>
<td>gegaan (old D. gegaan)</td>
<td>Contracted Infin. and Past Part.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slaan, to beat (old D. slagen)</td>
<td>sloeg</td>
<td>geslagen</td>
<td>Contracted form of Infinitive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>staan, to stand (old D. stonden)</td>
<td>stond</td>
<td>gestaan (old D. gestanden)</td>
<td>Contracted forms of Inf. and Past Part.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zien, to see, (old D. zegen)</td>
<td>zeg</td>
<td>gezien (old D. gezogen)</td>
<td>Contracted forms of Inf. and Past Part.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>komen, to come, (old D. kwamen)</td>
<td>kwam</td>
<td>gekomen (old D. gekwamen)</td>
<td>Altered forms of Inf. and Past Part.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zijn, or was, (old D. gewesen)</td>
<td>geweest</td>
<td>(old D. gewezen and geweesd).</td>
<td>Mixture of different roots (see Obs.).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kunnen, to be able, (old D. konnen)</td>
<td>kon(de)</td>
<td>gekund</td>
<td>Former Imp. now Pres. (see Obs.).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Observations.

1.—Besides the irregularities referred to in these lists, notice that zijn, kunnen, mogen, zullen, and willen omit the t of the third pers. sing. Ind. Pres.: Hij is, kan, mag, zal, wil. In the case of kan, mag and zal this is owing to the fact that these forms were originally the third pers. of the Past Tense; while wil (for wille) is the abbreviated form of the Subj. Pres.; is (Germ. ist, Lat. est) has dropped its t.

2.—The Pres. Part. of zullen, "zullende", is used in documentary language: Zullende hij genoodzaakt zijn, as he will be obliged.

3.—The old Dutch Past. Part. of wezen, "gewezen", is now used as an Adjective, and means "former": de gewezen burgemeester, the late (ex-) mayor.

 impersonal verbs.

XXII. 1. Verbs which indicate an action that cannot be ascribed to any particular person or thing, are called Impersonal (Onpersoonlik), and are only used in the third person singular (of every tense): het regent, sneeuwt, vriest, enz., it rains, snows, freezes, etc.

2. The name Impersonal is extended to certain expressions, which are only met with in the third person singular. Such are:

Het is koud, it is cold.

Het was winderig, it was windy.

Het zal drukkend zijn, it will be close.
The following Verbs may be classed among this number:—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bedroeven</td>
<td><em>Het bedroeft mij, u zo te zien, I am sorry to see you like this.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>behagen</td>
<td><em>Het heeft de koning behaagd, it has pleased the king.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>believen</td>
<td><em>Gef mij dat boek, als het u blijft, give me that book, if you please.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>berouwen</td>
<td><em>Het berouwt hem, dat hij het gezegd heeft, he is sorry that he said so.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>betamen</td>
<td><em>Het betaamt u niet, zo te spreken, you have no right to speak like that.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bcvreemden</td>
<td><em>Het zal u zeker bevreemden mij hier te zien, you will no doubt be astonished to see me here.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dunken</td>
<td><em>Mij dunkt (het dunkt mij) dat het goed is, I think it is alright.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heugen</td>
<td><em>Het heugt mij niet, u tevoren gezien te hebben, I do not recollect having seen you before.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opvallen</td>
<td><em>Het valt mij op, dat hij bloek ziet, it strikes me, that he looks pale.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>schelen,*</td>
<td><em>Het kan mij niet schelen, I don't care.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>smarten</td>
<td><em>Het smart hem, u verdriet te doen, it pains him to grieve you.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spijten</td>
<td><em>Het spijt ons, dat u ziek is, we are sorry that you are ill,</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verdrieten</td>
<td><em>Laat het u niet verdrieten, dat ik weg moet, don't let it trouble you that I must leave.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verwonderen</td>
<td><em>Het verwondert mij zeer, dat te horen, I am very much surprised to hear it.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vrijstaan</td>
<td><em>Het staat u vrij, haar uit te nodigen, you are at liberty to invite her.</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Note.—Observe the different meanings of the Verb “schelen”:

*Niets kan hem schelen,* he does not care for anything.
*Wat scheelt er aan? what is the matter?*
*Het scheelde weinig of ik was gevallen,* I very nearly fell.
*Het scheelt heel wat dat deze weg korter is,* this way is shorter by a good deal.
*Het zal mij veel schelen als ik een paard heb,* it will make a great difference to me, when I have a horse.

In the two latter sentences the idea of “difference” underlies the meaning of the Verb “schelen”, and with this meaning it also occurs as a Personal Verb: *Mijn horloge scheelt weinig bij het uwe,* my watch differs little from yours.
3. Likewise are brought under this head certain expressions in the Passive Voice, by which an action is ascribed to an agent or agents, whose name is not mentioned:

Er wordt daar gedanst, they are dancing there;  
Er werd goed geschoten, the shooting was good;  
Er zal heel wat over gesproken worden, the matter will be much talked about.

**Causative Verbs.**

XXIII. Some Verbs, derived from existing ones by a change in their radical vowel, indicate that their *Subject* is the cause of an action performed by the *Object*. They are called **Causative Verbs (Causatieve, Oorzakelijke Werkwoorden)**. Among them the following are some of the most common:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Original Verbs</th>
<th>Derivatives</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>drinken, to drink.</td>
<td>drenken, to water (cause to drink).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liggen, to lie.</td>
<td>leggen, to lay (cause to lie).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vallen, to fall.</td>
<td>relhen, to fell (cause to fall).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>waken, to be awake.</td>
<td>wekken, to awaken (cause to wake).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zitten, to sit.</td>
<td>zetten, to set (cause to sit).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nijgen, to bend.</td>
<td>nijgen, to bow (cause to bend).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Intensives.**

XXIV. Certain *Verbs* are derived from existing ones by changes in the vowel and final consonant of their stems, and express an intensified action. They are called **Intensieven:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Original Verbs</th>
<th>Derivatives</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>wegen, to weigh.</td>
<td>wikken, to consider carefully.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nijgen, to pant.</td>
<td>hikken, to hiccough.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vliegen, to fly.</td>
<td>vluchten, to flee.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>smaken, to taste.</td>
<td>smachten, to long for.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buigen, to bend.</td>
<td>bukken, to stoop.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Frequentative Verbs.

XXV. Another kind of Verbs, called Frequentative (Frequentatieve, Herhalings-Werkwoorden), because they indicate a constant repetition of the action, are formed from existing ones by adding the ending ellen or cren to their verbal stems, with an occasional change of the stem-vowel:

Original Verbs. Derivatives.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Original Verbs</th>
<th>Derivatives</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>idden, to pray, to ask.</td>
<td>bedelen, to ask continually, to beg.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>druppen, to drip.</td>
<td>droppelen, to drip constantly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>huppen, to hop.</td>
<td>huppelen, to skip, to gambol.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
wenden, to turn, to move. | wandelen, to take a walk, to be constantly moving. |
|stoten, to dash, to push. | stotteren, to stammer. |
kikkcn, to utter a sound. | { kakkelen, kekkelten } to cackle. |

Observation.—Mark that Verbs in ellen and cren belong to the class of frequentatives only when they indicate a repetition of the action. Many other Verbs have the same endings, being derived from Nouns which end in el and er:

Grendelen, to bolt (from grondel, bolt); hameren, to hammer (from hamer, hammer).

COMPOUND VERBS.

XXVI. Compound Verbs (Samengestelde Werkwoorden) are of two kinds—first, those in which the first part is inseparably connected with the Verb-stem; second, those whose first part is occasionally separated from the stem. The following rules assist the student in overcoming the apparent difficulty which arises from this fact.

Rule 1.—All Verbs compounded with a Noun are separable: houthakken, to chop wood; leerlooien, to tan leather; huishouden, to keep house.
Rule 2.—All Verbs compounded with an Adjective are separable, except those with vol, and mis, when unaccented; e.g., grootpreken, to boast; vrijlaten, to set free; misverstaan, to misunderstand;—inseparable: volharden, to endure; voldóen, to satisfy; mishágen, to displease; misdóen, to do wrong.

Note.—Vôlhouden, to maintain, is separable, as are also those Verbs in which vol has the meaning of "full", and takes the accent; e.g., vólschenken, to fill by pouring into.

Rule 3.—When Verbs are compounded with an Adverb or Preposition, the pronunciation must decide the case. When the accent lies on their first part, they are separably compounded; when the accent is on their second part, they are inseparably compounded.

Examples:—

Separable are: áanlachen, to smile at; áchterhouden, to keep back; ómlopen, to take a round-about way; nádenken, to reflect upon.

Inseparable are: overdénken, to consider; aanbidden, to adore; weerkáatsen, to reflect; ontgáan, to escape.

Rule 4.—Verbs derived from existing ones by means of the verbal prefixes be, ge, er, her, ont, and ver, are inseparable, as: beginnen, to begin; geleiden, to lead; erkennen, to acknowledge; herroopen, to recall; ontvan- gen, to receive; vergeten, to forget.

Observation.

The difference in conjugation between the inseparably compounded Verbs and those separably compounded is so marked that attention should be given to it here.
Separably Compounded Verbs, when conjugated, separate themselves from their first part throughout the entire conjugation, and in their Past Participles insert the prefix *ge* between their two parts.

Inseparably Compounded Verbs, on the other hand, remain intact, and their Past Participles reject the prefix *ge*.

**Examples:**


*Note 1.*—Derived Verbs (referred to under Rule 4) having one of the verbal prefixes (*be, ge, er, her, ont*, or *ver*) likewise reject the participial prefix *ge*:

**Infinitives:** *beginnen, gelaaiden, erkennen, herroepen, ontrangen, vergelen*.

**Past Participles:** *begonnen, geleid, erkend, herroepen, ontrangen, vergelen*.

*Note 2.*—The Verbs *antwoorden*, to answer; *argwanen*, to suspect; *dagwaarden*, to summon; *glimlachen*, to smile; *handharen*, to maintain; *waarborgen*, to guarantee; *zegcpralen (zegerieren)*, to triumph; *evenaren*, to equal; *wanhopen*, to despair, which
are derived from compound Nouns, likewise beeldhouwen, to sculpture, are inseparable, but take the prefix ge in their Past Participles: geantwoord, gezegepraald.

**Note 3.**—The following Verbs change their meaning according to the way their accent is placed:

- **doordringen**, *De vijand is in het bos doorgedrongen*, the enemy has penetrated into the wood.
- **doordringen**, *De lucht is doordrongen van de geur van de bloemen*, the air is permeated with the scent of the flowers.
- **doorlopen**, *Het kind is de kamer doorgelopen*, the child has gone through the room.
- **doorlopen**, *De boeden hebben de stad in alle richtingen doorlopen*, the messengers have traversed the town in every direction.
- **doorreizen**, *Deze man is Perzië op weg naar Palestina doorreisde*, this man has travelled through Persia on his way to Palestine.
- **doorreizen**, *Mijn vader heeft de gehele Kaap Kolonie doorreisde*, my father has travelled all about in Cape Colony.
- **doorsteken**, *Ik heb de naald hier doorgestoken*, here I have put the needle through.
- **doorsteken**, *De soldaat werd doorstoken met een lans*, the soldier was pierced with a lance.
- **ondergaan**, *De maan is zoeven ondergegaan*, the moon has just set.
- **ondergaan**, *Hij ondergaat zijn lot met kalmte*, he submits to his fate with calmness.
- **onderhouden**, *Hij heeft zijn woede lang ondergehouden*, he has long suppressed his rage.
- **onderhouden**, *De ouders worden door hun zoon onderhouden*, the parents are provided for by their son.
- **overdrijven**, *Het onweer is overdreven in de richting van de zee*, the thunderstorm passed over us in the direction of the sea.
overdrijven.  Mijn broeder heeft de zaak gewis over- dréen, my brother has no doubt exaggerated the matter.

overwegen,  Hij heeft de pakjes overgewogen, he has weighed the parcels again.

overwegen,  Men heeft het voorstel overwogen, the motion has been considered.

overwerken,  Ik heb het gehele opstel overgewerkt, I have done the composition all over again.

overwerken,  Zijn zuster heeft zich verleden maand overwérkt, his sister overworked herself last month.

overzien,  De onderwijzer heeft het huiswerk over­ grzien, the teacher has looked over the homework.

overzien,  Van hier overziet men de gehele stad, from here one has a view of the whole town

voorkomen,  Er komen veel ongelukken voor, many accidents happen.

voorkomen,  Men had die ramp kunnen voorkómen, that calamity might have been prevented.

voorzeggen,  Het kind heeft zijn zusje de les voor­ gezegd, the child has prompted his sister in saying the lesson.

voorzeggen,  De val van Jeruzalem was voorzégd (geworden), the fall of Jerusalem had been predicted.

**XXVII. List of Strong Verbs:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CLASS I</th>
<th>INFINITIVE</th>
<th>PAST TENSE</th>
<th>PAST PART</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(ij)</td>
<td>(e)</td>
<td>(e)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. To</td>
<td>confess, belijden,</td>
<td>beled,</td>
<td>beleden,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. &quot;</td>
<td>succumb, bezwijken,</td>
<td>bezweek,</td>
<td>bezweken,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. &quot;</td>
<td>bite. bijten,</td>
<td>beet,</td>
<td>gebeten,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. &quot;</td>
<td>appear (to be), bli-</td>
<td>bleeck,</td>
<td>gebakken,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. &quot;</td>
<td>remain, blijven,</td>
<td>bleek,</td>
<td>gebakken.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. &quot;</td>
<td>resemble, gelijken,</td>
<td>geleek,</td>
<td>geleken.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. &quot;</td>
<td>glide, glijden,</td>
<td>gled,</td>
<td>gegleden.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No.</td>
<td>Class</td>
<td>Infinitive</td>
<td>Past Tense</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>To hoist</td>
<td>hijsen</td>
<td>hees</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>look</td>
<td>kijken</td>
<td>keek</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>pinch</td>
<td>knijpen</td>
<td>kneep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td>get</td>
<td>krijgen</td>
<td>kregg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
<td>croak</td>
<td>krisen</td>
<td>krees</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td>acquit oneself</td>
<td>kwijten</td>
<td>kriet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.</td>
<td>suffer</td>
<td>lijden</td>
<td>leed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.</td>
<td>seem (to be)</td>
<td>lijken</td>
<td>leek</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.</td>
<td>avoid</td>
<td>mijden</td>
<td>meed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.</td>
<td>incline (bow)</td>
<td>nijgen</td>
<td>neeg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.</td>
<td>pass away (die)</td>
<td>overlijden</td>
<td>overleed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.</td>
<td>praise</td>
<td>prijzen</td>
<td>prees</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22.</td>
<td>ride</td>
<td>rijden</td>
<td>reed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.</td>
<td>lace</td>
<td>rijgen</td>
<td>reeg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24.</td>
<td>tear</td>
<td>rijten</td>
<td>reet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.</td>
<td>rise up</td>
<td>rijzen</td>
<td>rees</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26.</td>
<td>seem, to shine</td>
<td>schijnen</td>
<td>scheen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27.</td>
<td>saunter</td>
<td>schrijden</td>
<td>schreed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28.</td>
<td>write</td>
<td>schrijven</td>
<td>schreef</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29.</td>
<td>sharpen</td>
<td>slijpen</td>
<td>sleep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30.</td>
<td>wear out</td>
<td>slijten</td>
<td>sleeet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31.</td>
<td>fling</td>
<td>smijten</td>
<td>smeet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32.</td>
<td>cut</td>
<td>snijden</td>
<td>sneed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33.</td>
<td>be sorry</td>
<td>spijten</td>
<td>speet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34.</td>
<td>split</td>
<td>splijten</td>
<td>spleet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35.</td>
<td>ascend</td>
<td>stijgen</td>
<td>steeg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36.</td>
<td>starch</td>
<td>stijven</td>
<td>steef</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37.</td>
<td>strive (fight)</td>
<td>strijken</td>
<td>streed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38.</td>
<td>iron, to stroke</td>
<td>strijken</td>
<td>streek</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39.</td>
<td>disappear</td>
<td>verdwijnen</td>
<td>verdween</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40.</td>
<td>give way, to yield</td>
<td>wijken</td>
<td>week</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41.</td>
<td>impute</td>
<td>wijten</td>
<td>weet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42.</td>
<td>show</td>
<td>wijzen</td>
<td>wees</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43.</td>
<td>rub</td>
<td>wijven</td>
<td>wreef</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44.</td>
<td>sink, to filter</td>
<td>zijgen</td>
<td>zeeg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45.</td>
<td>be silent</td>
<td>zwijgen</td>
<td>zwieg</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes.—1. Krijgen, to wage war, is Weak: Moab krijgde tegen Israel, Moab made war upon Israel.
2. Kwijten is Reflexive: ik heb mij van mijn plicht gekweten, I have fulfilled my duty.
3. Prijzen, to price, is Weak: hij heeft het lijen geprijsd, he has marked the price on the linen.
4. Spijten is Impersonal: het spijt mij, I am sorry.
5. Stijven, to encourage (harden), is Weak, hij stijfde mij in het kwade.
### Class II.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Past Tense</th>
<th>Past Part.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(a) i, (b) e.</td>
<td>(o)</td>
<td>(o)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. To begin,</td>
<td>beginnen</td>
<td>begun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. bind</td>
<td>binden</td>
<td>bond</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. shine</td>
<td>blinken</td>
<td>blonk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. strive for</td>
<td>dingen</td>
<td>dong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. urge</td>
<td>dringen</td>
<td>drong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. drink</td>
<td>drinken</td>
<td>dronk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. force (coerce)</td>
<td>dwingen</td>
<td>dwong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. gleam</td>
<td>glimmen</td>
<td>glom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. climb</td>
<td>klimmen</td>
<td>klim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. sound</td>
<td>klinken</td>
<td>klom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. shrink</td>
<td>krimpen</td>
<td>kromp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. grow (to open)</td>
<td>ontginnen</td>
<td>ontgon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. get startled</td>
<td>schrikken</td>
<td>(1) schrok</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. diminish in size</td>
<td>slinken</td>
<td>slonk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. spin</td>
<td>spinnen</td>
<td>spon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. jump</td>
<td>springen</td>
<td>sprong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. stick</td>
<td>sticken</td>
<td>stonk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. devastate</td>
<td>verslinden</td>
<td>verslon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19. vanish</td>
<td>verzenden</td>
<td>verzwond</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20. find</td>
<td>vinden</td>
<td>vond</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21. wind</td>
<td>winnen</td>
<td>won</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22. win, to gain</td>
<td>winnen</td>
<td>won</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23. dig, to open</td>
<td>wrijven</td>
<td>wroth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24. sing</td>
<td>zingen</td>
<td>zong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25. sink</td>
<td>zinken</td>
<td>zonk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26. meditate</td>
<td>zinnennen</td>
<td>zon</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Notes.

1. Schrikken, to startle (trans.), is Weak. It is usually replaced by "verschrikken": De tijding heeft ons allen ver­
schrikt. 2. Melken is also used Weak.
THE VERB 255

CLASS III.

(a) To deceive, offer, enjoy, pour, choose, tell lies, fly, flow, freeze, boil, shave (shear), weigh, ulcerate.

(b) To shave (shear), weigh, ulcerate.

(c) To spit.

(d) To bend, drip, dive, whistle, gnaw (a bone), wheel (on a barrow), creep, close, fray out, smell, take shelter, move (shove), smuggle, sneak, lock, blow (the nose), sniff (take snuff).

(e) To go (journey).

INFinitive.

(a) ie, (b) e, (c) u, (d) ul, (o) (o).

(e) iij.

Class III.

1. To deceive, bedriegen, bedroog, bedrogen.
2. To offer, bieden, bood, geboden.
3. To enjoy, genieten, genoot, genoten.
4. To pour, water gieten, goot, gegoten.
5. To choose, kiezen, koos, gekozen.
6. To tell lies, liegen, loog, gelogen.
7. To tell lies, schieten, schoot, geschoten.
8. To grieve, verdrieten, verdroot, verdronen.
9. To lose, verliezen, verloor, verloren.
10. To flee, vliegen, vloog, gevlogen.
11. To enjoy, genieten, genoot, genoten.
12. To pour, water gieten, goot, gegoten.
13. To choose, kiezen, koos, gekozen.
14. To boil (seethe), zieden, zood, gezoden.
15. To shave (shear), scheren, schoor, geschoren.
16. To weigh, wegen, woog, gewogen.
17. To ulcerate, zwenen, zwoor, gezworen.
18. To shave (shear), scheren, schoor, geschoren.
19. To weigh, wegen, woog, gewogen.
20. To ulcerate, zwenen, zwoor, gezworen.
21. To bend, buigen, boog, gebogen.
22. To drip, druipen, droop, gedropten.
23. To dive, duiken, dlook, geedoeken.
24. To whistle, fluiten, fluit, gepletten.
25. To gnaw (a bone), kluiven, kloof, gekloven.
26. To wheel (on a barrow), kruiven, kroot, gekrooien.
27. To creep, kruipen, kroop, gekropen.
28. To close, luiken, look, geloken.
29. To fray out, pluizen, ploos, gepleozen.
30. To smell, ruiken, rook, gerokken.
31. To take shelter, schuilen, school, gescholen.
32. To move (shove), schuiven, schoof, geschoven.
33. To smuggle, sluiken, slook, gepletten.
34. To sneak, sluipen, sloop, gesloopen.
35. To lock, sluiten, sloot, gesloten.
36. To blow (the nose), snuiten, snoot, gesnoten.
37. To sniff (take snuff), snuiven, snoof, gesnooven.
38. To sprout, spruiten, sproot, gesproten.
39. To spout, spuiten, spoot, gespoten.
40. To raise dust, sluiven, sloof, gesloven.
41. To suck, zuigen, zoog, gezogen.
42. To tipple, zuipen, zoop, gezopen.
43. To go (journey), tijgen, toog, gejagen.
Notes.—1. Verdrieten is Impersonal: *het verdriet mij, it grieves me.*

2. *Vriezen* is also conjugated: *vroos, gevrozen,* which is regular, but an uncommon form. On account of the change of *z* to *r,* the form given on p. 255 is by some called Anomalous.

3. *Zieden* is rarely used.

4. *Spugen* is also used Weak.

5. *Kruien* is also used Weak.

6. *Luiken* is only used of flowers and the human eye.

7. *Pluizen* is only used with the meaning of “to pick out” (as wool), and “to examine (any matter) closely”; it is used both Strong and Weak.

8. *Schuilen* is also used Weak.

9. *Tijgen* has a complete conjugation, but the present tense is rarely used. Another form of it is *tiegen,* occurring in the contracted form *beticen,* to manage.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class IV.</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Past Tense</th>
<th>Past Part.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(a)</td>
<td>(a) <em>e,</em> (b) <em>i,</em> (c) <em>e.</em></td>
<td>(a) <em>at,</em></td>
<td>(a) <em>e,</em> (b) <em>e,</em> (c) <em>o.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. To eat,</td>
<td><em>etcn,</em></td>
<td><em>at,</em></td>
<td><em>ggecen.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. ,,, cure,</td>
<td><em>genezen,</em></td>
<td><em>genas,</em></td>
<td><em>genezen.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. ,,, give,</td>
<td><em>geven,</em></td>
<td><em>gaf,</em></td>
<td><em>gegeven.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. ,,, read,</td>
<td><em>lezen,</em></td>
<td><em>las,</em></td>
<td><em>gelezen.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. ,,, measure,</td>
<td><em>meten,</em></td>
<td><em>mat,</em></td>
<td><em>gcmeten.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. ,,, tread (step),</td>
<td><em>treden,</em></td>
<td><em>trad,</em></td>
<td><em>getreden.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. ,,, forget,</td>
<td><em>vergeten,</em></td>
<td><em>vrgat,</em></td>
<td><em>vergeten.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. ,,, gorge,</td>
<td><em>vront,</em></td>
<td><em>vrat,</em></td>
<td><em>govreten.</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| (b)       | | | |
| 1. ,, pray, | *bidden,* | *bad,* | *gebden.* |
| 2. ,, lie down, | *liggen,* | *lag,* | *gelegen.* |
| 3. ,, be sitting, | *zitten,* | *zat,* | *gezeten.* |

| (c)       | | | |
| 1. ,, command, | *brcelen,* | *beval,* | *bevelen.* |
| 2. ,, break, | *breken,* | *brak,* | *gebrcoken.* |
| 3. ,, take, | *ncmen,* | *nam,* | *gncmen.* |
| 4. ,, speak, | *spreken,* | *sprak,* | *gespoken.* |
| 5. ,, stab (put through), | *stoken,* | *stak,* | *gestoken.* |
| 6. ,, steal, | *stolen,* | *stal,* | *gestolen.* |
THE VERB

Class V.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INFINITIVE</th>
<th>PAST TENSE</th>
<th>PAST PART.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(a) a, (b) a,</td>
<td>(a) a, (b) a,</td>
<td>(a) a, (b) a,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) o, (d) oe,</td>
<td>(c) o, (d) oe,</td>
<td>(c) o, (d) oe,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(e) oe, (f) e,</td>
<td>(g) e, (h) e.</td>
<td>(g) e, (h) e.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. To blow, blazen, blies, geblazen.
2. To let, laten, liet, geleten.
3. To sleep, slapen, sliep, geslapen.

Class VI.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INFINITIVE</th>
<th>PAST TENSE</th>
<th>PAST PART.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(a)</td>
<td>(a) a, (b) o.</td>
<td>(a) a, (b) o.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. To carry (bear), dragen, droeg, gedragen.
2. To dig, graven, groef, gegraven.
3. To navigate (sail), varen, voer, gevaren.

Class VII.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INFINITIVE</th>
<th>PAST TENSE</th>
<th>PAST PART.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(a)</td>
<td>(a)</td>
<td>(a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. To hang, hangen, hing, gehangen.
2. To catch, vangen, ring, gegraven.

Notes.—1. Wasschen, to cover with wax, is Weak.
2. Scheppen, to scoop or dip out, is Weak.

Class VIII.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INFINITIVE</th>
<th>PAST TENSE</th>
<th>PAST PART.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(o)</td>
<td>(o)</td>
<td>(o)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. To become, worden, werd, geworden.
1. Determine the stems of the following Verbs:

Denken; doen; vragen; blijven; zoeken; leven; zien; hangen; zagen (to saw); liggen; brengen; drogen (to dry); voelen; gaan; onderwijzen (to teach); proeven (to taste); lessen (to quench); vissen; suizen (to rustle); ruisen (to rustle); hakken; schapen (to kick); dwalen (to wander); pochen (to brag); bogen (to boast); zuchten; lachen; wezen; bedelen (to beg); verblind en (to blind); ontdoen (to strip); rekken (to stretch); tornen (to unpick); naaien; mazen (to darn); breien (to knit); haken (to crochet); zomen (to hem); stikken (to stitch); bedragen (to amount to); wassen; beloven (to promise); lezen; vrczn; kussen (to kiss); kuchen (to cough); stoven (to stew); koeren (to coo); kwelen (to warble); tjilpen (to chirp); slaan; piepen; giechelen (to giggle); oorlogen (to wage war); vuren (to fire); schieten; vellen (to fell); vellen (to flay); vallen; bespotten (to mock); verbreken (to break); verhuren (to hire out).

2. Write out the singular and plural forms of the Imperative Mood of all the above Verbs; also the first person, singular and plural, of the Indicative Present.

3. 1. Write out the third person, singular, of the Indicative and Subjunctive Present of the following Verbs:

Besteden (to spend); vertellen; ergeren (to vex); spitten (to dig); raden (to guess); overreden (to prevail upon); duwen (to push); duren (to last); zetten; plaatsen; missen; frons en (to frown); helen (to heal); ver-
helen (to hide); gedijen (to thrive); ontleden (to analyse); verschepen (to ship); temmen (to tame); laven (to refresh); zulven (to anoint); inenten (to vaccinate); mesten (to manure); landen; rusten; planten; dulden (to endure); troosten (to comfort); branden; roosten (to roast); braveren (to brave); ontberen (to do without); geschieden (to happen); kwaken (to croak); schroeven (to screw); gooien (to throw); schrobben (to scrub); schuren (to scour); beletten (to prevent); draven (to trot); verlaten (to leave); ontzetten (to set free); kruisen (to cross).

4.

Of the above Verbs write out the Stem, the Past Tense (first person, singular) and the Past Participle.

5.

In the following exercise write the words in italics in the Plural:

Hoe laat is uw broeder aangekomen? Het paard kan de wagen niet trekken; de jongen zal het moeten uitspannen; zulk een dier is veel te zwak voor die vracht. Waarom heeft de man het gat zo diep gegraven? Ik vertelde hem dat het boek niet gedrukt kon worden; maar hij wilde mij niet geloven. Kind, kind, wat zal er toch van je groeien? Hoe dikwels heb ik je niet gewaarschuwd! Ik had mij gewassen, vóór ik in de kamer kwam. Wie is vandaag hier geweest? Wanneer wordt uw vriend verwacht? Mijn vader zei mij, dat ik mij in die persoon vergist moest hebben. Denk aan wat ik u zo dikwels gezegd heb: het is de slechtste perzik niet waaraan de wasp knaagt. De timmerman zaagt het hout. Het jonge meisje bood mij een kleine ruiker aan. Hoe dikwels baadt hij zich gewoonlik? De ooievaar kuiert langs de sloot, om te zien of hij er geen kikker uit kan halen, die hij dan lekker opsmult. De telegraafpaal staat eenzaam in het veld. De adelaar bouwt zijn nest op de top van een hoge berg.
6.

Of the following Verbs write out the third person, singular and plural, of the Indicative Present.

*Binden; delven* (to dig); *spelen; straffen; beloven* (to promise); *wassen; bepalen* (to decide); *vragen; snijden; onthalen* (to treat); *lezen; gaan; scheiden* (to separate); *weven* (to weave); *schrijven; vrezen; streven* (to strive); *beseffen* (to realise); *oorlogen* (to wage war); *staren* (to stare); *zaaien; voeden; heten* (to be called); *zich herinneren* (to remember); *bewijzen* (to prove); *bidden* (to pray); *antwoorden; slaan.*

7.

Of the following sets of Verbs write out the Stem, Past Tense (first person, sing. and plur., and the second person), and Past Participle.

(a).

*Note.—Some Verbs having a single a in the Past Tense, the sound of which is full in the plural, double the a in the second person: ik bad, jij baadt; ik las, jij laast.*

*Bieden* (to offer); *blijken* (to appear); *bergen* (to put aside); *drinken; eten; genezen* (to cure); *breken; fluiten* (to whistle); *kiezen* (to choose); *vrezen; hangen; glimmen* (to gleam); *lezen; lopen; nemen; schelden* (to call names); *meten* (to measure); *schrijven; sluiten; slijten* (to wear out); *schenken* (to give or pour); *stelen; spreken; smelten; vangen; vechten.*

(b).

*Strong, Mixed, Anomalous Verbs (§§ XX, XXI, XXVII):*

*Houden; sluipen* (to steal); *raden; zocken; zeggen; vergeten; plegen; verliezen; lachen; wassen; dunken;*
**THE VERB**

wezen; werven (to levy an army); zitten; jagen; bakken; zullen; zweren (to swear); moeten; wassen; laden; zwijgen; wrijven; kopen; brouwen; weven; zweren (to ulcerate); sterven; wreken; begraven; denken; zien; komen.

(c).

**Compound and Derivative Verbs (§ XXVI):**

Leerlooien; losmaken; beeldhouwen (to sculpture); liefhebben; volhouden; volharden; volgieten; volbrêngen (to accomplish); ontvangen; antwoorden; dagvaarden; overwerken; ondergijan; herroepen; groot spreken; vrij laten; nálopen; doorreizen; zegevieren; wânhopen; mishâgen; misschieten (to miss in shooting); vólflopen (to run full); veroveren (to conquer); onderwérpen (to subdue); doorbláderen (to peruse); evenaren; vóorkomen; uitlopen (to sprout); ontluiken (to open, of flowers); overdrijven; voorzégen.

8.

Write out the following exercise, first in the third person, singular; then in the second person, plural; and lastly in the third person, plural, using throughout the tenses as they are given.

Ik sprak met mijn vader en wees hem de brief, die ik geschreven had. Ik vertelde mijn oom wat mij op de weg overkomen was, en hoe ik bijna een ongeluk had gekregen. Op school hoorde ik van mijn onderwijzer, dat ik de eerste op de lijst stond, en dat ik dus een prijs zou krijgen. Ik schreef het blad vol, en vouwde toen de brief op, en deed hem in een koever. Ik riep de postbode toe, dat ik hem zou verklagen, indien ik weer zo iets merkte. Ik zal het aannemen, als ik mag, maar ik weet niet, of mijn vader het mij zal toelaten. Ik geloof niet,
dat ik mijzelf zoveel kwaad doe, als hij mij wijs wil maken. Ik kan het niet helpen, dat ik niet eerder gekomen ben: mijn vader heeft mij om een boodschap gezonden, en daardoor moest ik wel later komen. Ik ben van morgen vroeg op geweest, maar nu ga ik ook vroeg naar bed. Ik wil het hem niet zeggen, want ik houd er niet van, geheimen te verraden. Het zal mij wezenlijk veel genoegen doen, als ik morgen door dit werk been kom. Ik behoef mij daarover niet te schamen, dat ik met mijn eigen handen mijn brood verdien. Ik kan ervan zeggen, wat ik wil; gehoorzaamd word ik toch niet. Ik zou wel graag naar de kerk gaan, maar ik ben bang dat ik erg verkouden worden zal. Heb ik mij niet altijd fatsoenlik gedragen? Had ik mij ooit aan die familie opgedrongen? Had ik mij niet kunnen verrijken ten koste van mijn vrienden, en heb ik ooit iemand te kort gedaan? Wil ik eens gaan rijden, dan zadel ik zelf mijn paard, want ik houd er niet van de knecht altijd lastig te vallen voor mijn plezier.

9.

In the following exercise change the Infinitive form of the Verb into the required form of (1st) the Present Tense, (2nd) the Past, and (3rd) the Future of the Indicative Mood.

Mijn tante (geven) les aan vier kinderen; zij (doen) hun best en (maken) goede vorderingen. Er (zijn) een zware wolk op de berg; het (duren) niet meer lang of het (regenen). De trein (razen) en (rommelen), terwijl hij ons (voorbijvliegen). De mannen (werken) vandaag aan de weg; zij (rusten) en (gebruiken) hun middagmaal. Met welke boot (vertrekken) uw vriend naar Australië? Een jager (lopen) over het veld en (dragen) zijn geweer onder de arm. De kinderen (baden) zich eerst in de dam en (kleden) zich daarna aan. De zwaluw (zitten) op een tak en (fluiten) een vrolijk deuntje, terwijl zijn wijfje de eieren (broeden). Waarom (laden) de soldaat zijn geweer? Een hevig onweer (losbreken)
over de stad. De zon om zeven uur (ondergaan). De man
(graven) diep in de grond. De wind (suizen) door de
bomen en (doen) de dorre bladeren ritselen. De generaal
(handhaven) de eer van de republiek. Het gedrag van
mijn neef (mishagen) onze rektor. Onze tuinman
(leiden) water in de tuin. Het koper (verscheept wor-
den) te Port Nolloth. De luie kinderen (gestraft worden)
door de onderwijzer. Na een uur de pijn (óvergaan).

10.

Fill in the endings and complete the grammatical
forms in the following exercise.

De boer ploeg—, zaa— en eg— het land, en hoop—
dan op regen om het zaad te laat— groei—. De man en
zijn zoon zat— in de kar en reed— ons voorbij zonder
ons te merken. Toen wij ons van morgen in de rivier
wild— baad—, zaag— wij er een— groot— slang in
rondzwem—. Houd— u van warm— melk? De met-
selaar— heb— de muur— gepleister—. Wanneer word—
dit meel gemaal—? Had— uw neef zich niet zo ver ge-
waag—, hij zou zijn been niet gebroek— heb—. Hoor—
u die twee vogels, welk— daar boven in de boom zit— te
zing—? Hij ga— morgen verneem—, of hij kans heef—
de betrekking te krijg—. Wij kon— uw— broeder niet
overreed—, met ons mede te kom—. Deze boeken zou—
al uitgegeef— zijn, als de kist vroeg— bezorgd was. Uw—
ouders waar— zeer ongerus—, toen zij niets van u hoor—.
De boom— word— dit jaar niet gesnoei—. Door wie
zul— de proef— van dit werk gelees— wor—? Heef— hij
niet beloof— je te help—, als je in nood waar—? Waar—
on kom— hij nu zijn beloftte niet na? Hoelang waar—
vader en zoon gescheid— gewees—? Al de pad— in
ons— tuin zijn gegruis—. Het kind heef— maar drie
uur— geleef—, nadat het geval— was.
11.

In the following exercise change the Infinitive form of the Verb into (1st) the Present Perfect, and (2nd) the Future Perfect.

(Mind the use of the Auxiliaries hebben and zijn, § 1V, in the Perfect and Future Perfect.)


12.

Express the following in the Passive Voice (§ X, e 5).

De slager slacht de koe. De os trekt de ploeg. De ezel heeft de kar getrokken. De man had de hond

13.

Express the following in the Active Voice (§ X, c. 5).

Het huis zou door die metselaar gebouwd (geworden) zijn, indien ik eerder van die man gehoord had. De haas is door de jager neergeschoten (geworden), nadat hij door de hond opgejaagd was (geworden). Werden de paarden in vroegere eeuwen ook beslagen, of werd hun hoef toen niet beveiligd tegen de ruwe stenen, die toch altijd op de wegen gevonden worden? De muizen zouden in de val gevangen kunnen worden, indien er een stukje spek ingelegd werd. Er wordt gezegd, dat de mijn gesloten zal worden. Er werd gisteren avond laat aan de
deur geklopt. Er is mij vandaag een brief gezonden (geworden) door iemand, die mij geheel onbekend is. Door zulke hulp zal deze vrouw niet veel gebaat worden. De gehele dag werd daar piano gespeeld. Alle bomen waren door de tuinman verplant (geworden), zonder dat hem daarvan door mijn vader iets gezegd was (geworden). Het geld, dat door u verkwist wordt, zou gebruikt kunnen worden tot leniging van de nood van de armen, die in de omtrek gevonden worden. Dit onrecht zou u niet aangedaan (geworden) zijn, als ik hier geweest was. Er zijn hier in de laatste tijd veel paarden van edel ras ingevoerd (geworden). Door wie zijn deze woorden in mijn boek geschreven (geworden)? Door wie wordt nog aan zulke dwaasbeden geloofd?

14.

_In the following exercises put the Verbs in the tenses indicated:


15.

Use all Verbs reflexive, and in the tenses indicated (§ XIX):


16.

Substitute for the Infinitive forms whatever tense fits in with the context:

De bijbel (zeggen), dat die (Sing) niet werken (willen) ook niet eten (mijeten). Al (zijn) de leugen nog zo snel, de waarheid (achterhalen) hem wel. Het oog van de meester (maken) het paard vet. De ware wijsheid (wegen) zijn woorden; de zot (flappen) ze gedachteloos uit. Gisteren (lezen) ik een mooi boek. Van morgen (zeggen, § XV, Obs. 3) mijn vader mij dat hij een nieuw paard (kopen). Rome (verwoesten) Karthago. Julius Cæsar (zijn) een romeins veldheer. Als het morgen nog zo (regenen), ik thuis (mijten blijven). Waarom (zeg-
The verbal forms in the following exercises:

17.

Fill up the blanks and complete the verbal forms in the following exercises:


TRANSLATION EXERCISE No. 9.

1.


Tell the waiter to bring me a glass of water. Can you lend me some money? I have not enough with (bij) me to pay this bill. The distance is too long to walk, we shall have to (moeten) drive there (er heen). To have told (if one had told) the girl of her friend's death in her present weak state, (it) might have caused a serious relapse. Only one man escaped alive to tell the fearful tale. Go and tell Mr. B. that I (bij hem) will call at (op) his office at three o'clock this afternoon. To read good books (see Rule II, p. 109) improves the mind. It would have been pleasant to take a ride before sunrise this morning. Why don't you come to see me oftener? You know it is too cold now for me to go out. To (voor)
that poor woman to live would have been to suffer. Since my friends have gone to live in (the) town, I feel very lonely. Why did (are) you not come and tell me that you had no money to pay your tram fare? Can't you teach that boy to speak properly? To try is to succeed.

2.

[On § XV, The use of Tenses, and § IV, The use of the Auxiliaries hebben and zijn.]

While I was sweeping this morning, I found the lost ring. Did you tell the man not to go to the front door? I wonder (zou u wel eens willen weten) what (er) has become of my cousin, who left for America two years ago. When shall I see you again (Present tense)? To-day (over) fortnight. The French have gradually extended their power in Madagascar. My brother has just arrived in time for the concert. I have been walking about the whole morning, and feel very tired. Did you walk or drive to the station? I walked, because I found I had plenty of time. To-day week (over een week) we intend leaving for Natal. How did the fire originate? By the carelessness of a man who lit his pipe in the workshop, and dropped the burning match among the shavings. I have crossed the brook without the least trouble. There have been poor people at all times. How long has this company been in existence (existed)? It was (is) founded in 1886. These girls have grown very much since last I saw them. The accident would not have happened, if the guard had remained at his post. Since the boy's father died he has had to (moeten) provide for himself.

3.

[On §§ IX, X λ, β, c, The use of the Passive.]

The flowers are being planted by the gardener this morning. Has he been told where to plant them? Yes, I told him (that) they should be planted along the grass
border. All these exercises were (have been) corrected by the teacher this morning. This child is (being) punished for the second time today. If I had been warned in time, I should not have got into trouble. My room will be papered to-morrow. Did you think the child would be punished for not knowing (because he did not know) his lesson? He certainly ought to (behoorden) have been punished. I was present when the names of the applicants were (being) read out. If the new town hall had been built of hewn stone, it would look more imposing. If the murderer were found out, he would be hanged. The camel is found in the desert regions of Africa and Asia. Heavy firing was going on when I left the camp. Flowers should (behooren) not be picked while the sun is hot. Is enough wheat raised in this country to meet the demands of consumption? Was the boy told (had — been told) to attend to the horse?

4.

[On § X, a, b, and c, The use of zijn and worden.]

Translate into English:

Zou u tevreden geweest zijn, als men u de helft van uw loon (earnings) onthouden (kept back) had? Waarom werd de kerkklok van middag geluid (to ring)? Omdat een van de oudste bewoners van het dorp, die gestorven is, begraven werd. De boot zou gisteren avond al aangekomen zijn, als de wind niet zo tegen (contrary) geweest was. De bomen zijn van hun laatste bladeren beroofd (deprived) door de wind en regen van de laatste dagen. De lichten in de kerk waren om zes uur al aangestoken (lit). De kracht van de stoom is op zeer eenvoudige wijze door Sir Isaac Newton ontdekt. Is uw broeder reeds vertrokken? Is uw oom tot magistraat benoemd (appointed)? Is uw vriend bevoegd (qualified) tot het vervullen van zulke een gewichtige (important) betrekking (post)? Geschiedenis wordt in die school
niet uit boeken geleerd, maar alles wordt de kinderen verteld. Zijn al uw paarden beslagen (shod)? De bomen waren niet omgehakt, toen ik de grond kocht. Ik zou niet zo angstig geweest zijn, als mij niet verteld was, dat de spoorlijn door de zware regens op verscheidene plaatsen weggespoeld (washed away) was. De haas is door de jager neergeschoten, nadat hij door de hond opgejaagd was (had started him). Was de man niet ziek geworden, dan zou dit werk al lang klaar zijn.

5.

[On § X, A, B, and C, The different renderings of “to be” as a Copulative and an Auxiliary of Voice.]

Do not take the bread out of the oven, it is not sufficiently baked yet. All the cake has been eaten by the children. If there had been time, these boxes would have been labelled. The peculiar properties of the loadstone were known to the Chinese long before the compass was introduced into Europe by the Venetian traveller Marco Polo. If I had been called in time, I should not have been late for breakfast. The dictionary has been carefully revised, so that the new edition will be much improved. The child would have been delighted, if she had been asked to take part in the entertainment. During that severe winter all our rivers were frozen over, and there was a good deal of (er werd veel) skating and sledding (schaatsen gereden en geseled). The poor child was so frightfully burned that his life was despaired of from the first (van het begin af). The poor man would have been satisfied if he had only been told that his child was out of danger. There have been several fires on the mountains round about lately, and it is to be feared (to fear) that the wood about some of the fountains has been destroyed. Would you have believed this man to be (that ... was) capable of such a vile act?
6.

[On § XIV, The translation of the Pres. and Past Part.]

My father is very fond of walking. I saw the man picking up the letter. It is only by working from early morning till late at night, that the poor widow has been able to provide for her children thus far (tot nu toe). Early rising is conducive to (the) health. Thinking the child had gone with his father, the mother was not anxious at not finding him (when she did not find him) on (bij) her return home (thuiskomst). Crossing this bridge at night is very dangerous. Having lost the letter, the boy ran home in great distress. The young people spent the evening (met) dancing and playing games. Travelling in foreign countries is not only pleasant but instructive. Walking up St. John’s Street this morning, I met an old college friend of mine (see Chapter VIII, p. 188). Columbus supposed that (he), by sailing due west [he] would reach India. The boy not noticing that he kept making (continually (steeds) made) the same mistake, spent an hour trying to get his sum right. On hearing his father’s hard accusation the young man left the house in despair. The boys, not being aware of the depth of the river, were on the point of jumping in, when I called to them. What have you been doing this morning? I have been reading in my room. Have you ever heard Miss B. recite? My mother asks me to tell you, that she will come to see you before you leave. As a last resource the poor man has gone to work in the mines.

7.

[On § XII (b), and Note. The use of the Subjunctive Mood.]

Translate into Dutch, employing the Subjunctive Mood:

Had you done your duty, you would have been rewarded. However that be, I know that I cannot trust him.
Were he in better circumstances, he would not be so sad. If he had done right, he would have no fear. If I were your teacher, I should not allow it. Whatever may happen, I shall remain true to you. Be that as it may, I consider myself free to think as I choose. If he had only had a loving mother, he would not have been so reckless. If the doctor had a larger practice, he would be happier. That would never have occurred, had he had you to advise him. If every man were prudent and conscientious, there would be very little poverty. (The) Heaven grant that I may see my native country once more! God forbid that you should ever steal. May the king grant our urgent request! May South Africa once be one large united country!

8.

[On § XIX, and Chap. VIII, p. 186, Obs. 6, Reflexive Verbs and the use of self.]

My brother has hurt himself on the knee, while chopping down the old apple-tree at the back of (achter in) the garden. I find I have not been mistaken in the good opinion I had of that young girl. Fancy, when I came home this morning, I heard that my dog had died. Why do you want me to do (that I should do) a thing which you would not do yourself? When we were at the farm, we bathed in the large pond every morning before sunrise. Instead of repenting of his misdeeds, this young fellow boasts of (it) having (that he has) deceived his employer so cleverly. Are you going out this morning? No, I have changed my mind; I shall rather stay at home and prepare for the reading class this evening. You ought to be ashamed of yourself; this is the second time (that) you have failed in the examination. The pioneers who settled in Mashonaland have had to put up with many hardships. Before going out to a new country, these young people ought to have made sure of what opportunities they would have there of getting on. Don't you
remember (that) I told you at the time (that) you should hesitate to accept so much kindness from a mere stranger? I cannot understand why your brother did not complain of the unjust treatment he was undergoing at school (die hem aangedaan werd). He did not do so, because he would rather suffer himself, than bring disgrace on his schoolmates.

9.

[On § XXVI, Note 3, Compound Verbs changing their meaning according to the way the accent falls.]

Just (toch eens) weigh this letter over again, I am afraid it is overweight. My brother has been travelling all over Europe (doorreizen); and has brought a fine collection of views and curios from the different countries he has visited. Our gardener predicts (voorspellen) fine weather for to-morrow, and as the old man very rarely makes a mistake, I think we can safely arrange for the picnic. All these years this young girl has provided for her mother. The man seemed so convinced of the truth of my statement, that he walked away without uttering a (enkel) word in reply. When I returned to the study, I found that the inkpot had been upset over my work, and that the ink had penetrated (door . . . heengedrongen) (the) most of my papers, so that I had to write the greater (greatest) part of my work over again. It was quite touching to see the clerk, when my father told him that he would overlook his misdeed, and give him a chance to undo the past; the tears rushed to his eyes (him in the eyes), and he had the greatest difficulty to keep down his emotion. I have carefully considered the contents of this letter, but the (hoe) more I think of it (erover), the more (des te) convinced I feel (myself) that the report is much exaggerated. Many of the railway accidents that have happened in the course of this year might have been prevented, if the persons
responsible had simply done their duty. The sun was (aan het) setting as we reached home. The heavy rain-clouds were dispersing; the moon rose stately behind the pine-wood, and threw her soft light over the peaceful earth.

10.

[On § XXII, Impersonal Verbs.]

You must have been surprised not to see me at the station, since I made an appointment to meet you there; but as it was very windy and I had a bad cold, I could not venture out. I was very sorry, indeed, to miss my last opportunity of seeing you before your departure. It had been raining and blowing all (the whole) night, but in the morning the clouds parted, and the rising sun brought rest to nature and joy to man and beast. I have been instructed (to me is instructed) to inform you, that the council have (has) been pleased to accede to your request. It did strike me (insert 'wel') that your friend did not look well, but I had no idea (that) he was really ill. Of course you are free to do as you please, but it is so misty this evening, that I think it would be very risky for you to go out. I am grieved to hear you speak so disrespectfully of your teachers; even if they should be to blame (schuld hebben) in this matter, you have no right to speak like that (so). I was overtaken by such a severe thunderstorm on my way to the village, that I had to take shelter in a deserted hut that happened to be near (die zich gelukkig in de nabijheid bevond). I do not recollect ever to have witnessed such thunder and lightning. It struck me that the reading was particularly good at that school; it certainly reflects great credit on the teacher who has (the) charge of that particular branch of instruction. I do not know what is the matter with this tree, that it will not grow. My watch differs so much from the station-clock, that I very nearly
missed the train. It would have made a great difference to me, if I had had someone to show me how to do the work. He does not care if he has to work hard, as long as he earns enough to support his family.

II.

The English Verb “to mean” has various equivalents in Dutch.

1. *Menen*, in the sense of “to be disposed” and “to be in earnest”:

   *Hij meent het goed met zijn zoon*, he means well with his son.

   *Menent u wat u zegt?* do you mean what you say?

2. *Bedoelen* or *menen*, with the strength of “to wish to imply”:

   *Hij meende dat hij zelf wilde gaan*, he meant (by what he said) that he wanted to go himself.

   *U bedoelde het beter dan u het zei*, you meant it better than you said it.

3. *Betekenen*, with the force of Eng. “to signify”.

   *Het opsteken van een witte vlag betekent vrede*, the flying of a white flag means peace.

   *Het woord “erkentelijkheid” betekent “dankbaarheid”,* the word “gratitude” means “thankfulness”.

4. *Van plan zijn*, with the special meaning of “to intend”.

   *Ik was van plan de krant te gaan lezen*, I meant to go and read the paper.

   *Zij is van plan, mij dit present te geven*, she means to make me a present of this.

5. A special sense in which the Dutch *menen* is used, is that of “being of opinion”, on account of which it is in that sense commonly translated by “to think”:

   *Menent u, dat het te duur is?* do you think it too expensive?

The verb *menen*, so used, is always followed by a Noun sentence (Object).
If he meant al (that) he said, he would not be so kind to me. Do you mean, that you would rather be in the Transvaal than in Natal? The girls meant that they had not been in your garden, and had therefore not picked your flowers. The woman always meant (it) well with that ungrateful son of hers (of her). Did he really think it was too far for him to walk to Wellington? No, but he meant, I think, that his feet might (would perhaps) get (become) sore. I am sure (er zeker van) (that) he did not mean (that) his brother to (should) read his letters! It was a shame for him to do so (that he did it)! What did you think the word meant? O, I thought it meant something wrong, but my brother was of opinion that it had quite a different meaning. You knew that he meant it, did you not (niet waar)? What he means is that it is not right for you to (that you) go to such a place. I always meant to ask my father for the book, but whenever (wanneer ... ook) I saw him, I forgot it. It has meant a good deal (heel wat) to him, that his brother would not share the profit with him. You mean, the potatoes are too expensive? You had better ask your mother (vraag het maar eens aan); she knows more about (van) these (die) things than you do.

12. A.

Commit to memory the following idiomatic expressions:

I can give it.  
Ik kan het geven.
I could give it.  
Ik kon het geven.
I can have given it,  
Ik heb het kunnen geven.
I could have given it.  
Ik had het kunnen geven.
I shall be able to give it,  
Ik zal het kunnen geven.
I shall have been able to give it.  
Ik zal het hebben kunnen geven.

I could not get the book, even if I wanted to (zelfs niet al zou ik). You can get some (wat) apples for me, I hope! You could have got them yesterday, but now
they are all gone (weg). I shall not be able to ask my brother to-day, because he is not at home. He could send me some money, if he wanted to, but I believe (that) he does not want to (het niet wil). They cannot finish that work in a day! they could not finish it in a week! We could have come, if we had known that you were in (the) town.

12. B.

Likewise the following idiomatic expressions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Dutch</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Will he give it me?</td>
<td>Zal hij het mij geven?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Would he give it to me?</td>
<td>Zal hij het mij willen geven?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Will he have given it?</td>
<td>Zal hij het gegeven hebben?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Would he have given it?</td>
<td>Zou hij het hebben willen geven?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Can he give it to me?</td>
<td>Kan hij het mij geven?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Could he give it to me?</td>
<td>Zou hij het mij kunnen geven?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Can he have given it?</td>
<td>Heeft hij het kunnen geven?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Could he have given it?</td>
<td>Zal hij het hebben kunnen geven?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I could not have shown you the picture, if you had not been in the room. Do you think (that) he would give me a shilling, if I asked for it (erom)? Can he help me with my exercise? Yes, he could help you if he would. Would you not bring me a glass of water? Could they not do something for the poor woman? They could no doubt sing that song, if they only wanted to (wilden). How can that boy ever have given such a disrespectful answer? How
THE VERB

could your sisters have gone to (the) church without you? Would you take this letter to the post for me, my child? Yes, [I would], if I only knew where the post-office was. Would your father give you permission, do you think? How could he? I was (have been) out yesterday, and I may never go more than once a week. But, Jane, could you not sew on those buttons? I could even do it myself, I think! Could you? well, try then (het ecns). I am sure you cannot sew!

13. A.

Should, ought to, as translated by the Verb behoren (see page 204).

Learn the following:

He should say so, (Present) Hij behoorde het te zeggen.
He should have said so, (Past) Hij behoorde het gezegd te hebben.
Hij had het behoren te zeggen.

We ought to do as you say. You should not speak in (op) this way. My brother should have gone this morning. The butcher should have called today, but he has not done so (hct). Should he not state why he has been absent this morning? Should we not have said that we were very sorry that this had occurred? Why do you answer me like this?—you ought to be ashamed of yourself. A teacher ought to be careful about (met) praising his pupils. You should read that book, my friend; that would be better than to idle away your time in this way. Should our neighbours share the expense of building this wall, or have we to bear it all alone? He ought to apply to the government for a situation. You should have laid out your garden as I have laid out mine. She should not have been out on (such) a cold night [like that].
13. B.

"To have to? "to be to", "to be bound to" synonymous with "must", are translated by the verb moeten.

Learn the following:

- The boy has to (is to) work, De jongen moet werken.
- The boy had to (was to) work. De jongen moest werken.
- The boy has had to work (is to have worked). De jongen heeft moeten werken.
- The boy had had to work (was to have worked). De jongen had moeten werken.
- The boy will have to work, De jongen zal moeten werken.
- The boy will have had to work, De jongen zal hebben moeten werken.

If I am to do all this work before 12 o'clock, you must leave me in peace. The gardener will have to clear up all the rubbish before he goes. Will the boy have to say his lessons this afternoon, or tomorrow morning? It is hard to have to go [all] this (whole) way alone. Were you to take the letter to the post, or to the man's private house? I should have taken it to his house, but I put a stamp on it and posted it. You will be bound to acknowledge that I have done you no wrong. Would it do (go) to make (laten) him stay three nights a (per) week? It would hardly do, for he would have to go home all alone in the dark. You are not to go beyond the church—mind (hooir) what I say. If people were always to be punished for what they do wrong, there would be little pleasure in (the) life. You are to accompany your father to Europe, you said. Yes, but I do not like leaving mother alone. To have to work for one's daily bread is a pleasure to some people and a great hardship (verdriet) to others. It would have done him good to have had to practice strict obedience at the boarding school. Now [that] he is gone, I shall be bound to go as well.
14. A.

Commit to memory the following idiomatic expressions:

We make him say it, Wij laten het hem zeggen.
We made him say it, Wij lieten het hem zeggen.
We have made him say it, Wij hebben het hem laten zeggen.
We had made him say it, Wij hadden het hem laten zeggen.
We shall make him say it, Wij zullen het hem laten zeggen.
We shall have made him say it, Wij zullen het hem hebben laten zeggen.

We made the poor bird sing by whistling to it. Will you make the child write his exercise over again? He makes me laugh when he looks at (naar) me. If you do not lend me your pencil, so that I can put down the name you will make me forget the message. The sun makes the moon shine by night, and the moon again makes the stars glitter less brightly than they do on (in) clear but dark nights. The wind was so violent that it made the forest trees (trees in the forest) [to] tremble. We shall undoubtedly have made him confess before you come back. To make him go against his will, would be both unpleasant for him and awkward for us. If you do not learn your lessons for tomorrow, my child, I shall make you write them out.

14. B.

Learn likewise the following idioms:

I have the floor washed, Ik laat de vloer wassen.
I had the floor washed, Ik liet de vloer wassen.
I have had the floor washed, Ik heb de vloer laten wassen.
I had had the floor washed, Ik had de vloer laten wassen.
I shall have the floor washed, Ik zal de vloer laten wassen.
I shall have had the floor washed, Ik zal de vloer hebben laten wassen.
We have had this wall built, because the neighbours annoyed us. I shall have the books taken down and cleaned. You will have the watch seen to, will you not (niet waar)? Yes, I shall have it put right for you. He would have had his hair cut very short, if he had not been afraid of (voor) the cold weather. You had the garden dug up, you said. Yes, and we had the gardener search it well, but no trace of a box was found in the soil anywhere. Several countries, but especially France, used to (plachten) have their political prisoners work on galleys in former times. I hear you have found diamonds on your farm. Will you have the ground worked? I shall have a hole drilled, and the ground tested. But would you have a drill decide this matter? If I were you, I should certainly have a large hole dug and the soil washed. Tomorrow about this time we shall have the horses brought in, and start on our trip. I have had the boy saddle the horses; so if you care for a ride, we shall go—if not, I shall have them taken back to the stable.

14. C.

Learn once more the following idioms:

He likes (doing) it,  
Hij heeft of lust in (heeft lust het te doen).
He does not like doing it, 
Hij heeft geen lust, het te doen. 
He did not like doing it, 
Hij had geen lust, het te doen. 
He has not had the desire to do it, 
Hij heeft geen lust gehad, het te doen. 
He had not had the desire to do it, 
Hij had geen lust gehad het te doen. 
He won't like doing it, 
Hij zal geen lust hebben, het te doen. 
He won't have liked doing it, 
Hij zal geen lust gehad hebben, het te doen.

Charles does that work because he has to, but he does not like doing it. You did not like writing out the exercise, but you did it nevertheless. I like going on (with)
reading; may I mother? Yes, if you like (it), you may go on. Oh, I should like so much (zo'n lust hebben) to tell that man that he should stop writing me such letters! You would not like studying on, if you had spent so many years at school as I [have]! Wait till you have heard what I have to say, and then consider whether you would not like to go. (Of) Would I like it (er . . . in), you ask. Of course [I would]. She likes it, and that is sufficient reason for me to like it too. We did not like letting you know that we were going. Many a one does not like the work (which) (the) circumstances compel him to do. I should have liked better (meer) to be your secretary than to be a clerk in the civil service.

KONVERSATIE.
Reizen op Zee.

1. Ik wens u goede reis.
2. Dank u, maar ik ben een slechte op zee.
3. Ik hoop recht te genieten van de reis.
4. Zijn er veel passagiers?
5. Ik hoor dat iedere kajuit bezet is.
6. Wanneer vertrekt de boot?
7. Van middag om drie uur.
8. Ik kom u zien vertrekken.
9. Vriendelijk dank; houd u aan uw woord.
10. 't Is een prachtige boot.
11. Gewis, en de kajuiten zijn groot en luchtig.
12. Is u al in de salon geweest?
13. De tafel is gedeekt voor tachtig passagiers eerste klas.

CONVERSATION.
Travelling by Sea.

I wish you a pleasant voyage.
Thanks, but I am a very bad sailor.
I hope to enjoy the voyage immensely.
Are there many passengers?
I hear that every berth is taken.
When does the steamer leave?
This afternoon at three o'clock.
I shall come and see you off.
Thanks, be sure to keep your promise.
This is a splendid steamer.
Yes, and the cabins are large and airy.
Have you been in the saloon?
The table is laid for eighty first-class passengers.
I spend most of my time either on deck or in the smoking-room.
15. Is er een bibliotheek aan boord?
16. Ja, en de hofmeester heeft er de sleutel van.
17. Wie is de kapitein?
18. De kapitein heet Harris, en de eerste officier Crutchley.
19. Is dat de betaalmeester?
20. Neen, dat is de scheepsdokter.
22. Laat ons eens kijken, hoe ze de zware bagage in het ruim neerlaten.
23. Hoe effen is de zee!
24. 't Zal ruw zijn, als we de Sond oversteken.
25. Als we maar geen water scheppen, kan het mij niet schelen.
26. Kom mee naar voren; ik zou graag de akkomodatie zien voor de passagiers 2de en 3de klasse.
27. Het dek is te vol daar; kom liever mee naar de achterstern.
29. Dit is het kompas van het schip.
30. Hoe schommelt en slingert het schip!
31. Het behoorde meer ballast te hebben.
32. Zie die man eens in de top van de mast.
33. Vraag de machinist, ons de machinekamer te wijzen.
34. Heeft u ooit met een zeilschip gereisd?
35. Ik ben er eens mee het Kanaal overgestoken, maar ik kon niet zeggen dat het mij bevallen is.

Have they a library on board?
Yes, and the head-steward keeps the key.
Who is the captain?
The captain's name is Harris, and the chief officer is Mr. Crutchley.
Is that the purser?
No, that is the ship's doctor.
Those sailors are fine fellows.
Let us watch them lower the heavy luggage into the hold.
How very smooth the sea is!
We shall have it rough crossing the Sound.
As long as we do not ship sens I shall not mind.
Come forward; I want to see the accommodation for the 2nd and 3rd class passengers.
The deck is crowded there: rather come to the stern.
You must not speak to the man at the wheel.
This is the ship's compass.
How the ship rolls and pitches!
It wants more ballast.
Look at the man at the mast-head.
Ask the engineer to show us the engine room.
Have you ever gone by a sailing ship?
I once crossed the Channel in one, but I cannot say that I liked it.
Chapter X.

The Adverb.

(Het Bijwoord.)

1. What the Adjective is to the Noun, that the Adverb is to the Verb. As Adjectives express attributes and qualities of persons and things, so Adverbs express peculiarities marking an action. Adverbs are accordingly principally meant for (a) modifying Verbs, yet they may likewise (b) modify Adjectives, (c) Adverbs, and (d) even Nouns in some particular cases.

Examples:

(a) *Het kind leest goed*, the child reads well.
    *Het paard loopt hard*, the horse runs hard.
    *De vogel zit ginds*, the bird sits yonder.
    *Mijn dochter belooft veel*, my daughter promises much.

(b) *Dat is biezonder goed schrift*, that is particularly good writing.
    *Dit pakje schijnt ongemeen zwaar*, this parcel seems uncommonly heavy.
    *Uw begeerte wordt te sterk*, your desire is becoming too strong.

(c) *Ik had het lang tevoren gedaan*, I had done it long before.
    *Mijn zuster leest heel mooi*, my sister reads very well.
    *De zonnestralen vallen bijna loodrecht*, the sunbeams fall almost perpendicularly.
(d) *De mensen hierachter zijn zindelijk*, the people at the back are cleanly.

*Die steilte daar is gevaarlik*, that steep place there is dangerous.

Note.—The South African Dutch, which has only one Demonstrative Pronoun, *die*, avails itself of the Adverbs *hier* and *daar* to indicate that an object is close by or at a distance: *Hier die boek, en die ene daar;* Dutch: *Dit boek en dat,* this book and that one.

Observations.

1. The Copulative Verbs, i.e., those which take a Nominative case before and after them (zie, blijven, worden, hetcn, schijnen, lijken, blijken), are followed by Adjectives, and not Adverbs: *Hij schijnt rijk,* he seems to be rich; *Hij blijft trouw,* he remains faithful. Here the words *rich* and *faithful* evidently do not modify Verbs, and so are Adjectives.

2.—Other Verbs besides the Copulative may be followed by an Adjective instead of an Adverb: *De schilder verft het raam groen,* the painter paints the window green; *Het is die vriend, die hem zo slecht gemaakt heeft,* it is that friend who has made him so wicked. Here the colour *green,* and the quality *wicked,* evidently have nothing to do with the actions *painting* or *making.* It is the *window* which is *green,* and not the *painting;* likewise it is *he* that is wicked, and not the *making;* so that *green* and *wicked* are Adjectives, and not Adverbs.

II. The following are the kinds of Adverbs in use:

1. *Bijwoorden van Wijze,* Adverbs of Manner.
2. *Bijwoorden van Graad,* Adverbs of Degree.
3. *Bijwoorden van Getal,* Adverbs of Number.
4. *Bijwoorden van Plaats,* Adverbs of Place.
5. *Bijwoorden van Tijd,* Adverbs of Time.
8. *Samengetrokken Bijwoorden,* Compound Adverbs.

10. *Modale Bijwoorden*, Adverbs of Mood, divided into:

   (a) Adverbs of Affirmation (*Bevestiging*).
   (b) Adverbs of Negation (*Ontkenning*).
   (c) Adverbs of Doubt (*Twijfel*).
   (d) Optative (*Wensende*) Adverbs.

**Examples:**

1. **Adverbs of Manner**: _slecht_, badly; _schoon_, beautifully; _langzaam_, slowly. Every Adjective denoting a quality may be used as an Adverb of Manner without any change of form.

2. **Adverbs of Degree**: _genoeg_, enough; _uitermate_, exceedingly; _overtollijg_, excessively; _nauweliks_, scarcely; _bijna_, nearly; _biczonder_, especially; _zo_, so; _te_, too; _volkomen_, quite; _zeer_, very; _vreselijk_, terribly; _helemaal_, altogether; _erg_, very, etc.

3. **Adverbs of Number**: all the *Herhalingsgetallen* (see p. 175), and further—*ten eerste*, *ten tweede*, *ten derde*, *ten vierde*, *en z.*, first, second, third, fourth, etc.; *ten laatste*, lastly; *ten slotte*, finally. Likewise the S.A. Dutch expressions: _erstens_, _tweedens_, _derdens_, _en z._

4. **Adverbs of Place**: _af_, down; _rond_, about; _om_, round; _henen_, away; _voort_, on; _heen_, towards; _daarheen_, thither; _hervwaarts_, hither; _huiswaarts_, home; _berg op_, uphill; _berg af_, downhill; _noordwaarts_, northward; _naar boven_, upstairs; _naar beneden_, downstairs; _hier_, here; _in_, into; _nabij_, near; _ergens_, nowhere; _ergens_, somewhere; _overal_, everywhere; _ergens anders_, elsewhere; _boven_, above; _beneden_, beneath; _achter_, behind; _terzijde_, aside; _aan boord_, aboard; _aan wal_, ashore; _vooruit_, ahead; _ginds_,
yonder; *hier en daar*, here and there; *heinde en ver*, far and wide, etc. Also the Interrog. Adverbs *waar*, where; *waarheen*, whither; *vanwaar*, whence, etc.

**Note.**—A good many of these words may be used as Prepositions, but then they invariably take a Noun after them: *Hij liep de tuin uit en de kamer in* (*uit* and *in* Adverbs). He walked out of the garden and into the room; *De vogel zit in de boom* (*in* Prep.), the bird is in the tree.

5. **Adverbs of Time:**

   (a) Time, definite or indefinite: *nu*, now; *dan*, then; *heden*, today; *morgen*, tomorrow; *'s daags*, per diem; *'s nachts*, by night; *'s jaars*, per annum; *maandeliks*, every month; *van avond*, this evening; *tans*, now; *gisteren*, yesterday; *reeds*, already; *onlangs*, lately; *ooit*, ever; *nooit of nimmer*, never; *voorheen*, formerly; *weleer*, before; *nauurcliiks (nauw)*, scarcely; *straks*, just now; *intussen*, meanwhile; *verstdaugs*, one of these days, etc.

   (b) Duration of Time: *altijd*, always; *steeds*, constantly; *immer*, always; *voortaan*, henceforward; *onderwijl*, in the meantime; *van lieverlede*, in course of time; *sedert*, since.

   (c) Repetition of Time: *dikwels*, often; *vaak*, often; *zelden*, seldom; *telkens*, every now and then; *opnieuw*, once more; *sommen, sometimes*; *nu en dan*, now and then; *gewoonlik*, usually; *doorgaans*, commonly; *weder*, again; etc. *Wanneer*, when, is an Interr. Adverb of Time.

6. **Adverbs of Circumstance:** *gaarne*, willingly; *tevergeefs*, in vain; *tezamen*, together; *slechts*, only; *minstens*, at least; *voorts*, further, etc.

7. **Adverbs of Cause:** *daarom*, therefore; *derhalve*, on that account; *daartoe*, for that purpose; *vandaar*, that is why, etc.

**Interrogative:** *waarom*, why; *waartoe*, for what purpose; *weshalve*, on what account, etc.
8. Compound Adverbs (see their formation, p. 190); daarvan, of that; erin, in it; hieruit, out of this; ernee, with it; daaraan, on that; ervoor, for it, etc.

9. Adverbial Conjunctions: evenwel, however; toch, yet; niettemin, yet; nochtans, yet, nevertheless; desnietstegenaande, notwithstanding; integendeel, on the contrary; bijgevolg, consequently, etc.

10. Adverbs of Mood:

(a) Affirmation: ja, yes; wel, indeed; voorwaar, verily; immers (see example); volstrekt (see example); inderdaad, indeed; zeker, certainly; voorzeker, to be sure; gewis, undoubtedly; stellig, positively. The way in which “wel”, “immers”, and “volstrekt” are used, can be best gathered from the following sentences:

1. Hij heeft het wel gedaan, maar niet zoals ik het wilde, he did it indeed (or—no doubt; or—that’s true), but not as I wanted it. In this sentence place full stress on the word “gedaan”.

2. Ik heb u immers trouw gediend, I served you faithfully, did I not?

3. Hij wilde het volstrekt zo hebben, he was determined to have it so.

(b) Negation: neen, no; niet, not; geenszins, in no wise, not at all; volstrekt niet, not at all.

(c) Probability or doubt: misschien, perhaps; mogelijk, probably; wellicht, perhaps; vermocdelik, presumably; waarschijnlijk, probably; wel (see example).

Ex. Ik denk wel, dat hij thuis zal zijn, I rather think he will be at home. Put stress on “denk”.

(d) Wish: dan and toch.

Ex. Kom dan, waarom zouden wij wachten, do come, why should we wait? Zeg hem toch, dat hij haast moet maken, please tell him that he must make haste.
Observations.

1. Adverbs of manner (see par. II, 1) are for the greater part Adjectives used as Adverbs, without any change of form. The student is requested to note this fact. The Adverbial ending *lijk* (Eng. *ly*) exists in Dutch, but is now very little used. There are Adverbs which take it, not because it makes them Adverbs, but because it has been used in the formation of the Adjective from the Noun or a Verb; e.g., *moeiclik* is an Adverb, signifying "with difficulty"; but the Adjective "difficult" is translated likewise by *moeiclik*: *De oude man loopt moeiclik* (Adv.), the old man walks with difficulty; *Het is een moeiclik* (Adj.) *geval*, it is a difficult case. Adverbs used to be formed from existing Adjectives by the addition of *lijk*; now this is not admitted in colloquial language, though in high-flown style and in Bible language it is still done, as: *Wij hebben goddelooslik gehandeld*, we have done wickedly.

2. Adverbs never change their form. The Adverbs of Manner, however, take degrees of comparison, like Adjectives. (See Comparison, p. 155). The Superlative degree is always preceded by the Def. Article *het*.

Ex. *Mijn zoon werkt het vlijtigst*, my son works most diligently (of all).

*Uw dochter leert het best*, your daughter learns best (of all).

*Mijn borst plaatg mij's winters het meest*, my chest troubles me most in winter.

3. The following Adverbs are irregularly compared:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Slecht</em>, badly,</td>
<td><em>gerger</em>,</td>
<td><em>het ergst</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Veel</em>, many a time,</td>
<td><em>meer</em>, more,</td>
<td><em>het meest</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Weinig</em>, a few times,</td>
<td><em>minder</em>,</td>
<td><em>het minst</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Vroeg</em>, early,</td>
<td><em>eerder</em>,</td>
<td><em>het eerst</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Dikwels</em>, often,</td>
<td><em>meerermalen</em>,</td>
<td><em>het meest</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Gauwrne</em>, willingly,</td>
<td><em>liever</em>,</td>
<td><em>het liefst</em>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Note 1. *Het eerst*, or *eerst*, *het laatst*, or *laatst*, *het best*, or *best*, *het liefst*, or *liefst*, are used with different meanings, as follows:

Compare: *Ik was het eerst op school*, I was the first at school, with—*Ik was eerst op school en daarna in het museum*, I was first at school, and then at the museum.

Compare: *Mijn broeder kwam het laatst boren*, my brother was the last to come upstairs, with—*Mijn broeder bezocht laatst de mijnen*, my brother visited the mines some time ago.

Compare: *Dit meisje leert het best*, this little girl learns best of all, with—*Deze jongen kan best naar het dorp gaan*, this boy can very well go to the village.

Compare: *De man heeft zijn kind het liefst bij zich*, the man prefers having his child with him, with—*Ik zou van avond liefst niet uitgaan*, I would rather not go out this evening.

Note 2. Some Adverbs of manner are formed from Adjectives by the diminutive ending *je* followed by an Adverbial final *s*: *zoet*, sweet; *zoetjes*, nicely, softly; *stil*, quiet; *stilletjes*, quietly, etc. Such Adverbs do not take any degrees of comparison. The Cape expression: *Sla de bal zoetjes*, strike the ball more softly, is absurd. The Adverb "*wel*" has a similar form: *zij is welletjes*, she is middling (her health is fair).

III. The meaning and use of the following Adverbs require special notice:

1. *Noch* is neither; *nog*, yet, or still. *Noch hij noch zijn broeder is hier geweest*, neither he nor his brother has been here. *Hij leeft nog*, he is still living.
2. a. Zelden, rarely (seldom), is only an Adverb, and never an Adjective: Wij zien onze broeder zelden, we seldom see our brother.

2. b. Zeldzaam, rare, wrongly used in the place of zelden, is an Adjective and not an Adverb: Volkomen zwarte katten zijn zeldzaam, perfectly black cats are rare. The South African Dutch replaces this word by schaars.

3. a. Heen is an Adverb of place, indicating direction towards an object: Waar gaat u morgen heen? whither do you go tomorrow? Mijn plan is van middag nergens heen te gaan, my intention is, not to go anywhere this afternoon.

3. b. Heen is an Adverb, indicating motion from a place: Ga niet heen voó r het donker is, do not go away before dark. In speaking this difference is scarcely ever observed, heen being used for both.

4. a. Immer, ever, and nimmer, never, point to a future time: Zal ik u immer wederzien? Shall I ever see you again? Hij zal ons nimmer beschamen! He will never put us to shame!

4. b. Ooit, ever, refers only to the past: Heb ik ooit in mijn leven zo iets gezien? Did I ever see such a thing in my life?

4. c. Nooit, never, may indicate a past or a future time: Ik heb mij nooit met zo iets beziggehouden, en ik zal er mij nooit mee bezighouden, I have never occupied myself with such a thing, nor shall I ever occupy myself with it.

5. Wijlen, late, is an Adverb of time taking its place before the name of a person: Wijlen de Graaf van Chambord, the late Count Chambord.
6. *Met*, a Preposition (the Adverbial form of which is *mede*), may be used as an Adverb of time: *Met dat hij binnenkwam, hield het geraas op*, the moment he came in, the noise stopped.

7. *Kwansuis* (Cape pronunciation: *konsuis*) sometimes written *kwanswijs*, a word found in several of the Saxon languages, means “as it were”, or, “pretending”, e.g.: Omdat de jongen lust had in een van de lekkere appels, liet hij kwansuis het geld vallen, om de aandacht van zijn tante af te leiden, because the boy longed for one of the nice apples, he (as it were by mistake) dropped the money, in order to divert his aunt’s attention.

8. *Averechts* (a compound of *af*, from, and *recht*, right, with an Adverbial *s*) means in the wrong direction. *Zij breit de ene toer recht, en de andere averechts*, she knits one round plain and the next purl.

9. *Af* and *toe* are Adverbs, and hence cannot be used before Nouns like the corresponding Prepositions *van* and *tot*: *het kind viel de trap af*, the child fell down the stairs, and, *het kind viel van de trap*, the child fell from the stairs. *De hond liep naar mij toe*, the dog ran up to me, and, *de man kwam tot mij*, the man came to me.

10. *Goed* translates the English Adverb “well”, as: *zij zingt goed*, she sings well. *Wel* is used with reference to the state of one’s health, as: *het kind is niet wel*, the child is not well; also as an Adverb of mood (see p. 291).

11. *Mede*, the common form of which is *mee*, is used as a prefix to a great many Verbs which have no exact equivalents in English. *Medegaan*, to go with (one); *mededoen*, to take part (participate) in; *ga je ook mee?* will you also go (along)? *Doe je er aan mee?* do you take part too? *Kom mee*, come with me (us). The South African Dutch has replaced *mede* (*mee*) by *saam*.
12. The use of the Adverbs *af* and *neer*, both meaning “down”, which are found in composition with many everyday Verbs, requires special attention.

1. Use *af*, when “motion from an object” is the prominent idea.

2. Use *neer*, when “motion towards an object” is the prominent idea.

**Examples of 1:**

*Hij kwam van zijn paard af*, he got down from his horse.

*Hij viel van het dak af*, he fell from the roof.

*De vogel vliegt van de boom af*, the bird flies down from the tree.

*De jongen trekt de vlieg een poot af*, the boy pulls one of the fly’s legs off.

**Examples of 2:**

*Hij kwam op de vloer neer*, he came down on the floor.

*Hij valt bij de stoel neer*, he falls down at the chair.

*De jager schoot de bok neer*, the hunter shot down the buck.

*Ik trek het gordijn neer*, I draw the curtain down.

Consequently, when separation is to be indicated, *af* should be taken: *Hij sloeg hem het hoofd af*, he cut his head off.

When a directly downward motion must be expressed, *neer* is used: *De regen valt uit de wolken neer*, the rain falls from the clouds.

Downward motion, along a slope, is expressed by *af*: *Hij loopt de trap af*, he goes down the stairs.

Motion resulting in rest upon an object, is expressed by *neer* only: *Ik legde hem op het bed neer*, I laid him down on the bed.
GRAMMAR EXERCISES.—Taaloefteningen.

1.

Fill up the blanks with appropriate Adverbs:


2.

Give the Dutch Adverbs for the English words:

Als deze man niet so terribly lui was, zouden wij hem certainly werk gegeven hebben. Toen het amerikaansche schip here in de baai lag, ben ik abroad geweest. By night zijn alle katten grauw. Ik ben yesterday ziek geweest, for that reason dat ik mijn lessen not geleerd heb. Het kind zal in course of time aan zijn nieuwe omgeving gewoond worden. Het bericht van de overwinning was in weinige uren far and wide verbreid. De
inspekteur zal one of these days de school bezoeken. Of­
schoon zijn vader hem strictly verboden had, to-night uit

tea gaan, deed hij het yet. Ik heb everywhere naar mijn
pen gezocht; ik heb hem this morning somewhere neer,
gelegd, maar ik kan mij not at all herinneren where. Ik
lees usually mijn koerant in the evening. Heeft u indeed
never geweten, why uw vader thither gegaan is? Dit
boek is exceedingly vervelend. For what purpose geeft
hij zich zoveel moeite? De kinderen vermaakten zich
especially well; en merrily keerden allen home. Hence­
forward zullen de boten every week varen.

TRANSLATION EXERCISE No. 10.

1.

Translate the following (minding especially § II (1), and
Obs, 1, 2, 3; also § III).

All these roses blossom a long time, but that one yonder
blossoms longest of all. Notwithstanding the heavy rains,
the troops marched courageously onward. I would rather
not tell you why he prefers going tomorrow. The seasons
are caused by the annual rotation of the earth round the
sun. My father visits his old friend daily. They will
have to act very cautiously in that matter. Of all the
young ladies that sang last night, I liked (beviel mij)
your niece's voice best. Whoever comes in last, should
close the door. When I was in (the) town some time
ago, I called on Mrs. B. This girl can very well learn
this piece of poetry, but won't recite it best of all. Please,
let the blind down a little, the sun is shining right in my
face (me right in the face). The price of wheat has
considerably fallen lately. The unfortunate man must
have dropped asleep near the edge of the precipice, and
must have fallen down in his sleep. Don't jump down
from that height; you will hurt yourself. The children
amused themselves by \((\text{met})\) running up and down the sand-hills. The young bride is a relative of the late President Brand. I told you, didn’t I, that the stamp was a very rare one, and that you should not give it away; you will never get such a one again. I got up half an hour after you, and yet I was downstairs earlier than you. The children ran up to their teacher, and wished him many happy returns of the day (geluk met zijn verjaardag).

2.

Note.—\(\text{Na}\), “after”, is a Preposition expressing time, and rank, or order.

\begin{itemize}
  \item Zijn broeder is na hem gestorven, his brother died after him.
  \item Na het zingen kwam de preek, on the singing followed the sermon.
\end{itemize}

\(\text{Nadat}\), “after”, is an Adverbial Conjunction, connecting two sentences:

\begin{itemize}
  \item Hij kwam, nadat zijn broeder vertrokken was, he came after his brother had gone.
  \item Nadat hij dit gezegd had, ging hij zitten, after he had said so, he sat down.
\end{itemize}

\(\text{Daarna}\) is the Dutch equivalent for “after that (afterwards)”.  

\(\text{Ik vroeg hem eerst en antwoordde u daarna, I asked him first, and answered you afterwards.}\)

It may be replaced by \(\text{dan}\), with the Present and Future tenses, and by \(\text{toen}\) with the Past Tense:

\begin{itemize}
  \item Ik vraag het hem, en vertel het u dan, I ask him and then tell you.
  \item Ik zal het hem vragen, en u dan vertellen, I shall ask him, and then tell you.
  \item Ik vroeg het hem eerst, en vertelde het u toen, I asked him first, and then told you.
\end{itemize}

After I had finished my drawing, I packed my box and went \((\text{naar})\) home. The ship arrived after you had left. His brother died just after his arrival. After this rain we shall have fine weather. I invited my parents first,
and afterwards my uncle as well (too). Let me eat first, and then I shall speak (met) to you. He sat down (ging zitten) on that chair there, and shortly after he fainted. I promise to take him in after he is discharged from (uit) (the) prison. Who would first sow, and then plough? Is it not natural, first to plough, and then to sow? You saw him after he had written his letter. After the rain had stopped, we went out for a walk (wandelen). You should not say no, after you had once said yes. He told me of all the pain he had suffered, and then he fell into a quiet sleep. I shall have the boy wash the floor after he comes back from the butcher’s (butcher). After my father had started for Europe, my mother became very ill. He came to East London shortly after the third Kaffir war. After you, please, madam! After a day’s (day of) hard work it is pleasant to have some music. Who shall say that (er) after this cruel war there won’t be a long spell (tijdperk) of peace in these parts (streek)?

3.

Note.—“To put” is translated by “leggen”, “zetten”, “steken”, “doen”, “plaatsen”.

Use leggen, whenever an object is to be placed on its broad side:

Ik heb dat boek op de tafel gelegd. I have put that book on the table.

Use zetten, whenever an object is to be placed on end:

Ik heb het boek op de plank gezet. I have put the book on the shelf.

Use steken, whenever an object is passed through a narrow opening:

Steek uw zakdoek in uw zak, put your handkerchief into your pocket.

Steek de draad door de naald, thread the needle.

Use doen for “putting into,” “passing through”:

Hij deed de brieven in een zak, he put the letters into a bag.
Compare: *Ik steek het geld in mijn zak,* I put the money into my pocket;

with: *Ik doe het geld in mijn beurs,* I put the money into my purse.

"To put on" and "to take off" clothing, should be translated by *aandoen,* and *afdoen,* when there is no passing of limbs into or out of such garments:

*Hij doet zijn boord, zijn das, zijn mantel aan,* he puts on his collar, his neck-tie, his cloak.

*Hij deed zijn manchetten, zijn kappen af,* he took off his cuffs, his stockings.

But when there is such passing, *aantrekken* and *uittrekken* are used:

*Trek uw jas, uw schoenen aan,* put on your coat, your boots.

*Hij trekt zijn handschoenen, zijn kousen uit,* he takes off his gloves, his stockings.

*Of* aprons, veils, etc, *voordoen* and *afdoen* are used: of hats, *opzetten* and *afzetten.*

*Plaatsen,* English "to place," is used for Dutch *zetten* in more formal expressions.

For the many other and varied meanings of "to put", a translation of the synonym which applies best to the action is advisable.

*Ik leg (wrote) het in het boek op.*

*I zei het hem rechtuit.*

*I zal dat geld voor u wegbergen.*

Will you put the inkpot on the table for me? I have put the inkpot there, and I have also put the paper on your desk. They put a bucket under the spout to catch the rain-water. Let us put our clothes into our boxes. Put a chair ready for your uncle; he will be here directly. The man put the horse into the stable, and put the cart
into the waggon-house. Have you put sugar in my tea? Yes, and I have also put in (it) milk. The boy had a number of marbles which he quickly put into his pocket. Put on (om) a shawl, it is cold. Must I put on a veil too? No, you need not put on a veil, as long as (als ... maar) you put on gloves. Don’t put sheep and oxen into one fold. Take off your hat and your boots too. Shall I put on my slippers? Yes, and take off that heavy coat; I shall (er) bring you a light one. Put away your books, the teacher is coming. Jane had a bird which she had put in a cage. I have put the cups on the table in the kitchen. And where have you put the meat? I have put the meat into the sideboard.

4.

What is your salary? I get three hundred pounds sterling per annum, which makes exactly twenty-five pounds per month. Is your salary paid out monthly? We can get it by the month, or at the end of every three months, just as we like it best. Every other day (om de andere dag) we drive down to yonder farm; it is so very pleasant to be there. At 7 p.m. (n.m.—in de namiddag) the train starts for (naar) Edinburgh where it is due (hij aankomt) at 5 a.m. (v.m.—in de voormiddag). We do not intend being (trans. to be) out all (the) morning; before noon (trans. at 12 o’clock) we shall be back. He came just in time to see the balloon rise. What a grand sight it was! I think I should like to go up some time (eens); it must be glorious to be drifting about in the air, and to see the beautiful earth at such a distance. Last night somebody called (trans. has called) on me; I am so sorry that I was not at home. Next week we have to part, and next month, just about this time, we shall be in different parts of the globe. Will you be back in a fortnight? I cannot tell (it) you at present. About a week ago I met my uncle and three of my cousins (fem.) at a railway station near Dartmouth.
KONVERSATIE.

Over verschillende Ambachtslieden.

1. Er moet een ruit in dit venster gezet worden; haal een glazemaker om het te doen.
2. Vraag hem, dit stuk hout voor mij te zagen, en leen mij een boor om een gat te maken.
3. Heeft u nog andere werk- tuigen nodig?
4. Ja, breng mij als 't u blieft een schroefdraaier, een hamer, een schaaf, en wat grote spijkers met koppen; ook wat tin- nen nageltjes.
5. Dat uithangbord is slecht geschilderd; de schilder was maar een leerjongen.
7. Leien of dakpannen worden hier zelden voor dat doel gebruikt.
8. Richt daken zijn boven alle andere te verkorzen.
9. De metselaar, die die muur gebouwd heeft, moet slechte kalk gehad hebben.
10. Vraag de straatmaker wat hij rekent zou voor het bestraten van de achterplaats.
11. Deze laden moeten naar een schrijnwerker gaan om nagezien te worden.
12. De kuiper zal het vat repareren, er hoepels om slaan en het oversturen.

CONVERSATION.

About various Artisans.

This window needs a pane of glass; call a glazier to put one in.

Ask him to saw this piece of wood for me, and lend me a gimlet to bore a hole.

Do you require any other tools?

Yes, please bring me a screwdriver, a hammer, a plane, and some large brassheaded nails; also a few tin tacks.

That sign-board is badly painted; the painter was only an apprentice.

Show me some corrugated iron for roofing.

Slate or tiles are seldom used for that purpose here.

Thatched roofs are to be preferred to all other.

The bricklayer who built that wall, must have had bad mortar.

Ask the pavior what he would charge for paving the yard.

These drawers must be taken to a cabinetmaker to be mended.

The cooper will repair the cask, hoop it, and send it across.
13. Heeft u hem gesproken over de duigen en de bodem?

14. De smid legde het ijzer op het aanbeeld, en smeedde het terwijl het heet was.

15. Deze waterkan lekt; breng hem naar de blikslager en laat hem solderen.

16. De smid kan de kofschop en pook repareren.

17. De schelpdraad is gebroken; waar kan ik een belleider vinden?

18. Ik heb deze voorsnijmessen bij de nussemaker in de L-straat gekocht.

19. Hoe mooi zijn de poten van die tafel gedraaid! Heeft u al een draaitank gezien?

20. Laat ons naar de schrijnwerker gaan, en wat lijm en een paar krullen vragen.

21. Die schilder is beroemd; prins Alexander heeft zijn laatste schilderij gekocht.

22. Dat houtsnijwerk is uitmuntend gedaan. Wie is de beeldhouwer?

23. Mijnheer N.; hij heeft het opschrift op die grafsteen gemaakt.

24. Deze messen en scharen zijn niet scherp; breng ze naar een scharrelijper, als 't u blieft.

Did you tell him about the staves and the bottom?

The blacksmith laid the iron on the anvil, and struck it while it was hot.

This water-can leaks; take it to the tinsmith and have it soldered.

The blacksmith can repair the coal-scuttle and fire-irons.

The bell-wire is broken; where can one find a bell-hanger?

I bought these carving-knives at the cutler's in L-Street.

How beautifully the legs of that table are turned.

Have you seen a turning lathe?

Let us go to the joiner's and ask for some glue and a few shavings.

That artist is celebrated;

Prince Alexander bought his last painting.

That carving is exquisitely done. Who is the sculptor?

Mr. N.; he did the engraving on that tombstone.

These knives and scissors are not sharp; please take them to a grinder.
THE PREPOSITION

CHAPTER XI.

THE PREPOSITION.

(Het Voorzetsel.)

I. Prepositions, Voorzetsels, are real particles, i.e. in­declinable words. They may have different meanings ac­cording to the various relations between actions, persons, and objects which they are made use of to express. One of the two Nouns between which a Preposition takes its place in a sentence, is the name of the person or thing to which attention is chiefly drawn, whereas the other Noun serves to indicate in what relation or position that principal person or thing is placed. In the sentence for instance: de hond is in zijn kook, the dog is in its kennel, the dog is the principal thing spoken about, whereas kennel is used to define the place the dog occupies. Any such defining Noun is under the direct influence of the Preposition that precedes it, and is said to be "governed" by it.

II. The usual place of Prepositions is before the Nouns they govern: Wij speelden op de plaats. we played in the yard; De vogels zaten in de kooi, the birds sat in the cage.

Observation.—Halve and wegen are placed after the Nouns or Pronouns with which they stand, forming one word with them: mijnentwege, for my sake; ucentwege, for your sake; zijntenwege, for his sake; veiligheidshalve, for the sake of safety.

Note.—Halve means "side", and wegen, like weg, is from the Verb wegen, which originally meant bewegen, to move.
III. Formerly Prepositions, and words used as such, governed different cases, i.e., required either the Genitive, Dative, or Accusative case of the Noun after them.

Now, however, one common rule applies to every Preposition, viz., that it governs the Accusative case—and the obsolete use of the Genitive and Dative cases is only discernible in some expressions, few in number, yet sufficient to remind us of what once was.

Examples.—Feminine Dative: uitermate (uit der mate), exceedingly; bij der hand, close at hand; metter-tijd, in time; uitter oge, uitter herte, out of sight, out of mind; ter ore komen, to come to one's notice; ter feest gaan, to go to a feast.

Neuter Dative: in den beginne, in the beginning; van gooden huizc, of good family; ten top stijgen, to reach the highest point; met dien verstande, with this understanding; bij levenden lijve, alive.

Neuter Genitive: binnenshuis, inside (the house); buitenslands, abroad; tussendeks, between decks.

Masculine Genitive; buitenstijds, out of season; binnensmonds, mutteringingly.

Note.—Ten and tcr are contractions of to den and te dcr.

IV. The relations pointed out by Prepositions may be:

1. A relation of place
   a. Rest in a place.
   b. Motion to or from a place.


3. An abstract relation expressing a cause, an object in view, etc.

4. A positive or negative connection.
1. **Rest in a place** is indicated by: *boven*, above; *onder*, under; *buiten*, outside; *binnen*, inside; *nabij*, near; *naast*, next to; *aan*, at; *te*, at; *in*, in; *op*, on; *tussen*, between; *tegen*, against, etc.

**Motion to or from a place** is indicated by: *over*, over; *van*, from; *naar*, towards; *tot aan*, as far as; *langs*, along; *rond*, round; * rondom*, round about; *voorbij*, past; etc.

**Observation.**—Notice the following sentences:

*Hij loopt in de school*, he walks about in the school (*in* = Prep.).

*Hij loopt de school in*, he walks into the school (*in* = Adverb).

*De koeien grazen op de weide*, the cows are grazing in the meadow (*op* = Prep.).

*Zij klimmen de berg op*, they climb the mountain (*op* = Adverb).

*Ik lees uit Homerus*, I read from Homer (*uit* = Prep.).

*Ik las het geheele boek die avond uit*, I read through the whole of the book that night (*uit* = Adverb).

2. **A relation of Time** is indicated by: *in*, in; *binnen*, within; *omstreeks*, about; *bij*, near by; *om*, at; *over*, past, in; *aan*, on; *tegen*, towards; *voor*, for; *tussen*, between; *tot*, to; *sedert*, since; *gedurig*, during.

3. **An abstract relation of Cause**, etc., is expressed by: *door*, by; *voor*, for; *uit kracht van*, by virtue of; *ten spijt van*, in spite of; *naar gelang van*, according to; *in wecrwil van*, in spite of; *aangaande*, touching; *wegen*, on account of; *betreffende*, touching; *aangezien*, for as much as; *ter oorzake van*, on account of; *ten gevolge van*, in consequence of; *in tegenstelling van*, in opposition to; *in vergelijking van*, in comparison to; *ter wille van*, for the sake of; *instead van*, instead of; *ten behoeve van*, on behalf of; *overeenkomstig met*, conformably to.
4. A Positive connection is expressed by: *met*, with; *benevens*, together with; a Negative connection by: *zonder*, without; *uitgenomen*, except; *behalve*, except.

5. *Na*, after, indicates time; *naar*, towards, indicates direction. *Hij kwam na mij*, he came after me; *ik ga naar Engeland*, I am going to England.

Note.—*Achter* is used in Cape Dutch to express a relation of time. *Hij kwam daar achter mij*, he came there after me.

VI. Prepositions used for indicating different relations.

**AAN.**

1. Rest in a place: *De stad ligt aan zee*, the town lies on the sea-coast.

2. With *gaan*, indicating a beginning: *De vogel gaat aan 't vliegen*, the bird begins to fly.


**VAN.**

1. Instead of the Possessive case: *Dit is de lei van mijn broeder*, this is my brother’s slate.


**DOOR.**

1. Meaning through: *De kogel ging door het huis*, the bullet went through the house.

2. Meaning by: *Door uw vermogen is u in staat, veel goed te doen*, by your means you are able to do a great deal of good.
3. Meaning **with**: *Door uw vriendelijke hulp is het mij gelukt*, with your kind assistance I have succeeded.

4. Meaning **throughout**: *Door alle landen zal het gehoord worden*, it will be heard throughout every country.

**BIJ.**

1. Meaning **by**: *Bij geval*, by chance; *bij beurten*, by turns; *bij nacht*, by night; *dicht bij*, close by; *bij lamplicht*, by lamplight; *bij ongeluk*, by accident.

2. Meaning **near, nearly**: *Het is bij tweeën*, it is close upon two o'clock; *Zijn huis is bij het kerkhof*, his house is near the churchyard; *Mijn grootmoeder is bij de tachtig*, my grandmother is nearly eighty years of age.

3. Meaning **with**: *Zij logeert een week bij ons*, she is staying with us for a week; *Heeft hij geld bij zich?* has he any money about him?

4. Meaning **to**: *Kom bij mij, lief kind!* come to me, my dear child!

5. Meaning **about**: *Hij kwam eerst bij twaalfen*, he only came about twelve o'clock.

**ONDER.**

1. Meaning **among**: *Dat is zo de gewoonte onder soldaten*, that is the custom among soldiers.

2. Meaning **during**: *Onder het ontbijt wordt ons altijd iets voorgelezen*, during breakfast we have always something read to us.

3. Meaning **under**: *Die boot kan geheel onder water gebracht worden*, that boat can be completely submerged.

4. Meaning **amongst**: *De rovers verdeelden de buit onder elkander*, the robbers divided the spoil amongst them.
5. Indicating a time: Onder de lange regering van Keizer Wilhelm I., during the long reign of the emperor Wilhelm I.

**OP.**

May be translated by “upon”, “on”, “in”, “after”, “at”, “with”, “but”, “into”, “to”.

1. Upon: Hij legt het ene boek op het andere, he places one book upon another; Op mijn woord ik weet het niet, upon my word I don’t know.

2. On: Ik ontmoette hem eerst op een Maandag en daarna op een Woensdag, I met him first on a Monday and then on a Wednesday.

3. In: Doe het eens op een andere manier, just try it in a different way.

4. After: Hij kleedt zich op zijn Duits, he dresses à la German.

5. At: Op uw verzoek zal ik gaan, I shall go at your request.

6. With: Mijn vader is waarlijk boos op mij, my father is indeed angry with me.

7. But: Alle kinderen op één na zijn dood, all the children but one are dead.

8. Into: Die fraaie hoed zal ik u op de koop toe geven, I shall throw that pretty hat into the bargain.

9. To: Weet u, dat we op soepee gevraagd zijn? do you know that we have been invited to supper?

**NAAR.**

1. Meaning to, towards: Mijn plan is, morgen naar mijn stil dorp terug te gaan, my intention is to return to my quiet village to-morrow; De vogels vliegen naar de kust, the birds are flying towards the shore.
THE PREPOSITION

2. Meaning from: Dat is naar de natuur getekend, that is drawn from nature.

3. Meaning according to: Ik heb gehandeld naar mijn overtuiging, I acted according to my conviction.

4. Meaning about: Hij doet er onderzoek naar, he is making enquiries about it.


6. Meaning after: Hij kleedt zich naar de duitse mode, he dresses after the German fashion.

OM.

1. Indicating a place: Er is een heining om de tuin, there is a fence round the garden.

2. Indicating a time: Hij gaat om de veertien dagen naar huis, he goes home every fortnight; de vergadering begint om zeven uur, the meeting begins at 7 o'clock.

3. Preceding the Infinitive of a Verb: Hij doet het alleen om te plagen, he just does it to tease; Ik ben gekomen om onze rekening te vereffenen, I have come to square our account.


5. Meaning up: Uw bepaalde tijd is om, your fixed time is up.

UIT.

1. Meaning out: Zal hij ooit uit de moeite komen? will he ever be out of trouble?

2. Meaning from: Hij komt uit de kerk, he is coming from church.

3. Meaning out of: Uit oprechte liefde, out of real love.
VII. Preposition-Verbs requiring for the greater part different prepositions in Dutch from those by which they are followed in English, a list is here appended from which those which occur most frequently may be learned.

List of Preposition-Verbs with unlike Prepositions in English and Dutch.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dutch Verb</th>
<th>English Meaning</th>
<th>Dutch Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aanbercelen aan</td>
<td>to recommend</td>
<td>(zich) beroemen to boast of.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aandringen op</td>
<td>,, insist on.</td>
<td>op,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aankomen te,</td>
<td>,, arrive at.</td>
<td>(zich) beroepen ,, appeal to.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aanvraag doen on</td>
<td>,, apply for.</td>
<td>op.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aanzien</td>
<td>,, look at.</td>
<td>berouw hebben ,, regret.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aanzoeken doen om</td>
<td>,, make application for.</td>
<td>berusten van, ,, burst with.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acht geven op</td>
<td>,, pay attention to.</td>
<td>berucht zijn ,, be notorious for.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adresseren aan</td>
<td>,, address to.</td>
<td>beschandaal zijn over, ,, be ashamed of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adresseren naar</td>
<td>,, label for.</td>
<td>beschermen tegen, ,, protect from.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>afgaan op</td>
<td>,, go by.</td>
<td>beschikken over, ,, dispose of.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>afhangen van</td>
<td>,, depend on.</td>
<td>bestaan uit, ,, consist of.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>afvrijen van</td>
<td>,, depart from.</td>
<td>bestand zijn tegen, ,, be proof against.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>antwoorden op</td>
<td>,, reply to.</td>
<td>bostedden aan, ,, bestow upon.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beamen</td>
<td>,, insist on.</td>
<td>beren van, ,, tremble with.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beboetenen met.</td>
<td>,, fine.</td>
<td>beroeps zijn tot, ,, be qualified for.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(zich) bedienen van</td>
<td>,, make use of.</td>
<td>bevreesd zijn voor, ,, be afraid of.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(zich) bedreven over</td>
<td>,, be grieved at.</td>
<td>bewaken, ,, watch over.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>begaan zijn met</td>
<td>,, be grieved at.</td>
<td>bewilligen in, ,, consent to.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(zich) begeven naar</td>
<td>,, repair to.</td>
<td>bezorgd zijn over, ,, be anxious about.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>behouden voor,</td>
<td>,, keep from.</td>
<td>bezielen van, ,, be overcome with.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>behoren aan,</td>
<td>,, belong to.</td>
<td>bibraren van, ,, shiver with.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(zich) beklagen over</td>
<td>,, complain of.</td>
<td>blaffen tegen, ,, bark at.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(zich) bekomen over,</td>
<td>,, trouble (oneself) about.</td>
<td>blijven bij, ,, stick to.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>belang hebben bij,</td>
<td>,, have an interest in.</td>
<td>boos zijn op (at), ,, be angry with</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(zich) belasten met,</td>
<td>,, take upon oneself.</td>
<td>branden van, ,, burn with.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>belenden aan,</td>
<td>,, be adjoining to.</td>
<td>brengen naar, ,, take to.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>belopen,</td>
<td>,, amount to.</td>
<td>share in, ,, take to.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>benoemen tot,</td>
<td>,, appoint.</td>
<td>denken aan, ,, think of.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>doelen op,</td>
<td>,, refer to.</td>
<td>dienen tot, ,, serve as.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gingen naar,</td>
<td>,, aim at.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
List of Preposition-Verbs (con.)

dromen over, to dream about. keren van, to groan with.
(zich) erbarmen, take pity on. klagen over, to complain of.
over, stick to.
(zich) cryceren, be vexed at. klimmen over, climb up.
over, knabbelen aan, nibble at.
geschikt zijn aan, be in want of. knagen aan, gnaw (at).
be mindful of. kiezen voor, kneel to.
gedachtig zijn aan, fret about. kwaad zijn over, be angry
aan, about.
droger hebben aan, on, be angry
aan, about.
gelooven aan,((-ich) hoorren over,
"be fond of. kieren naar, "acquit (one-
genieten van, "be struck
(zich) hoeden aan, with. "look at.
((zich) hechten aan, "mind (care
werk*enen aan, "mind (care
"be fit for. "look at.
goodkuren, "approve of. "laugh at.
gooien naar, "throw at. "lend to.
grabbelen naar, "scramble for. "borrow of.
graven naar, "dig for. "lead to.
grenzen aan, "border on. "pay attention
gruwen van, "shudder at. to.
haken naar, "long for. "live on.
(zich) hechten aan, "get accustomed
"be fond of. "supply with.
hopen op, "be struck
houden van, "be fit for. "lie with (de-
(zich) houden voor, "be fit for. "lie in wait for.
voor, "get attached to.
hopen op, "help to. "listen to.
houden van, "help to. "suffer from.
(zich) houden voor, "remind of. "suffer by.
"be fit for. "resemble.
hopen op, "be fit for. "aim at.
(hunkeren naar, "be fit for. "be incapable
(zich) interesse-reren voor, "be fit for. "be inferior to.
introduceren aan, "be fit for. "subject to.
jagen naar, "be fit for. "be incapable
jammeren over, "be inferior to.
keren naar, "be inferior to.
kenbaar zijn aan, "be inferior to.
"be known by. aan.
THE STANDARD DUTCH GRAMMAR

List of Preposition-Verbs (con.)

onthalen op, to treat to.
ontsnappen aan, escape from.
oordeel over „ judge about.
opofferen aan, „ sacrifice to.
overeenstemmen met, „ correspond to.
passen bij, „ go with.
passen op, „ take care of.
passen voor, „ be fit for.
peinsen over, „ meditate upon.
plagen met, „ tease about.
pochen op, „ have a desire for.
praten over, „ talk about.
raadplegen over, „ consult about.
raken aan, „ touch.
redeneren over, „ talk about.
(zich) regelen naar, „ be ruled by.
reikhalzen naar, „ hanker after.
reizen naar, „ travel to.
rekenen op, „ rely on.
rekenen met, „ take into account.
roemen op, „ glory in.
(zich) schamen over, „ be ashamed of.
schatten op, „ value at.
schieten op, „ shoot at.
(zich) schikken naar, „ accommodate oneself to.
(zich) schikken in, „ resign oneself to.
schrei en over, „ weep for.
schrikken voor, „ startle at.
schrijven om, „ write for.
schulden om, „ take shelter from.
sidderen bij, „ shudder at.
smaakten naar, „ famish for.
smaken naar, „ taste of.
smalen op, „ rail at.
smeeken om, „ beg for.
snakken naar, „ crave for.
snoeven op, „ boast of.
spelen om, „ play for.

spijt hebben van, „ to be sorry for.
spotten met, „ mock at.
spreken over, „ talk about.
staan op, „ insist on.
storen aan, „ die of.
steunen op, „ rely upon.
stikken van, „ choke with.
(stick van, „ mind.
straffen om, „ punish for.
stralen van, „ beam with.
strekken tot, „ punish for.
strenken naar, „ strive for.
strijden over, „ quarrel about.
talen naar, „ have a desire for.
tercen op, „ live on.
tintelen aan, „ tingle with.
tinkelen over, „ apply (one- self) to.
treuren over, „ sorrow for.
turen naar, „ gaze at.
twijfelen aan, „ doubt.
twijfelen over, „ quarrel about.
tuigerven aan, „ spend on.
uitschijven met, „ cease (stop).
uitschelden voor, „ call.
nietzich hebben op, „ have in view.
raren naar, „ sail for.
rusthouden aan, „ cling to.
rat hebben op, „ have a hold on.
veranderen van, „ change.
verbergen voor, „ hide from.
(zich) verblijven over, „ rejoice at.
(zich) vergasten aan, „ feast on.
vergelijken bij, „ compare to
vergen van, „ demand from.
(zich) vergenoegen met, „ content (one- self) with.
List of Preposition-Verbs (con.)

(zich) vergrijpen aan, to outrage. waarschuwen voor, to warn of.
(zich) verheugen over, „ rejoice at. wachten op, „ wait for.
verkiezen boven, „ prefer to. (zich) wachten voor, „ beware of.
verlangen naar, „ wish for. (zich) wagen aan, „ venture on.
(zich) verlaten op, „ rely on. waken voor, „ watch over.
vernemen naar, „ enquire for. wanhopen aan, „ despair of.
vertalen uit, „ translate from. wieden om, „ bet for.
vertrekken naar, „ set out for. (zich) weerhouden van, „ refrain from.
vertrouwen op, „ to trust in. wegkwijnen van, „ pine with.
werken tot, „ work into. weldoen aan, „ do good to.
(zich) verwonderen over, „ wonder at. (zich) wonden tot, „ apply to.
verzenden naar, „ send to. (zich) weren aan, „ get used to.
vertroosten, „ comfort at. (zich) wonden aan, „ wish for.
vissen naar, „ fish for. wensen naar, „ work at.
vitten op, „ causticate at. werken naar, „ fling at.
(zicht) vleien met, „ flatter (oneself) with. worpen naar, „ reside at.
(zicht) voeden met, „ feed on. wonen te, „ become of.
voldoen aan, „ fulfill. worden uit, „ ordain.
(zicht) voorbereiden op, „ prepare (oneself) for. wijden tot, „ devote (oneself) to.
voorgaan in, „ set an example of. wijden aan, „ impute to.
voorstellen aan, „ introduce to. zaniken over, „ bother about.
voorzien van, „ provide with. zenden naar, „ send to.
voorzien in, „ provide for. zonden om, „ send for.
vorsen naar, „ search for. zien naar, „ look at.
vragen om, „ ask for. zien naar, „ look for.
vegen voor, „ be afraid of. zuchten voor, „ take care of.
vraken voor, „ ask about. zweren voor, „ sigh for.
rijstelen van, „ exempt from. zwerven boven, „ hover over.
ruren op, „ fire at. zwichten voor, „ succumb to.

TRANSLATION EXERCISE No. 11.

1.

We wish to take a little preserve instead of cheese. Before the day dawned we were all up and ready. At what time (Hoe laat) do you wish to be called? My ink
is finished, I shall have to buy a new bottle. Among yon-der trees there is one which looks particularly pretty. During (the) dinner people were continually knocking at our door to [the] annoyance of our guests as well as of ourselves. We met the travellers on their way to Berlin, and spent a couple of hours with them. Not every heart requires a large number of friends to be happy. I have known persons who had very few true friends, and yet were happy and contented. Three of the pupils have failed in the examination, on account of the many mistakes (that) they made in the translation from German into (the) English. Forasmuch as the news has reached you, you will be obliged to go at once. All the people ran to the market-house for (to) shelter, on account of the unexpected shower. The bird flew into the church, and went right through it. He came to me about a quarter of an hour after my brother had left me and stayed for some (a) twenty-five minutes.

2.

Once upon a time a fox saw a pretty wood-pigeon sitting on one of the lowest branches of an oak-tree in a large wood. “Pretty dove,” said the fox, “I have been running (I have run) about all (the) morning (for) to find somebody to have a chat with; do come down and sit in the brushwood, and we shall have a pleasant talk.” The silly pigeon actually came down and sat in the brushwood, close to the ground. Then the fox said: “Why do you think (that) it is, that birds are so much prettier than four-footed animals?” “Oh,” said the pigeon, “I do not consider (that) they are (that), but this I know, that our feathery coat is of much more use to (voor) us than your hairy skin is to you.” The fox seemed to get interested, and replied: “Little creature, where do you get such wisdom (vandaan)? Did I ever hear (have I heard) a wood-pigeon speak (such)
intelligent words [like those]? Surely, if foxes are called cunning, pigeons might (zouden kunnen) be called wise. But now explain your statement.” The poor dove, which perhaps had never been flattered before, was almost beside (buiten) herself with (of) joy and pride as she gave the following explanation: “You see, the first and most important duty of every living creature, whether in the wood or elsewhere, is to protect his head against every injury from outside. Now that is just (of) what (waartoe) you, hairy animals, are not capable [of]. With us it is different. From whatever side the wind blows, we are always able to shield our head and keep it warm.”

3.

“Suppose for instance (that) the wind should come (came) from the south, and I should be sitting (sat) just as at present. I would simply lift my right wing and (er) cover my head with (mede) it. If the wind blew from the north, I should only require to lift my left wing and do the same.” “That’s well explained,” said the fox, “but now just (eens) show (it) me.” The pigeon then (toen) lifted first her right wing, and then her left [one], and with either (both) covered her head entirely, so that the fox seemed quite satisfied. “But now,” he added (to it), “that’s all right (dat is goed en wel) for southerly and northerly winds, but what would you do if the breeze should come (came) from the west, while you were sitting (sat) like that (zo)? You see, now I have caught you, that’s a thing (that) you do not know, my little dove!” “What?” said the pigeon, “do not know? Pigeons know everything about (of) that matter. Shall I show you how we do?” “I should be so glad if you would (did it),” replied the fox, “I do like to (zo graag) learn things from
wiser people than myself (I am).” This answer again stung the poor dove’s pride. She ventured (it) to come down from her twig in the brushwood, and sat (went to sit) down on the ground right in front of (recht vóór) the fox. “Now mind,” (let nu op) she went on (voort), “this is what we do (so do we).” Saying this, she buried her pretty head in the soft down of her neck. That was (it) what (waar) the fox had been looking for (op gewacht had) with all the desire of his cruel heart. The very (same) minute (that) the head turned round, he seized the poor pigeon with his strong claws, ate it (op) and went away.

4.

I dare not go out, for fear (that) I might (zou kunnen) catch cold. Let him do it, if he likes (wil). How delightful! I shall have you all (geheel) to (voor) myself; we shall have a happy fortnight. Evil communications corrupt good manners. You won’t go out, will you? I would not be able to act against your desire. May I leave the work [undone]? What is it that puts you up to (dat er u toe brengt) neglecting (neglect) your duties? He is so anxious (desirous) to become acquainted with you. What will (er) have become of my poor boy? The last news (plur.) from him was disheartening. All the people (whom) you see assembled in that spacious hall are descendants of the late Duke [of] A., a man of great physical strength, great activity and zeal, and true nobility of heart. What a pity (hoe jammer) (that) you have not been able to (kunnen) travel more! To spend a couple of years in (met) (the) visiting (of) countries, (the) seeing (of) strange nations, (the) observing (of) their manners and customs, and (the) inquiring into (of) their religion, affords more real development than double the time spent in study or in an office.
KONVERSATIE.
Ambachten en Beroepen.

1. *Hij is smid van beroep.*
2. *Hij is van alle markten thuis.*
3. *Deze man heeft een lakenwinkel in de Langestraat.*
4. *Waar kan men een eksemplaar van dit boek bekomen?*
6. *Als u bij de drogist voorbijkomt, koop dan wat citroensuur voor mij.*
7. *Neem dit recept, en wacht bij de apotheker tot de medicijnen klaar zijn.*
8. *Laat dit bij de blikslager repareren.*
11. *De stoffecorper heeft de voorkamer behangen en gemuebileerd.*
12. *Wees zo goed, dit naar de slotemaker te sturen.*
13. *Waar kan ik een glazemaker vinden?*
14. *De man, die voor mij werkt, woont dicht bij Johnston, de schoenmaker.*
15. *Mijn paarden moeten beslagen worden; breng ze naar de hoefsmid.*
16. *De waggonmaker maakt uitmuntende wagens voor de transporthandel.*

CONVERSATION.
Trades and Occupations.

1. He is a blacksmith by trade.
2. He is a jack-of-all-trades.
3. This man has a draper's shop in Long Street.
4. Where can one get a copy of this book?
5. I believe it can be had at Mason's, booksellers, in George Street.
6. If you pass the chemist's, buy some citric acid for me.
7. Take this prescription, and wait at the apothecary's till the medicine is ready.
8. Have this mended at the thinsmith's.
9. Get the carpenter to mend those tables and benches.
10. A mason must look after that wall.
11. The upholsterer has papered and furnished the drawing room.
12. Please have this taken to the locksmith's.
13. Where can one find a glazier?
14. The man whom I employ lives near Johnston, the shoemaker.
15. My horses must be shod; take them to the farrier.
16. That waggon-builder makes excellent wagons for the transport-trade.
17. Go met mij mee naar de goudsmid om een gouden ketting te kopen.

18. De horlogemaker heeft juist een nieuwe voorraad ontvangen.

19. Zullen wij bij de vishandelaar aangaan, en wat vis voor het dince bestellen?

20. De slager heeft in de laatste tijd geen heel goed schapenvlees gestuurd.

21. Waar koopt u groenten?


23. De boeren zeggen, dat de oogst van 't jaar slecht zal zijn.

24. Deze man is boekbinder, en die heeft een boekstalletje.

25. Vraag de drukker, die fout te verbeteren.

26. Stuur naar de kruidenier om een kist beste thee.

27. Heeft u sigaren?

28. Neen, maar de tabakshandelaar heeft er zeer goede op het ogenblik.

29. Heeft de kleermaker mijn jas gestuurd?

30. Neen, mijnheer, maar de hoedemaker heeft de hoed gestuurd, die u besteld had.

Go with me to the jeweller's to buy a gold chain.

The watch-maker has had a fresh supply just lately.

Shall we call at the fishmonger's, and order some fish for dinner?

The butcher has not been sending very good mutton lately.

Where do you buy your vegetables?

We seldom buy any; our gardener keeps us supplied.

The farmers say the harvest will be bad this year.

This man is a bookbinder, and that one has a book-stall.

Ask the printer to correct that mistake.

Send to the grocer's for a box of best tea.

Have you any cigars?

No, but the tobacconist has excellent ones at present.

Has the tailor sent my coat?

No, sir, but the hatter has sent the hat you ordered.
I. As Prepositions express relations between objects, or between an object and an action, so Conjunctions establish relations between thoughts. Conjunctions are indeclinable words (particles), and have no meaning in themselves. They are used for expressing the connection between sentences, or different parts of the same sentence. Consequently they are connective words. To distinguish them from Adverbs, which may be connectives as well, it must be observed that Adverbs do not derive their meaning from the place they take in the sentence, and though used as connectives, must always qualify some other word. Adverbs, moreover, when used as connectives, are not necessarily placed between two sentences; they may be included in one of the sentences, which is not the case with Conjunctions.

Note.—The difficulty of distinguishing between Adverbs and Conjunctions is most apparent where the same word is used in both qualities: Reken er op, nu zal het geschieden, be sure of it, now it will happen (nu is Adv.); Al mijn vreugde is weg nu mijn ouders dood zijn, all my joy is gone now that my parents are dead (nu is Conj.).

II. Conjunctions may be divided into two principal classes, viz.: 1. those which connect two independent sentences, Co-ordinative Conjunctions, Nevenschik-
kende Voegwoorden, and 2. those which connect sentences of which the one is dependent upon the other, Subordinative Conjunctions, Ondergeschikte Voegwoorden.

Note.—Subordinative Conjunctions remove the Verb to the end of a clause. Of the Co-ordinative Conjunctions, those that are adverbial place the subject after the Verb.

A. Co-ordinative Conjunctions are subdivided into:

1. Those which unite or couple together, Verbindende or Aaneenschakelende Voegwoorden.

2. Those which oppose, Tegenstellende Voegwoorden

3. Those which limit or separate, Scheidende Voegwoorden.

4. Those which express a reason, Redenhebbende Voegwoorden.

Examples of 1.—en, and; ook, also; niet alleen or niet slechts or niet enkel . . . maar ook, not only . . . but also; benevens, and also; alsmede, and also; zowel . . . als ook, as well . . . as; noch . . . noch, neither . . . nor; and the Adverbial Conjunctions daarenboven, besides; daarna, after that; bovendien, besides; ja zelfs, even.

Laat mij u zeggen, hoe wij de dag hebben doorgebracht: niet alleen hebben we een lange wandeling gemaakt, maar we zijn ook wat gaan lezen, en hebben toen gedineerd; vervolgens zijn we te paard uit geweest, eindelijk hebben we ons huiswerk voor morgen gemaakt. Let me tell you how we spent the day: not only did we take a long walk, but we also read a little, and then had dinner; then again we went out on horseback, and finally we did our homework for tomorrow.

Examples of 2.—maar, but; doch, but; nu, now that; dan, then, and the Adverbial Conjunctions integendeel, on the contrary; echter, however; diesniettegenstaande, notwithstanding; evenwel, however; intussen, in the meantime.
Ik zou het u gaarne geven, doch het is onmogelijk, I should like to give it to you, but it is impossible; op die wijze zal u mij niet van u verreemden, integendeel u zal mij u meer doen achten en liefhebben, in that way you will not estrange me from you, on the contrary you will cause me to esteem and love you more; ik heb hem dikwels gewaarschuwd, echter heeft hij er geen acht op geslagen, I have often warned him, but he has not heeded it.

Examples of 3.—of, or; of ... of, either ... or; hetzij ... hetzij, either ... or; hetzij ... of, whether ... or.

Hetzij wij werken of spelen, ons hoofd moet er bij zijn, whether we work or play, our mind must be in it; of de brief is reeds verzonden, of hij zal van morgen op de post gaan, either the letter has been sent already, or it will be posted this morning.

Examples of 4.—want, for; bijgevolg, consequently; dus, so; also, so; daarom, so, therefore; hierom, on this account; derhalve, for that reason; dan, then, so; toch, (see sentence); immers (see sentence); all of which may be called Adverbial Conjunctions.

Wij zullen moeten ophouden, want het begint te regenen, we shall have to stop, for it is beginning to rain; verklaar u nader, mij toch komt toe, alles te weten, or immers komt mij toe, enz., explain yourself further, it is proper for me to know all, or, is it not proper for me, etc.?

B. Subordinative Conjunctions are subdivided into:

1. Those that express a comparison, Vergelijkende Voegwoorden.

2. Those that express a proportion, Verhoudingaanwijzende Voegwoorden.
3. Those that define a time, *Tijdbepalende Voegwoorden.*

4. Those that define a place, *Plaatsbepalende Voegwoorden.*

5. Those that express a condition, *Voorwaardelijke Voegwoorden.*

6. Those that indicate a concession, *Toegevende Voegwoorden.*

7. Those that express a purpose, *Doelaanwijzende Voegwoorden.*

8. Those that express the reason of an action, *Redengevende Voegwoorden.*

9. Those that join Noun-sentences to Principal sentences, *Verklarende Voegwoorden.*

**Examples of 1.**—*gelijk,* as; *evenals,* just as; *als,* as; *dan,* than; *zoals,* as; *dat,* so that; *alsof,* as if.

_Hij is groter geworden, dan ik verwacht had,* he has grown taller than I had expected; *doe alsof je thuis waart,* make yourself at home.

**Examples of 2.**—*hoe....hoe,* the....the; *hoe....des te,* the....so much the; *naarmate* or *naar gelang,* according as, in proportion to.

_Hoe minder hoe liever, als je maar gezond bent,* the less the better as long as you are healthy; *hoe meer ik hem aanzette tot zijn werk, des te meer vertraagde hij,* the more I urged him on to his work, the more he idled; *naardat u werkt, zullen uw vorderingen zijn,* according to your work, so will your progress be.

**Examples of 3.**—*Als,* if; *toen,* when; *wanneer,* when; *zodra als,* as soon as; *zo dikwels als,* as often as; *vóórdat,*
before; nu, now that; terwijl, whereas. These Conjunctions are for the greater part Adverbs and Prepositions changed into Conjunctions by the addition of "als" or "dat".

De haan begon te kraaien, zodra als wij buiten gekomen, the cock began to crow as soon as we came outside; het vuur ging dadelijk uit, toen de blussbalg ophield met blazen, the fire went out immediately, when the bellows ceased blowing.

**Examples of 4.**—waar, where; alwaar, where; waarheen, whither; verwaarts, whither; van waar, from where.

Wijs mij de plaats, waar ik gezaaid heb, show me the place where I have sown; Ik reis naar hetzelfde onbekende land, verwaarts mijn vader twee jaren geleden vertrokken is, I am travelling to the same unknown country, whither my father went two years ago; ik herinner mij nog duidelijk de hoogte, vanwaar wij u het laatst vaarwel toewuifden. I distinctly remember the height from where we waved a last farewell to you.

**Examples of 5.**—indien, if; in geval dat, in case that; zo, if; tensij, unless; mits, provided; wanneer, if.

Ik wil het niet doen, tensij u uw volle toestemming geeft, I don't want to do it, unless you give your full consent; je kunt op mijn hulp rekenen, mits je zelf al je krachten inspant, you may be sure of my assistance, provided you yourself do everything in your power.

**Examples of 6.**—schoon, hoewel, alhoewel, ofschoon, al, though; niettegenstaande, although.

Ofschoon dit woord verouderd mag heten, wordt het toch door verschillende schrijvers nog gebruikt, though this word may be called obsolete, it is still being used by several authors; hij waagt zich gedurig nog 's avonds
in de lucht, niettegenstaande hij gewaarschuwd is, although he has been warned, he still often goes out at night; al is de leugen nog zo snel, de waarheid achterhaalt hem wel, though falsehood fly ever so fast, truth catches it at last.

Examples of 7.—opdat, in order that; dat, that; ten einde, for the purpose of.

De vader werkte wat hij kon, opdat de zoon de vruchten van zijn arbeid zou plukken, the father worked with all his might, in order that the son should gather the fruits of his labour; eert uw vader en uw moeder, opdat uw dagen verlengd worden, honour thy father and thy mother, that thy days may be long; hij spoort zijn paard aan, ten einde nog vóór zonsundergang thuis te zijn, he spurs on his horse, for the purpose of being home before sunset.

Note.—Mark that adverbial sentences of purpose are not usually formed with the words opdat and ten einde. In fact, in colloquial language, those two Conjunctions are rarely used. The common expression for the thoughts contained in the first and last of the sentences under 7 would be: De vader werkt wat hij kan, om de zoon de vruchten van zijn arbeid te laten plukken, the father works with all his might, to let the son gather, etc.; Hij spoort zijn paard aan om nog vóór zonsundergang thuis te zijn, he spurs on his horse to be home before sunset. Foreigners should try to accustom themselves to the constant use of the Preposition om for the sake of fluency.

Examples of 8.—omdat, dewijl, naardien, doordien, aangezien, wijl, because; daar, vermits, since; om reden (dat), for the reason (that); op grond (dat), on the ground (that); nademaal, forasmuch.

De verkoping kon niet doorgaan, omdat het regende, the sale could not come off, because it was raining; ik zal gerechtelijke stappen tegen u moeten nemen, aangezien u mijn naam heeft trachten te benadelen. I shall have to take legal steps against you, forasmuch as you have tried to injure my reputation.
Examples of 9.—dat, that; of, whether, if. These Conjunctions occur after Verbs which express an assertion, an assurance, a question, etc.

Hij verzekert mij, dat hij er geen schuld aan heeft, he assures me that it is not his fault; u verlangde te weten, of ik u helpen zou? you wished to know whether I would help you? zeg mij, of alles in orde is, tell me if all is right.

Observations.

1. Dat, that, may mean omdat, because, opdat, in order that, and zodat, so that: (a) ik ben heel dankbaar, dat je gekomen zijt, I am very thankful that (because) you have come; (b) ik span alle krachten in, dat ik slagen moge, I do my very best that (in order that) I may succeed; (c) het regent, dat het giet, (literal trans.) it rains so that it pours.

2. Wijl ought to be taken for dewijl, because, and not for terwijl, while.

3. Zonder, in plaats van, behalve, when they are Conjunctions, can never be used without the Conjunction dat: (a) Hij zegt zulke dingen, zonder dat hij er bij denkt, he says such things without thinking what he says; (b) in plaats van dat hij onmiddellik naar hem toeging, kwam hij eerst bij mij, instead of going to him straight, he first came to me; (c) alles bevalt mij, behalve dat je hem zijn verzoek geweigerd hebt, I am pleased with everything but that you have refused his request.

4. After real Conjunctions the connective dat may not be used.

5. Now that may be translated nu dat, but nu only is more common.

6. Maar and doch both mean but. Maar, however, opposes the thoughts expressed in the sentences it con-
nects in a stronger way than doch. Hij is rijk, maar blind; wat baat hem zijn rijkdom? he is rich, but blind; of what good are his riches to him? hij zegt nooit veel, doch als hij spreekt, verraadt ieder woord de helderheid van zijn gedachten, he never says much, but if he does speak, each word betrays the clearness of his thoughts. In common speaking, however, “doch” is uncommon.

7. “Good-hearted though he was, many people shunned him”, may be translated, Goedhartig als hij was, werd hij toch door velen gemijd—yet a better translation is, Hoewel hij goedhartig was, werd hij, enz.

TRANSLATION EXERCISE No. 12.

1.

A thrush, a linnet, and a thistle-finch were once caught by a fowler in one day and under the same (een en hetzelfde) net. Since they were all equally pretty, he did not like (wilde hij niet graag) to kill [any] one of the three; so he put them together into one large cage. At first they were all on very good terms (op zeer goede voet), most (heel) likely because none of them liked the fate (to none of them was the fate agreeable) (to which) they were condemned [to]; but when after a while they had got accustomed to the small room, (to which) they were confined [in], the thistle-finch began to be disagreeable. He scolded his two companions either for singing (because they sang) too high or too low, or for not keeping time (maat), when they were trying to sing together. At last his temper grew (became) so bad, that the other two birds could not bear his company any longer. In fact, the little linnet got so nervous from being (to be) scolded all day long (the whole day), that it (hem) soon became impossible [for him] (om) to sing. So (on) one morning, when the fowler—who on the whole
was very good to (voor) them—took them out (brought them outside) into the sun, the linnet spoke to him on this wise (hem aldus aan): Good man, I am perfectly aware (of it) that I am doing a hazardous thing by openly complaining about the thistle-finch here present; but yet I must speak out. His temper has grown bad beyond measure (uitermate), so much so (zozeer), that I have given up (the) singing for fear of being scolded incessantly, and I am even beginning to hate (the) life. I frankly ask you, for my own sake and that (ter wille van mijzelf en van) of my good companion, the thrush, to relieve us of the company of this miserable thistle-finch, and to do it soon, lest (opdat . . . niet) he kill me.

2.

A certain man had three sons. When he had grown (become) old, and was about to die (soon would die) he called his sons to (bij) him (zich), telling them (and told them), that he wanted to divide his goods. After the necessary arrangements had been made, he thus spoke to (aanspreken) them: “My sons, besides what I have now assigned to you, there is in my possession a large diamond of great value, which I received from my father on the day of his death. This jewel I cannot divide, and may (I) not sell. I have therefore made up my mind (resolved), that I shall give it to that one of my three sons who within three months will give me proof that he possesses a better character than his brothers.” Upon this (Hier-op) the sons took leave of their father, and separated (wit elkander gaan) on the promise of reassembling at the old man’s sick-bed after a lapse of (nu verloop van) three months. When the time had arrived (komen), they all met (samenkomen) once again in their old home. And this is what they had to report. “Father,” said the eldest, “in the course of these three months a friend of mine (see p. 188) wished to undertake a journey into
a far-off land. He brought me a large amount (sum) of gold, which I undertook \textit{(op zich nemen)} to keep for him, but for which he refused to (would not) take a written acknowledgment. When he came back, I returned all the money to him without \textit{(er)} keeping any of (something) \textit{[it]} back, though there was nothing to show how large the sum had been \textit{(which)} he had entrusted to me. What does my father think of such a character?"—"My son," replied the old man, "this was only ordinary honesty; I should not have expected anything \textit{(nothing)} less of my son!"

3.

Thereupon the second son stepped \textit{(came)} forward, and spoke: "My father, in the course of these three months I came to the shore\textit{(s)} of a lake, just at \textit{(op)} the moment when \textit{(dat)} a little child, playing on the bank \textit{(kant)} happened to \textit{(accidentally)} fall into the water. The poor mother, who stood by \textit{(erbij)} screamed for \textit{(om)} help, and wildly threw \textit{up} \textit{(in de hooge gooien)} her arms in despair. I hurried to the spot, sprang \textit{(cr)} in, dived after \textit{(naar)} the sinking child, caught it, brought it \textit{up} \textit{(naar boven)}, swam with it \textit{(ermede)} to the shore, and handed it to the distressed mother. Far gone \textit{(heen)} though \textit{(hoe . . . ook)} it was, \textit{(the)} life was not extinct \textit{[er . . . uit]}, and our combined efforts brought the poor child back to \textit{(tot het)} life. The mother found \textit{(could find)} no words with which \textit{(om)} to thank me; but drawing a purse filled with gold from her pocket, she spoke \textit{[to]} me thus \textit{(aan)}: 'Stranger, take this. Though the reward be little in comparison to the noble deed, do not despise what I offer you \textit{from} \textit{(uit)} a heart overflowing \textit{[run]} with gratitude. Take it, and if you will make no personal use of it, let it \textit{(then)} be the price for buying something which will remind you of this happy day, and this glorious deed!"—But I refused the money, saying that to see the boy breathe was sufficient reward for me. What does my
father think of such a character?”—The old man replied, “My son, this is nothing but ordinary love of man (mense-liefde), and just what I should have expected of my son.”

4.

Then the youngest son came to tell his tale, and this is what he said: “Father, in the course of these three months I was travelling in the mountains. On a certain day, when darkness had set in (de avond gevallen was) and the road was but faintly lit up by the glimmer of the stars, my attention was attracted by (doordat) my dog sniffing (sniffed) at something lying off the roadside (aan de kant van de weg). The spot being [a] dangerous [one], I dismounted, and went to see what my dog had found. It was a man who was lying fast asleep on the very (uiterst) edge of a fearful chasm. I scanned his face, and knew it to be (that it was) that of my worst enemy. Now I knew that (if) should I leave (I left) him there, he would undoubtedly move about (zich bewegen) in his sleep, and (or) no more of him would be heard; yea, and (that) even if I should try to rouse him, he might (zou kunnen) move and drop down, so near he lay to (bij) the outermost edge. I therefore seized his arm (him by the arm), dragged him away a few yards, and then woke him up. He started when he recognised my voice, but I spoke reassuringly [to] him (toe), and asked him to tell me what had made (bewogen) him (to) lie down in such a horrible place. He then told me that he had lost his way (verdwalen), and that (he), being overwhelmed with (uitgeput van) fatigue at the approach of (the) night, [he] had dropped down, not knowing where. I then showed him his way (naar) home and let him go. What does my father think of such a character?”—The eyes of the dying man brightened up as the question was put (gedaan), and he exclaimed, “Oh my son, that was indeed more than common honesty, more
also than common love of man—that was magnanimity. You have shown the best character, and gladly (vol- gaarne) do I bequeath the jewel to you"

**KONVERSATIE.**

**Onderwijs en School.**

1. Onze school zal op de 23ste April weer beginnen, en ge- sloten worden op de 21ste Junie.
2. Op welke school is uw zoon?
3. Hij is op de Normalschool, op het openbare Gymna- stium.
4. Mijn zoon is op het Atheneum.
5. Hij zal ’t volgende jaar naar het Theologies Seminarie gaan.
6. Wat onderwijsstaf heeft u?
7. Een hoofdonderwijzer en vier assistenten.
8. Hij is taulonderwijzer, teknonderwijzer, enz.
9. Bij wie neemt u les?
10. Professor Schmidt geeft mij muzickles.
11. Woonit u de tualklassen bij?
12. Neen, ik neem privaaties in Frans en Duits.
14. Hij rekent vijf shillings per les.
15. Mijn zuster gaat naar een kostschool.

**CONVERSATION.**

**Teaching and School**

1. Our school re-opens on the 23rd of April and closes on the 21st of June.
2. What school does your son attend?
3. He goes to the Normal school, to the Public High School.
4. My son is at College.
5. He enters the Theological Seminary next year.
6. What staff of teachers have you?
7. A head-master, and four assistants.
8. He is a teacher of languages, a drawing-master, etc.
9. With whom do you take lessons?
10. Professor Schmidt gives me music lessons.
11. Have you joined the language classes?
12. No, I take private lessons in French and German.
13. My master comes on Mondays and Thursdays.
14. The fee is five shillings a lesson.
15. My sister is going to a boarding-school.
16. Zij is een leerling van een kollegiale school.  
17. Hij heeft bij het laatste eksamen een bours gekregen.  
18. Hij was een schoolkamerraad van mij.  
19. In welke klas is u?  
20. In de eerste, tweede, vierde, laagste, enz.  
21. Dat kind kent alleen het a, b, o (alfabet).  
22. Hij heeft een certificaat gekregen.  
23. De zomervakantie begint in December.  
24. Elementair schooleksamen.  
25. Elementair onderwijzerseksamen.  
26. Toelatingseksamen tot de universiteit (Matrikulatie).  
27. Eksamen in de rechten (Wetseksamen).  
28. Landmeterseksamen.  
30. Noem mij de studieboeken eens op voor de graad van kandidaat in de letteren.  
31. Ik heb mijn klas kwart voor twaalf laten uitgaan.  
32. Iedere morgen wordt de presentielijst afgelezen.  
33. Alle drie maanden worden er rapporten gepubliceerd, waaruit ouders en ouders kunnen opmaken, hoe het met de leerlingen van onze school staat.  

She is a pupil of a collegiate school.  
He gained a bursery at the last examination.  
He was a school-fellow of mine.  
In what class are you?  
In the first, second, fourth, lowest, etc.  
That child only knows the alphabet.  
He has obtained a certificate.  
The summer holidays begin in December.  
School Elementary examination.  
Elementary Teachers' Examination.  
Matriculation Examination.  
Law Examination.  
Survey Examination.  
The special Subjects required for that examination are: General History, English History, English language, Greek and Latin.  
Tell me the text-books for the M.A. degree in literature, please.  
I dismissed my class at a quarter to twelve.  
Every morning the roll is called.  
Every three months reports are published from which parents and guardians know how the pupils of our school are getting on.
Chapter XIII.

The Interjection.

(Het Tussenwerpsel.)

I. Interjections, *Tussenwerpsels*, are sounds without a definite meaning, serving to give utterance to some momentary emotion of the mind. They are indeclinable and may be placed in a sentence anywhere without ever effecting any change in its construction. Some grammarians object to their being called words, on the ground of their having no specific meaning. A good many Interjections are imitations of sounds (*Onomatopeeën*). A few Nouns, Verbs in the Imperative mood, and Adverbs, are used as Interjections. The name "Interjection", as will be easily seen from the Dutch equivalent, means "cast in between".

The following are the most common Interjections:

1. For the expression of grief: *ach!*—*ah!* *helaas!*—*alas!* *wee!*—*woe!* *wee mij!*—*woe to me!* *o Hemel!*—*good Heavens!*

2. For the expression of pain: *ai! au!*—*oh!*

3. For the expression of wonder: *hé!*—*oh!* *aha!*—*I say!*

4. For the expression of excitement and joy: *heisa!* *hoezee!* *hoera!*—*hurrah!*
5. For the expression of a wish: *oohl*—oh!

6. For the expression of dislike: *ba! aba!*—bah! *foe!*
   —fie!

7. For the expression of encouragement: *bravo!*—well
   done! *welaan!*—go on! *komaan!*—come on.

8. For the expression of any emotion whatever: *o!*—oh!

9. For the imitation of sounds: *bom, bam* (of a tolling
   bell), *bim, bam* (of a striking clock), *tik, tak* (of
   any timepiece in motion), *pief, paf* (of a gun), *krak,
   krak* (of breaking wood), *kukeleku* (of a crowing
   cock), *tok, tok, tok* (of a cackling hen), *miauw* (of
   a mewing cat), *boe, boe* (of a lowing cow),
   *kingelinggeling* (of an old-time door-bell), *flap* (of
   any unexpected clap), *bons* (of a heavy object
   falling), *plof* (of something falling into water).
CHAPTER XIV.

ETYMOLOGY.

(Woordvorming.)

I. Etymology treats of the formation of words. Words are of three kinds,—Primitive, Compound, and Derivative.

Primitive words (Stamwoorden) are not derived from other words.

Compound (Samengestelde) words are made up of two parts, both being words.

Derivative (Afgeleide) words are derived from primitive words, or roots.

Examples of words derived from the same roots:

verkennen, to revenge,  
ruiken, to smell,  
splitten, to split,  
grifen, to grip,  
breken, to break,  
graven, to dig,  
drinken, to drink.  
geven, to give.  
springen, to spring,  
rijden, to ride,  
vliegen, to fly,  
sluiten, to lock,  
buigen, to bend,  
liegen, to lie,  
tlegen, to draw.  
binden, to bind,  
bijten, to bite,  
wraak, revenge,  
ruch, smell,  
spleet, crevice,  
greep, grip,  
brek, rupture,  
graf, spine,  
drank, drink,  
gave, gift,  
sprong, leap,  
rut, ride.  
vlucht, flight,  
schot, ditch,  
boon, bow,  
lengen, lie.  
tuigel rein,  
hond, band,  
beet, bite,  
wrok, grudge.  
ruiker, bouquet.  
split, slit.  
begrip, understanding,  
brok, piece.  
groef, groove.  
dronk, draught.  
gift, gift.  
sprank, spark.  
ridders, knight.  
vleugel, wing.  
sleutel, key.  
bocht, curve.  
louchchen, to deny.  
tcuug, draught.  
bond, bond.  
bit, bit.
II. FORMATION OF NOUNS.

(a) By means of Prefixes (Voorvoegsels):

Aarts (meaning eerste, first): aartsvader, patriarch; aartsengel, archangel; aartsmoei, arch deceiver.

On (meaning geen, no): onmens, brute; onkunde, ignorance; ongeloof, unbelief.

Mis (meaning verkeerd, wrong): misdaad, crime; misdruk, paper wasted in printing.

Wan (meaning slecht, bad): wanorde, disorder; wantrouwen, distrust.

Oor (meaning uit, out of): oorsprong, origin; oorlog, war.

Af (meaning away from, off): afdak, lean-to; afdruk, impression; afgod, idol; afgrond, abyss; afweg, by-way.

Ant (meaning tegen, against): antwoord, answer.

Ge (before Nouns “belonging together”): gebroeders, brethren; gemaal, consort.

In connection with suffix te—a collection: geboomte, collection of trees; gebladerte, foliage.

Before stems of Verbs—the product of the action, or a continuous action: gebak, confectionery; geschenk, present; gedans, dancing.

(b) By means of Suffixes (Achtervoegsels):

Masculine names of persons are formed by the help of the suffixes aar (er, ier, enaar, enier), aard (erd), ik and and.

Aar, er, ier form substantives from Verbs, and names of persons from the proper names of countries and towns.
Er stands for aar, when the preceding syllable has the accent; ier is rarely used; enaar and enier form names of persons from other substantives.

Examples: leraar, professor; dienaar, servant; schrijver, author; gever, donor; tuinier, gardener; kunstenaar, artist; kruidenier, grocer; hovenier, gardener; Hollander, Hollander; Haarlemmer, inhabitant of Haarlem.

Aard, erw, ik, and erik indicate a fulness of the (mostly bad) quality expressed by the original Verb or Adjective: grijnzaard, one who grins; veinzaard, dissembler; blufferd, boaster; liviaard, idler; gauwerd, one who has a quick hand; slimmerd, cunning person; vuilik, filthy person; stommerik, dunce.

And is the old form for end, the ending of the Present Participle, and consequently indicates that the individual whose appellation it helps to form, is the doer of the action expressed by the Verb forming the first part of the word: heiland (de heilende, de helende, de geneesmeester), saviour; vijand (de vijende, de hatende), enemy (foe); vriend (vrijand, de vrijende, de beminnende), friend.

III. Feminine names of persons and animals are formed by the suffixes ster, in, es. Ster is placed after the stems of Verbs: bakster, feminine baker; schoonmaakster, charwoman, etc.

If the stem is dissyllabic, and its last syllable is unaccented, the feminine Substantive is derived from the masculine by adding ster to the latter: bedelaarster, female beggar; tovenaarster, witch.

Es and in form feminine Substantives from masculine ones: dienares, female servant; voogdes, female guardian; dichteres, poetess; zangeres, professional lady singer; godin, goddess; koningin, queen; boerin, farmer's wife.

Note.—Zangster means "muse, songstress"
With in names of female animals are likewise derived from masculine forms: berin, she-bear; leeuwin, lioness; tijgerin, tigress; wolvin, she-wolf.

IV. Er (aar), el (eel, sel) are used for the formation of names of instruments or tools with occasional modifications of the root-vowel before el: stoffer, broom; klopper, knocker; tuimelaar, tumbler (kind of pigeon); hevel, siphon; troffel, trowel; beugel (fr. buigen, to bend), iron hoop; tegel (fr. tiegen, trekken, to pull), bridle; sleutel (fr. sluiten, to close), key; vleugel (fr. vliegen, to fly), wing; toneel (fr. tonen, to show), stage; houweel (fr. houwen, to hew), pick-axe; stijfsel, starch; schoeisel, shoes; voedsel, food.

Note.—The ending sel is, however, principally used for indicating the product of an action: baksel, anything produced by baking; kooksel (product of koken, to boil); zaagsel, saw-dust (product of zagen, to saw).

Je, forming diminutives, occurs whenever a word ends in one of the sharp consonants ('t hofschip) or in d or g: kopje, small head; visje, small fish; lesje, small lesson; kuifje, small tuft; haakje, small hook; matje, small mat. Except. meid (contracted form of maagd) has meisje, girl.

Note.—The Cape Dutch meidje means a little servant-girl.

Tje occurs after words ending in a vowel or diphthong: knietje, little knee; zeetje, small sea.

Tje also occurs when the word ends in l, n, r, or w, preceded either by a full vowel or diphthong, or sometimes by a mute vowel: kooltje, small cabbage; nageltje, small nail; deuntje, ditty; dekentje, coverlet; boortje, small gimlet; kamertje, little room; pauwtje, young peacock; zwaluwtje, young swallow.

Words ending in m preceded by a long vowel or mute e, or by either of the consonants l and r, take je for their diminutive ending, inserting p between it and the word: boompje, small tree; boszempje, small broom; halmpje, tiny stalk; wormpje, little worm.
Etje occurs when a final \( b, ng, l, m, n, \) or \( r \) is preceded by a modified vowel: tobbetje, small tub; dingetje, small thing; rolletje, small roll; kommetje, small cup; zonnetje, little sun; karretje, small cart. Nouns ending in \( g \) preceded by a modified vowel, may take either \( je \) or \( etje: \) mugje, little gnat; ruggetje, little back.

Nouns of more than one syllable in \( ing \) take \( je \) while sharpening \( g \) into \( k: \) rottinkje, small cane; koninkje, little king.

Words ending in \( e \) generally drop that letter before a diminutive ending: cinde, end, makes \( eindje; \) koelte, breeze, makes \( koeltje. \) Sometimes, however, the \( e \) is retained: dieptetje, little hollow; diktetje, small swelling.

The diminutive form often takes the full vowel sound of the plural, in words that have an incomplete vowel in the singular, as: schip, scheepje; dag, daagje; blad, blauwde; glas, glaasje; pad, paadje; vat, vaatje (see p. 68)

Ke and \( ken, kijn \) and \( lijn, \) as diminutive endings, were much in use formerly, but are falling into disuse now. They render the language sweet and tender, as may be seen from Jan van Beers' poems: "Het Brocrken", and "De bloem op het graf".

Ing, an obsolete diminutive ending, serves less to derive real diminutives from existing words than to name small objects: krakeling, cracknel; hokkeling, calf less than a year old; nesteling, nestling.

El is likewise an obsolete diminutive ending, only to be found in a small number of words, in which it has so lost its original meaning, that a new ending is now added whenever the diminutive form is required: kruimel (from kruim, crumb), kruimeltje; eikel, acorn (fr. eik, oaktree), eikeltje; bundel, bundle, bundeltje.
VI. Collective Nouns are formed by means of the suffixes *age, dom, heid, schap, te* and *ij*; e.g.: *plantage, plantation; pakkage, collection of packages; mensdom, mankind; christenheid, christianity; geredschap, tools; gevogelte, all the birds; ruigte, shrubbery; ruiterij, cavalry.*

VII. Abstract Nouns are derived:

1. From concrete Nouns, by means of the suffixes *schap, dom, ij.* Ex.: *koningschap, kingship, priesterdom, priesthood, slavernij, slavery.*

2. From Adjectives, by the suffixes *schap, dom, nis, e, te,* and *heid,* representing qualities as substantives: *blijdschap, gladness, adeldom, nobility, droefen-is, sadness, koude, cold, diepte, depth, groothheid, greatness.*

3. From Verbs, by the suffixes *schap, dom, nis, ij, age, st, ing.* Ex.: *rekenschap, account, wasdom, growth, cryernis, annoyance, razernij, madness, lekkage, leakage, kunst, art, beleven, experience.*

Notice the difference between the following sets of words:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dutch</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>grootte,</td>
<td>size.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hoogte,</td>
<td>height.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laagte,</td>
<td>lowness, (also) a hollow place.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diepte,</td>
<td>depth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duisternis,</td>
<td>darkness.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>groente,</td>
<td>vegetables.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kleinte,</td>
<td>smallness.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>koude,</td>
<td>cold.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vuilnis,</td>
<td>dirt (coll.).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drukte,</td>
<td>bustle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>begrafenis,</td>
<td>funeral.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gevangenis,</td>
<td>prison.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rekening,</td>
<td>account (bill).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>christendom,</td>
<td>christianity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dutch</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>grootheid,</td>
<td>greatness.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hooghheid,</td>
<td>highness.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laagheid,</td>
<td>meanness, and a mean act.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diepheid,</td>
<td>depth (meaning, etc.).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duisterheid,</td>
<td>obscurity (in words, etc.).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>groenheid,</td>
<td>greenness.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grocniheid,</td>
<td>something green.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kleinheid,</td>
<td>smallness (of character, etc.).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>koudheid,</td>
<td>coldness.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vuilheid,</td>
<td>dirtiness.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vuilighheid,</td>
<td>something dirty.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drukheid,</td>
<td>noisiness.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>begraving,</td>
<td>act of burying.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gevangeschap,</td>
<td>imprisonment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rekenschap,</td>
<td>account.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>christenheid,</td>
<td>christendom.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
VIII. FORMATION OF ADJECTIVES.

(a) By means of Prefixes (Voorvoegsels):

Aarts (in a high degree, with words having an unfavourable meaning): aartsdorn, very stupid; aartslui, very lazy.

On (not): onnut, useless; onwetend, ignorant.

Wan (bad): wanschappen, misshapen; wanstaltig, deformed.

Be and ge indicate possession of what the stem expresses: behendig, dexterous (from hand); bewust, conscious (from weten); gevleugeld, winged.

(b) by means of Suffixes (Achtervoegsels):

Achtig: one suffix achtig is accented, another with a different meaning is unaccented. The first, also called haftig (haft), expresses full possession of what the word to which it is affixed indicates: waarachtig, true; twijfelachtig, doubtful; kriegshäftig, soldier-like; manhäftig, manly.

Achtig, not accented, has the meaning of the English y, ish, and indicates a similarity with the meaning of the principal word: zwartachtig, blackish; houtachtig, woody; winterachtig, wintry.

Baar (derived from beren, to bear) means a bringing forth, a producing, or possibility of the action: wonderbaar, wonderful; vruchtbaar, fertile; lecsbaar, legible.

En and s form Adjectives which indicate a material: zilveren, koperen, houten (unaltered by any inflexion of gender, number, or case), duffels, duffel; lakens, cloth.

Ig (Eng. y) indicates possession: kundig, learned; begerig, desirous; levendig, lively; bokkig, headstrong.
Note.—*Enig*, only, is formed from the Numeral Adjective *een*; *innig*, intense, and *overig*, remaining, from the Prepositions *in* and *over*; *nietig*, insignificant, from the Adverb *niet*.

**Zaam** signifies fitness, or inclination: *buigzaam*, flexible; *leerzaam*, docile; *werkzaam*, industrious.

**Lik** signifies similitude, being of the nature of: *koninklik*, royal; *vorstelik*, princely; *zedelik*, moral; *liefeliik*, lovely;—after stems of Verbs it signifies a possibility of the action: *sterfeliik*, mortal; *schadelik*, harmful.

**Loos** means destitute of: *eerloos*, dishonourable; *naamloos* nameless;—after stems of Verbs it expresses impossibility of the action: *reddeloos*, irretrievable; *stoorloos*, imperturbable.

**Ies** and *s* are used for deriving Adjectives from Proper Nouns: *aziaties*, Asiatic; *perzies*, Persian; *egypties*, Egyptian; *zweeds*, Swedish. *Ies* is likewise found in many Adjectives of foreign origin, and then stands for the English *ic*: *grammaties*, grammatic; *alfabeties*, alphabetic.

In *afgodies*, idolatrous, and *wetties*; according to law, it has the force of *lik*.

*S* likewise forms Adjectives from Nouns and Adverbs: *werelds*, worldly; *buitenlands*, foreign; *achterwaarts*, backwards.

IX. FORMATION OF VERBS.

(a) By direct derivation:

1. **Causatives (Causatieven)**, by changes in the radical vowel: *vellen* (from *vallen*), to fell; *zetten* (from *zitten*), to put down; *leiden* (from *lijden*), to lead.

2. **Intensives (Intensieven)**, by changes in the radical vowel and final consonant: *bukken* (from *buigen*), to
stoop; *vluchten* (from *rleen*), to flee; *slachten* (from *slagen, slaan*), to kill; *knippen* (from *knijpen*), to nip, cut.

3. **Denominatives** (*Denominatieven*), by affixing the verbal infinitive-ending *en* to:

- **Numeral Adjectives**: *verenen*, to unite, *verdubbelen*, to double.
- **Particles**: *innen*, to collect, *uiten*, to utter, *opperen*, to propose.

**Note.** *Ig* is sometimes inserted between the root and the verbal ending; *stenigen*, to stowe; *restigen*, to settle; *reinigen*, to cleanse. Some Denominatives have the ending *eren*, which is of foreign origin: *waarderen*, to appreciate; *trotseren*, to defy; *halcreen*, to halve; some change the root vowel: *reppen*, to hurry, from *rap*, quick; *tellen*, to count, from *tal*, number.

(b) **By means of Prefixes (Voorvoegsels):**

*Be* (*bij*) has the meaning of “all round”; it signifies that the action is extended to every part of the object, in *bezien*, to inspect; *bespreken*, to discuss; *behandelen*, to treat; *bevonden*, to feel all over. Its meaning is that of the Dutch Preposition “*bij*”, in *bereiken*, to reach; *behoren*, to belong; *bekomen*, to receive; *besparen*, to save; *belopen* and *bedragen*, to amount.

*Be* also has the power of changing intransitive into transitive Verbs, and of forming Verbs from Nouns and Adjectives: *bewandelen*, to walk; *beklimmen*, to climb; *bevaren*, to sail; *bewonen*, to inhabit; *betruren*, to lament, for *wandelen op*, *klimmen in*, *varen op*, *wonen in*, *treuren*
ETYMOLOGY

over. In _bemunnenn_, to man; _bekronen_, to crown; _bevruchten_, to fertilize; _bevolken_, to people; _besmetten_, to infect; _beoorlogen_, to wage war against; _bemoedigen_, to encourage; _beveiligen_, to protect; _bevredigen_, to satisfy, the force of this Prefix implies "providing with what the root indicates".

_Er_ originally implied, like _be_ in _bereiken_, "obtaining by means of the action expressed by the stem"; the force of this meaning has, however, become imperceptible: _erwären_, to experience; _erlangen_, to obtain; _erkennen_, to acknowledge.

_Ge_ does not materially change the meaning of Verbs: _geleren_, or _lukken_, to succeed; _genaken_ or _naken tot_, to approach; _gelijken_ or _lijken op_, to resemble. Of the Verbs _gevouwen_, to recover; _genieten_, to enjoy; _gerieren_, to accommodate; _geschieden_, to happen, the stems are no longer in use. _Gebouwen_, to happen, is from _beuren_, to lift; _geraken_, to get into, from _raken_, to touch.

_Her_ means "again, anew": _herdenken_, to recall to mind; _herenigen_, to reunite; _herkauwen_, to chew the cud.

_Ont_ was originally _ant_, i.e., "back, against, away from": _ontraden_, to dissuade; _outmoeten_, to meet; _onthouden_, to remember; _ontlopen_, to run away from; _ontzien_, to stand in awe of. It also means a change from an old condition or into a new one: _ontwaderen_, to degenerate; _ontdekken_, to discover; _ontginnen_, to break ground; _ontslapen_, to die; _ontdooven_, to thaw; _ontspringen_, to rise (of a river); _ontspruiten_, to sprout; _ontluiken_, to open (of flowers).

_Ver_, an important Prefix, has several distinct meanings:

1. When prefixed to Verbs, it expresses the contrary of what the stem implies: _verwachten_, to despise; _verleren_,
to unlearn; or it means "bad, wrong, false"; veroordelen, to condemn; 
verdenken, to suspect; zich vergissen, to be mistaken.

2. It may mean a doing away with by the continued 
action expressed by the stem-word: verteren, to consume; 
verdrinken, to be drowned; verpletten, to crush; verdrogen, to dry up.

3. Transition or change are expressed by verhuizen, 
to remove; vertalen, to translate; vervellen, to peel (to 
skin); verstenen, to petrify.

4. Covering or closing up is indicated in vermommen, 
to disguise; vergulden, to gild; verglazen, to glaze; 
vernagelen, to nail up.

5. It forms Verbs from Nouns and Adjectives, and then 
has the force of "making into what the root implies": 
vergodcn, to idolise; verbroedercn, to fraternise; vernieuwen, to renew; verfijnen, to refine.

6. In vernachten, to stay overnight; vermannen, to 
subdue, ver stands for "over"; in verjagen, to chase 
away; verworpen, to reject; verhuren, to lease, it has the 
force of wcg.

(c) By means of Suffixes (Achtervoegsels):

Elen and eren (with or without change in the radical 
vowel) form Frequentative Verbs (Frequentatieve veren), 
which express a repetition of the action (see par. XXIV 
p. 248): sprenkelen (from springen), to sprinkle; herin- 
nennen (from innen), to remember; babbelcn, (from beben) 
to chatter, teisteren (from tezen, to tear), to ravage.

Note.—Verbs like amuseren, for vermen, to amuse; feliciteren, 
for gelukwensen, to congratulate; proberen for trachten, to try; inviteren for uitnodigen, to invite, etc., are of foreign 
origin.
X. Adverbs may have the following Suffixes: e, s, lik(s), ling(s), waart(s), wijze (wijs, gewijze), jes, (pjes, tjes, etjes).

E occurs in gaarne, readily; dichtebij, close by; verre, far; node, reluctantly; alrede, already.

S changes Nouns, Adjectives and Present Participles into Adverbs, apocopating final d in the latter: ’s daags, by day; dikwels, often; ondanks, notwithstanding; wetens, knowingly; doorgaans, usually.

Note.—This s, commonly called the adverbial s, was originally the ending of the Possessive case, hence many possessive forms have acquired an adverbial meaning. Such are: consedools on the one hand; eensklaps, suddenly; rechtstreeks, straight; onigszins, enigermate, somewhat; barrevoets, bare-footed; blootshoofds, bareheaded; binnensmonds, between the teeth; goedsmoeds, cheerfully.

Lik (liks) forms Adverbs from Nouns and Adjectives: maandeliks, monthly; schriftelik, in writing; herhaaldelik repeated; waarlik, truly.

Ling (lings) forms Adverbs from Nouns: zijdelings, side-ways; mondellings, verbal; strikkelings, quite close to.

Waart (waarts), with the meaning of “in the direction of”, occurs after Nouns, Pronouns, and Prepositions: landwaarts, landward; te mijwaart, towards me; voorwaarts, forward; herwaarts, hither; dcrwaarts, thither.

Wijs (wijze, gewijze), “on this wise”, occurs after Nouns in the Possessive case, or after Verbs with inserted s: trappgewijze, gradually; steelsgewijze, stealthily; kwanswijs, on the sly; staaksgewijs, according to the branches of a family.

Jes (pjes, tjes, etjes), makes of Adjectives adverbial diminutives: zactjes, gently; zachtjes, softly; stillettjes, quietly; eventjes, just (for a little).
Notice the following list:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of Country</th>
<th>Inhabitant (Male)</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Europa</td>
<td>European</td>
<td>europecs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Afrika</td>
<td>Afrikaan</td>
<td>afrikaans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amerika</td>
<td>Amerikaan</td>
<td>amerikaans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Azië</td>
<td>Azië</td>
<td>aziëties</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australië</td>
<td>Australiër</td>
<td>australiës</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engeland</td>
<td>Engelsman</td>
<td>engels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scotland</td>
<td>Schot</td>
<td>schots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ierland</td>
<td>Ier</td>
<td>iers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frankrijk</td>
<td>Fransman</td>
<td>frans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duitsland</td>
<td>Duitscr</td>
<td>duits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oostenrijk</td>
<td>Oostenrijker</td>
<td>oostenrijks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pruisen</td>
<td>Pruis</td>
<td>pruisies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rusland</td>
<td>Rus</td>
<td>russics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Holland</td>
<td>Hollander</td>
<td>hollands</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>België</td>
<td>Belg</td>
<td>belgics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spanje</td>
<td>Spanjaard</td>
<td>spaans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Portugal</td>
<td>Portugues</td>
<td>portugees</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zwitserland</td>
<td>Zwitser</td>
<td>zwitser</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polen</td>
<td>Pool</td>
<td>pools</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hongrije</td>
<td>Hongaar</td>
<td>hongaars</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turkije</td>
<td>Turk</td>
<td>turks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Griekenland</td>
<td>Griek</td>
<td>griek</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noorsegen</td>
<td>Noorweger</td>
<td>noorwegecs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zwedén</td>
<td>Zweed</td>
<td>zweeds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Denemarken</td>
<td>Denen</td>
<td>denens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaap Kolonie</td>
<td>Kapenaar</td>
<td>kaaps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Natal</td>
<td>Natal</td>
<td>natals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Egypte</td>
<td>Egypternaar</td>
<td>egyptics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canada</td>
<td>Canadees</td>
<td>canadees</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mexico</td>
<td>Mexicaan</td>
<td>mexicaans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brazilië</td>
<td>Braziliaan</td>
<td>braziliaans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>China</td>
<td>Chines</td>
<td>chinescs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Japan</td>
<td>Japanes</td>
<td>japans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arabië</td>
<td>Arabier</td>
<td>arabics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perzië</td>
<td>Pers</td>
<td>persies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Java</td>
<td>Java</td>
<td>javaans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indië</td>
<td>Indiër</td>
<td>indies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Italië</td>
<td>Italianer</td>
<td>italianer</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note.—The name of the female inhabitant is formed from the Adjective by the addition of “e”. Een europees, engelse, kaapse, russische, a European, English, Cape, Russian lady. Proper adjectives in Dutch do not begin with capital letters.
XI. FORMATION OF COMPOUND WORDS.

(a) Compound Nouns are formed:

1. By writing the two parts together, so as to make them appear one word: *huisdeur*, house-door; *vuurhaard*, fire-place; *reisgenoot*, travelling companion; *uitgaaf*, expenditure. In this way by far the greater number of compound Nouns are formed in Dutch.

2. By inserting an *s* between the two parts of the compound, as a mark of the genitive case, a plural form, or for the sake of euphony: *handelsbank*, commercial bank; *scheidsrechter*, arbitrator.

*Note.*—Wherever the second part begins with *s*, the inserted or connecting *s* is omitted: *meisjeschool*, girls’ school; *handelstand*, commercial class.

3. By inserting *e* between the two parts: *vruchteboord*, fruit orchard; *sterrebeeld*, constellation; *dageraad*, dawn of day.

4. In uncommon compositions, geographical names or compounds derived from foreign languages, the hyphen is used: *vergeet-mij-niet*, forget-me-not (the flower); *kruidje-roer-mij-niet*, touch-me-not (the sensitive plant); *Zuid-Afrika*, *Oost-Londen*, *Mokka-koffie*, *Prokureur-Generaal*, Attorney-General.

(b) Compound Adjectives are formed:

1. By writing the two parts together so as to make them appear one word: *lichtgroen*, pale green; *driedubbel*, threefold, *doodarm*, very poor.

2. When the first part is a Verb, by the insertion of *s* between the parts: *noemenswaard*, worth mentioning; *werkconsme*, tired of working.
(c) Compound Verbs are formed:

1. By compounding Infinitives with Nouns, Adjectives, Adverbs, and Prepositions, the two parts being written as one word without undergoing any change: *schijfschieten*, to do target shooting; *huishouden*, to keep house; *ophouden*, to stop; *loslaten*, to let go.

2. By compounding two Infinitives, the first of which loses its final *n* or sometimes the entire infinitive-ending *en*: *ginnegappen*, to giggle; *harrewarren*, to quarrel; *staregen*, to gaze; *vrijwaren*, to guarantee.

(d) Compound Adverbs are formed:

1. Without changing either part of the composition: *bergop*, uphill; *tweemaal*, twice; *driewerf*, thrice; *achteruit*, backward.

2. By the insertion of a genitive-ending between the two parts: *goedszmds*, of good courage; *geenszins*, in no way; —*langzamerhand*, gradually; *middelerwijl*, in the meantime.

3. By the insertion of a dative-ending between the parts, strengthened by a *t*: *zijntwege*, for his sake; *omwcentwille*, for your sake; *harenthalve*, for her sake.

XII. List of Words which require some explanation on account of the altered or obsolete meaning of one of their component parts, or on account of the difference between their original and present meanings, and alterations in their spelling.

*adelaar, adcl aar*, noble bird, (now) eagle.

*adelborst*, noble breast, noble youth, (now) navy-cadet.

*achterbaks, achter de rug*, behind one's back, on the sly.

*alloszins*, in every respect, composed of the poss. case of *al* and *zin*, sense.

*altans*, at least, contracted from *al te hande* with adv. *s*.

*bakboord, rugboord*, larboard, left hand of a ship.

*baker* (contraction of *bakermoeder*), monthly nurse.
ETYMOLOGY

barnsteen, (by metathesis of r) brandsteen, burnt stone, (now) amber.
bongerd (bogaard), boomgaard, tree-garden, orchard.
denood*, dienaarsmood, servant’s mind, humility.
desnoods, if need be, des (poss. of dat) nood zijnde, i.e. daaraan behoefte zijnde.
dienvolgens, accordingly, comp. of dat. of die and the pres. part. volgend, the d having been dropped before the adv. s.
dokter, physician; doktor, university degree in literature, theology, etc.
drempel, dorpel, deurpaal, door-post, threshold.
ellend
de, ander land, other country, ballingschap, banishment (now) misery.
etmaal, edmaal, nog eens maal(tijd), again (the same) time, a period of 24 hours. Etteilike, many.
godsvrucht, godsvrucht (metathesis of r), vereze Gods, fear of God, piety.
handhaver, (bij de) hand hebben, to maintain, manu tenere; verdientgen, to defend, hold.
heimwee, woning-smart, home-pain, home-sickness.
heinde en ver, far and wide. Heinde is from the Anglo-Saxon “gehende”, handy, hence bij de hand, at hand.
heertog, (met het) heer trekkende, (met het) leger trekkende, leder, leader (dux), (now) duke.
honingraat, honingratel, honingweefsel, honeycomb (pron. distinctly honing-raat).
hovardaig, hoogwaardig, trachtende naar hoogheid, desirous of being great, proud.
huisraad, huisgeraad, huisgereedschap, utensils for housekeeping, (now) furniture,
juffrouw, jufferrouw, jungvrouw, jonge vrouw, young lady, Miss (as a form of address).
kerspel, kerkapel, kerkspaal, kerkelijke grens, parish.
kristfeest, krestfeest (metathesis of r), kristfeest, Christusfeest, Christmas.
landouw, land aue, goed land, fertile tract of land.
landpaal, landgrens, land-mark.
lichaam, likhaam, lijkbekledking (from hemen, to cover), flesh-covering, body.
lijkdorcn, lijkdorcn, dorcen (in het) vlees, thorn (in the) flesh, corn.
litteken, lijkteken, teken (in het) vlees, mark (in the) flesh, scar.

*The word mood, found in many compounds, may always be translated by “mind”.
madeliefje, weideliefje, weidebloem, meadow flower, daisy.
maarschalk, (mare knecht), paardenknecht, groom, (now) hoogste
generaal, chief officer, marshal.
meineed, visse zed, false oath, perjury.
mevrouw, mijn vrouw, my wife, (now) madam.
moe, moerschroef, moederschroef, screw-nut.
muisencoten, muisenissen, musings, diepe gedachten, deep
thoughts.
nachtvorst, nachtvorst (metathesis of r), night-frost.
nameloos, unspeakable: naameloos, without a name.
nochtrons, nevertheless, nog and dan with adv. s; d being sharpened
into t causes g to be changed into ch.
nooddruft, nooddurt (metathesis of r), grote behoeft, great want,
need, from durven (derven), behoeven.
ooievaar, o de baar (from beren, to bear), schatdrager, treasure-
bearer, (now) stork.
ooglid, oogdeksel, eyelid (the Dutch lid for deksel is sometimes
heard).
ord, order; order. command, and commercial term.
overlijden, over g i uan, to pass over, (now) to die.
pauwemoer, parelmoeder, mother-of-pearl.
ruiken, to smell; rieken, to scent.
vandaag, to-day, van dag, dative of dag.
verklaarbaar, eligible; verkieslijk, preferable.
vierschaar, vier scharen, vier banken, four seats (in an ancient
court), (now) tribunal.
vorst, voorste, eerste, gebied, prince (monarch).
weshalve, wherefore; wets is the poss. of wat.
wirook, wi jrook, gewijd of heilige rook, consecrated smoke,
incense.
willcn, on purpose; gewillig, willingly.
wi sscl, wisselbrief, bill of exchange.
zedig, modest; zedelijk, moral.
zinloos, meaningless; zineloos, senseless, foolish.
zinnelik, sensual; zindelijk, clean, neat.

XII. Where to place the accent. Generally speaking, the accent lies on the first syllable of a word.

The following detailed rules may prove useful to students:

(a) Of the Prefixes of Ch. XIV, § II, (a), aarts, on,
mis, wan, oor, et, and ant have the accent: aartsvader,
ETYMOLOGY

(òngeloof, misbaksel, wáintrouwen, oórsprong, étmaal, ántwoord.

(b) Of the Suffixes of § II, (b), only ier is accented: tuinníér (whereas kúnstenaar, schrijver, etc.).

(c) Of the Suffixes of § III, es and in have the accent: sungcrés, tijgerín.

(d) Of the Suffixes of § IV, eel takes the accent: houweél, toneél.

(e) Of the Suffixes of § VI, age and ij have the accent: lekkáge, plantáge, bakkerij, dieverij.

(f) Except a few enumerated under (b) to (e) no Suffix—whether in Nouns, Adjectives, Adverbs, or Verbs,—has the accent, except achtig, as explained under § VIII, (b).

(g) Of the Prefixes of § VIII, (a), aarts, on, and wan are accented.

(h) Of the Prefixes of § IX, (b), wan is the only one which has the accent. The other Verbal Prefixes, be, ge, -er, her, ont, and ver, by means of which a great many Verbs, and Nouns derived from them, are made, have no accent, but the accent lies on the first syllable after them.

(i) In Verbs, and words derived from Verbs, the accent lies on the stem-part.

(j) Separably compounded Verbs, however (see p. 248), have the accent on the Noun, Adjective, Adverb or Preposition with which they are compounded.

(k) Compound Nouns have the accent on their first part.

(l) Non-Dutch words, as a rule, have the accent on their last syllable: akcért, présént, absént, musiék, fysieék, konsért, talént, korsél, kanáal, harpóen, kantór, musktét,
seizóen, schavót,—or if they are of more than two syllables, on the last but one: kanárie, monopólie, kalénder, operátie, traditie, piáno.

(m) When such foreign words of three or more syllables end in aaf, gram, fie, ment, uut, ist, ant, aan, iek, ier, or aat, they take the accent on their final syllable: telegráaf, monográm, fotografíe, firmamént, institút, telegrafist, foliánt, oceaán, republíék, formulíer, potentáat.

GRAMMAR EXERCISES.—Taaloefeningen.

1.

I. Give the meaning of the following Prefixes and Suffixes, giving derivatives in each case with their English equivalents: Aarts, on, wan, oor, mis, ge, be; aar, aard, and, es, age, uchtig (2), baar, zaam, ij, lik, loos.

II. Form diminutives from the following Nouns: man, lepel, kom, mes, dag, jaar, mug, val, blád, bloem, diepte, stal, arm, moed, koning, ring, lade, einde, bol, nagel, schip, stroom, glas, hand, vel, aaken, har, hoogte, rotting, ding.

III. Form Abstract Nouns from the following words, and give their meanings in English: groot, droog, mooi, dicht, druk, vroom, flink, lief, bekend, kostbaar, vuil, schuw, oud, wijs, echt, dwister, christen, slaaf, koning, rkenen, verenigen, wandelen, storen, bedrieven, beloven, crgeren, gunnen, razen, bedelen, dienen, begraven, ver­­geven, slijten.

IV. Explain, in Dutch, the following words, according to their derivation: dronkaard, wandelaar, kruidenier, bakkerij, vriend, beugel, veinzaard, weduwnaar, sterveling, schepeling, boeteling, hevel, sleutel, geboomte, mensheid,
V. Give four examples each of: Causatives, Frequentatives, Intensives, Denominatives, and explain according to their derivation.

VI. Explain in Dutch the following Verbs according to their derivation: bereiken, beschijnen, beveiligen, begrijpen, bewandelen, erlangen, ontraden, ontmoeten, ontaarden, ontslapen, verachten, verdranken, vertalen, vernagelen, veronderen, verhongeren, verkondigen, herinneren, ademen, tellen, vluchten, stotteren, vullen, starogen, reikhalzen.

VII. Distinguish between the following pairs of words: groot, groots; laagte, laagheid; vuilheid, vuiligheid, vuilnis; verkiesbaar, verkieslijk; zedig, zedelijk; wettig, wetties; levend, levendig; groente, groenheid, groenigheid; duisternis, duisterheid; christenheid, christendom; de priesterschap, het priesterschap; naamloos, nameloos; gevangenschap, gevangenis; zinloos, zinneloos; kinderachtig; zindelijk; orde, order; ruiken, rieken; dokter, doktor.

VIII. Explain in Dutch the following words according to their composition and derivation: ellende, demoed. ettelik, achterbaks, landouw, hovaardig, muizcnissen. kerspel, overlijden, wierook, meineed, likdoren, huisraad.

IX. Give in Dutch the names of the following continents and countries and of their inhabitants, male and female: Europe, Asia, Africa, The Cape, Russia, Switzerland, Italy, Spain, Turkey, Denmark, Canada, China, India, Egypt, Morocco, Japan, Arabia, Transvaal.
TRANSLATION EXERCISE No. 13.

1.

Very long ago, about the year 550 B.C. (V.O.), Asia had two mighty kings, viz., Cyrus, King of Persia, a man renowned for his courage and military skill, and Croesus, whose riches surpassed all comprehension. The latter once happened to meet (met by chance) the Greek philosopher Solon, whom he treated with the greatest distinction and to whom he showed all his riches and treasures. Then he said: “Solon, I know (that) you have seen much of the world—tell me whom you consider (as) the happiest of men.” Of course the proud king could himself have given the answer (that) he expected; he merely used the philosopher as an instrument for flattering (to flatter) his vanity. How disappointed he must have been, when he heard the following reply from the mouth of the sage:— “He whom I consider (the) happiest among mortals is Tellus, a burgher of Athens, a man upright and good, esteemed by all his fellow-citizens, a man who spent his life in promoting the good of the city of his fathers; a man who had a happy home, healthy, beautiful, strong children, whom he saw grow up dutiful youths, esteemed by (the) society as the father was himself; a man who, when his beard had become grey and the hair of his head snow-white, when his eyes were getting dim and his knees feeble, went to war for the rescue of his country, and died on the battle-field, to seal with his blood the glorious victory of the day.” “Him,” Solon repeated, “I certainly consider (as) the happiest of all men.”

2.

“And after him,” hastily replied the king, who had grown (become) indignant at the philosopher’s boldness of preferring (to prefer) a common citizen of Athens to the richest of kings—“after that, tell us, who do you
think is happiest?“ "Two Greek youths," was the disappointing answer, "Cleobis and Biton, both of whom were handsome and strong, and they even once gained laurels in the Olympian games. Their mother was a priestess, and when one day the hour of service in the temple was drawing near (approached), and the mother sat ready in her cart, waiting in vain for the oxen, which were to pull the vehicle, the two sons, lest she should be (too) late, harnessed themselves to the chariot, and conveyed their mother to the place of worship. The people looked on (it) in amazement, and began to praise the happy priestess on account of her worthy sons. The mother, moved at heart, straightway entered the temple, knelt down before the image of her gods, and entreated them to reward her sons and (to) do to them what they might think best (wat hun het best mocht denken). Then she called her sons into the temple and made them lie down for a while, because she saw (that) they were tired. Both fell asleep and neither of them ever woke again. The gods had granted the mother’s request, and translated the youths to the world of undisturbed happiness."
CHAPTER XV.

CONSTRUCTION.
(Woordschikking.)

The Principal Sentence.
(De Hoofdzin.)

I. The common order of the Assertive sentence, whose Verb is in a simple tense, is the same in Dutch as in English:

Subject—Predicate—Object—Extension.

He saw a bear in the wood, hij zag een beer in het bos.

II. A. When the Predicate consists of more than one word, i.e., when it is composed of a Verb and its Auxiliary, or a Verb in conjunction with an Adverb, Noun, or any other part of speech, the Verb (whichever comes first) takes the place of the English Verb, whereas the other parts of the predicate go to the end of the sentence:

He has seen a bear in the wood, hij heeft een beer in het bos gezien.
He seems to have called the child, hij schijnt het kind geroepen te hebben.
My brother wants a book, mijn broeder heeft een boek nodig.
You must have used the knife, u moet het mes gebruikt hebben (or—hebben gebruikt).
He has been obliged to give it, hij heeft het moeten geven (not—geven moeten).
Observations.

1. Notice that in the last two sentences the Aux. of time, hebben, may either precede or follow the principal Verb, whereas the Aux. of mood, moeten, cannot follow it. Whenever an Aux. of mood, used as a Past Part., takes the form of the Infinitive, i.e., when it is used with another Infinitive Verb—it must precede the principal Verb:

   He has not been allowed to say it, hij heeft het niet mogen zeggen (not—zeggen mogen).

2. The only case in which the rule of § II may be broken, is when various extensions, or a sub-ordinate sentence intervening, the distance between the two parts of the Verb is rendered greater than is consistent with clearness:

   He did it this morning, as soon as he was up, hij heeft het van morgen, zodra hij op was, gedaan, or—hij heeft het van morgen gedaan, zodra hij op was.

II. B. Separately-compounded Verbs in their simple tenses follow this rule:

   He travels through the Colony to go to Pretoria, hij reist de Kolonie door om naar Pretoria te gaan.

   The anxiety about his sister keeps him down, de zorg over zijn zuster houdt hem er onder.

III. When there are two objects, one in the Dative case (Indirect), and the other in the Objective case (Direct), the Indirect object representing a person, and the Direct object a thing, the person must precede the thing:

   He gave the scholar a book, hij gaf de scholier een boek.

IV. When two objects (as under III) are represented by personal pronouns, the Direct object goes first:

   He has given it to him, hij heeft het hem gegeven.

V. Generally speaking, the place of the adverbial extension is in Dutch where it is in English, viz., after the object at the end of the sentence. This position is taken to emphasize the idea expressed by the Adverb:

   He has told him distinctly, yesterday, often, for the last time, here, etc., hij heeft het hem duidelijk, gisteren, dikwijls, voor het laatst, hier, enz. gezegd.
VI. When the object itself requires more emphasis than the Adverb, the latter is in Dutch placed before the object, whereas its place in English is between Subject and Verb:

I plainly see the house, but not the window, ik zie duidelijk het huis, maar niet het raam.

VII. When the object is a Noun in the singular, preceded by the Article *een* (a, an), or a plural Noun without any distinguishing word, all Adverbs except those of manner must precede such an object:

Compare

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{I wrote a letter yesterday, } & \text{ik heb gisteren een brief geschreven.} \\
\text{I wrote that letter yesterday, } & \text{ik heb die brief gisteren geschreven.}
\end{align*}
\]

Compare again

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{I wrote some letters yesterday, } & \text{ik heb gisteren brieven geschreven.} \\
\text{He treats children well, } & \text{hij behandelt kinderen goed.}
\end{align*}
\]

VIII. When the object is a Personal Pronoun, no Adverbs can precede it:

I shall see him often, ik zal hem dikwels zien.

I have heard her very well, ik heb haar heel goed gehoord.

IX. Adverbs must precede the preposition-object:

He always relies on his memory, \textit{hij vertrouwt altijd op zijn geheugen}. \[\text{He relied on his memory foolishly, } \textit{hij vertrouwde op een dwaas manier op zijn geheugen.} \]

X. True adverbs must precede adverbal phrases:

He saw my brother here in the wood, \textit{hij heeft mijn broeder hier in het bos gezien}. \[\text{He will see him for the last time tomorrow, } \textit{hij zal hem morgen voor het laatst zien.} \]

He will start at seven tomorrow, \textit{hij zal morgen om zeven uur vertrekken}. \[\text{He will see him for the last time tomorrow, } \textit{hij zal hem morgen voor het laatst zien.} \]
XI. Adverbs of time usually precede other Adverbs:

The man has been looking for the child everywhere to-day, 
*de man heeft het kind vandaag overal gezocht.*

XII. The Adverb of negation (*niet*, not) stands:

1. After the Verb in a single tense:

   The child does not eat, *het kind eet niet.*

2. Before the principal Verb in compound tenses:

   The child has taken no food to-day, *het kind heeft vandaag niet gegeten.*

3. After the object (Direct or Indirect, or both) of a Verb:

   I did not pick those flowers, *ik heb die bloemen niet geplukt.*

   Did he not tell it to you? *heeft hij het u niet verteld?*

4. If intended to negative the meaning of any other word but the Verb, its place is immediately before such word:

   The child would not eat at once, *het kind heeft niet dadelijk willen eten.*

   My brother, not I, has read the book, *niet ik, maar mijn broeder, heeft het boek gelezen.*

---

**THE SUB-ORDINATE SENTENCE.**

 *(De Ondergeschikte Zin.)*

XIII. The great characteristic of the Dutch subordinate sentence is, that the whole of the Predicate is placed at the end of the sentence:

He said, he would have me called at once, *hij zei, dat hij mij dadelijk zou laten roepen.*

The woman who lives opposite my uncle's house is very ill, *de vrouw, die tegenover het huis van mijn oom woont, is erg ziek.*
THE STANDARD DUTCH GRAMMAR

OBSERVATION.—When a sub-ordinate sentence has a lengthy extension, the Verb may be made to precede it, but may never be in front of the Direct Object:

I knew you would never be able to do it, ik wist, dat u het nooit zou kunnen doen.

Do you think I shall see your brother before six o'clock this evening? denkt u, dat ik uw broeder zal zien voor van avond zes uur?

NOTE.—An Infinitive phrase forming part of a sub-ordinate sentence, is not counted as extension, but is (see p. 371) analysed as a separate sentence; hence the Verb of the sub-ordinate sentence precedes such phrase.

He said he did it to tease you, hij zei, dat hij het deed om u te plagcn.

He called to me to stop calling his brother names, hij riep mij toe, dat ik het laten moest zijn broeder uit te schelden.

XIV. A. When the Verb of the sub-ordinate sentence is used in a compound tense, or in conjunction with an Auxiliary of mood, the principal Verb and the Auxiliaries may change at the end of the sentence:

The book I must have read, Het boek, dat ik gelezen moet hebben.*

*The second of these four ways is least used.

B. But when the auxiliaries of mood, kunnen, mogen, moeten, willen, and durven, are joined to the principal Verb in their Infinitive form (see p. 229, Obs.), they must always precede the principal Verb:

He wanted me to let him do it, hij wilde, dat ik hem zou laten doen, not—doen laten.

XV. There are a few cases in which it is preferable to keep to one form of construction:

1. When the subject of a sub-ordinate sentence is a Relative Pronoun, the Auxiliary should come after the principal verb:

The lecturer who is expected, de spreker die verwacht wordt, rather than—wordt verwacht.
The Verbs *doen, gaan, helpen, horen, komen, leren, voelen, zien*, used as Auxiliaries, take their places in front of their principal Verb:

If the boy hears me coming, he will run away, *als de jongen mij hoort komen, zal hij weglopen.*
I felt it as soon as I sat down, *ik gevoelde het, zodra ik ging zitten.*

**Inversion in the Principal Sentence.**

**XVI.** The inversion of Subject and Predicate occurs in Dutch as also sometimes in English:

In Interrogative and exclamatory sentences:

Do you see that child playing? *ziet u dat kind spelen?*  
Have you heard that man? *heeft u die man gehoord?*  
If I could only see him! *kon ik hem toch maar zien!*  
Would that my brother were here! *ware mijn broeder maar hier!* or *was mijn broer toch maar hier!*

**XVII.** If, for the sake of emphasis, any other part of the sentence but the subject is placed at the beginning of the sentence, the subject in Dutch is always placed after the Verb, whenever such Verb is in a simple tense, and after the first Auxiliary, if the Verb is in a compound tense:

There you see him, *daar ziet u hem.*  
Yesterday I saw him, *gisteren heb ik hem gezien.*  
I do not like the book at all, *mij bevalt het boek in het geheel niet.*  
His letter I have not read, *zijn brief heb ik niet gelezen.*  
I hate him I do not, *hate ik hem niet.*

**XVIII.** In sentences in which *it—het,* is the Subject, and a Personal Pronoun forms part of the Predicate, such Personal Pronoun takes the place of the subject:

It is he, *hij is het.* It is we, *wij zijn het.*
XIX. When the first word of a principal sentence is one of the Adverbial Conjunctions, toch, yet, niettemin, nevertheless, desniettegenstaande, notwithstanding, evenwel, yet, intussen, meanwhile, integendeel, on the contrary, daarentegen, on the other hand, ook, likewise, daarenboven, besides, dus, derhalve, consequently, vandaar, that is why, daarom, for this reason, bijgevolg, consequently, daardoor, that is why, voorts, further, etc., the Subject and Predicate change places:

It should not be forgotten in the meantime, intussen moet men niet vergeten.

Further I have to say, voorts moet ik zeggen.

Observation.—The above sentence also appears in the following form: Intussen, men moet niet vergeten, etc. It should be noticed that the inserted comma does away with the need of inversion. This comma, however, is not used after ook, vandaar, daardoor, voorts.

XX. The Adverbial Conjunctions nu, now, dan, then, and echter, however, are usually placed in the body of the sentence, in which case they do not influence the construction:

My parents, however, have decided for me, mijn ouders hebben echter voor mij besloten.

Now the judge was of opinion, de rechter nu meende.

Then tomorrow there will be a holiday, morgen dan zal er vakantie zijn.

Toch, yet, is sometimes used in the same way:

Yet he is not ashamed of his ignorance, over zijn onwetendheid toch schaamt hij zich niet.

XXI. When a sub-ordinate sentence precedes a Principal one, the order of the latter is inverted.

I have told him all, answered the man, ik heb hem alles gezegd, antwoordde de man.
After having spoken to him a long time, I left him alone,
nadat ik lang met hem gesproken had, liet ik hem alleen.

Observation.—After subordinate sentences with wie ook, who-
ever, wat ook, whatever, hoe ook, however, and hoe het zij, however it be, the order of the principal Verb is not inverted.

Whoever may tell you, I shall not believe it, wie het u ook
zegt, ik zal het niet geloven.

However that may be, I shall rest satisfied, hoe dat ook zij,
ik zal tevreden zijn.

XXII. When Verbs like zeggen, to say, antwoorden, to answer, hernemen, to resume (speaking), voortgaan, to continue (speaking), denken, to think, etc., occur with their subject between the two parts of a quotation, such subject must be placed after its Verb:

"Those books," said he, "I shall give you anyway." "Die
boeken," zei hij, "zal ik u in elk geval geven."

Inversion in the Sub-ordinate Sentence.

XXIII. In conditional sentences, when the Conjunction als—if, is omitted, the sub-ordinate sentence takes the form of the inverted Principal sentence, instead of having the whole of its Predicate at the end (see XIII).

Could I but see him, I should ask him, kon ik hem maar zien,
ik zou het hem vragen.

Were I but ten years younger, I should go, was ik maar
tien jaar jonger, ik zou gaan.

Observation. The conditional sentence without the Conjunction als—if, has no influence on the construction of the Principal sentence (see XXI); but when als is expressed, it has:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Could I but see him, I should ask him, } & \text{kon ik hem maar zien, ik zou het hem vragen.} \\
\text{If I could but see him, I should ask him, } & \text{als ik hem maar zien kon, zou ik het hem vragen.}
\end{align*}
\]
XXIV. Sub-ordinate sentences, introduced by *als*—as if, and *al*—although, take the inverted construction of the Principal sentence:

He speaks as if he knew all about it, *hij spreekt, als wist hij er alles van* (for—*alsof hij er alles van wist*).

I shall not understand it, though I read it ten times, *ik zal het toch niet verstaan, al lees ik het tienmaal over* (for *ofschoon ik het tienmaal overlees*).

Observation.—In the sentence: *Al hoorde hij u, hij zou toch niet komen*, even if he heard you, he would not come,—the sub-ordinate sentence, not having its regular construction form, cannot influence the construction of the Principal sentence (see XXIII, Obs.).

XXV. In statements and indirect questions beginning with *who, which, what,* or *with how* followed by an Adjective, in English a Noun-subject may follow the Verb "to be", whereas in Dutch these sentences follow the regular construction of the sub-ordinate sentence (see XIII):

He asked what was my opinion of the matter, *hij vroeg, wat mijn oordeel over de zaak was*.

I know how delicate are her feelings, *ik weet, hoe teer haar gevoelens zijn*. 
Dutch parsing differs somewhat in form from English parsing. The student should endeavour to make himself familiar with the points of dissimilarity.

Dutch names for the different parts of speech:—


Abbreviations used in Dutch Parsing:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Zelfstp.</td>
<td>Zelfstandignaamwoord.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lidw.</td>
<td>Lidwoord.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bijvnw.</td>
<td>Bijvoegeliknaamwoord.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Telw.</td>
<td>Telwoord.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vnw.</td>
<td>Voornaamwoord.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ww.</td>
<td>Werkwoord.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bijw.</td>
<td>Bijwoord.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voegw.</td>
<td>Voegwoord.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voorz.</td>
<td>Voorzetsel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tussenw.</td>
<td>Tussenwerpsel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overg.</td>
<td>Overgankelik.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Onoverg. Onovergankelijk. Intransitive.
Eig. Eigen. Proper.
Mann. Mannelijk. Masculine.
Vr. Vrouwlík. Feminine.
Aant. w. Aantonende wijs. Indic. Mood.
Onb. w. Onbepaalde wijs. Infin. Mood.
Teg. declw. Tegenwoordig deelwoord. Present Part.
Onv. teg. t. Onvolmaakt tegenwoordige tijd. Present Tense.
Volm. verl. t. Volmaakt verleden tijd. Pluperfect Tense.
Onv. toek. t. Onvolmaakt toekomende tijd. Future Tense.

Observations.

1.—In Dutch, such terms as Nominative to, Objective after, Qualifying, Modifying, Limiting, etc., are not in use. The relations between Verbs and their Subjects and Objects, and between Nouns and their Articles and Adjectives are differently expressed, as will be seen from the example.

2.—In Dutch parsing each Verb is treated as a separate one, except the Auxiliaries of Tense, hebben, zijn, and zullen, and the Auxiliary of Voice, worden, which are parsed with the Verbs which they help to conjugate.
**EXAMPLE OF DUTCH PARSING.**

Sentence: “Zij werden getroost door de zekerheid dat zij het goede gedaan hadden, en zich niet bemoeid hadden met de laster, die men van hun buurman verspreid had.”

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>door</td>
<td>Voorz.—wijst de betrekking aan tussen “werden getroost” en “zekerheid”.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>de</td>
<td>Bep. Lidw. Enk. 4 nv.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat</td>
<td>Voegw.—verbondt twee zinnen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>het</td>
<td>Bep. Lidw. Enk. 4 nv.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>en</td>
<td>Voegw.—verbondt twee zinnen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>niet</td>
<td>Bijw.—van ontkening.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>met</td>
<td>Voorz.—wijst de betrekking aan tussen “bemoeid hadden” en “laster”.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>de</td>
<td>Bep. Lidw. Enk. 4 nv.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laster</td>
<td>Afg. Zelfstnw. <em>de</em>-woord, Enk. 4 nv.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>die</td>
<td>Betrekk. Vnw. 3 Pers. Enk. 4 nv.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>van</td>
<td>Voorz.—duidt de betrekking aan tussen “verspreid had” en “buurman”.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hun</td>
<td>Bez. Vnw. 3 Pers. Enk. 4 nv.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
THE STANDARD DUTCH GRAMMAR

ANALYSIS.—(Zinsontleding.)

The Dutch way of analysing Sentences is a perfect parallel of English analysis, and, as far as principal features are concerned, differs from it only in its terms.

The translation of those terms is as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Dutch</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sentence</td>
<td>Zin.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Simple Sentence</td>
<td>Enkelvoudige Zin.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complex Sentence</td>
<td>Samengestelde Zin.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compound Sentence</td>
<td>Enkelvoudige Zin met veelvoudige delen. Hoofdzin.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Simple Sentence with com-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>posite parts</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Principal Sentence</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Co-ordinate Sentence</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sub-ordinate Sentence</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complete Sentence</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incomplete Sentence</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elliptic Sentence</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noun Sentence</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjective Sentence</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adverbial Sentence</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Of Time</td>
<td>Van Tijd.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Of Place</td>
<td>Van Plaats.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Of Manner</td>
<td>Van Wijze.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Of Cause</td>
<td>Redengevende.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Of Purpose</td>
<td>Doelaanwijzende.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Of Comparison</td>
<td>Van Vergelijking.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Concessive</td>
<td>Toegevende.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copulative</td>
<td>Aaneenschakelende.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disjunctive</td>
<td>Scheidende.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adversative</td>
<td>Tegenstellende.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Illative</td>
<td>Besluitende.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subject</td>
<td>Onderwerp.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enlargement of the Subject</td>
<td>Uitbreiding van het Onderwerp.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Understood Subject</td>
<td>Verzwegen Onderwerp.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The following peculiarities should be noted:

1. Dutch analysis favours the embodiment in separate sentences of phrases, which in English are treated as belonging to the main sentence. For example: “Seeing his brother, he began to cry,” would in Dutch be analysed as, “As (he) saw his brother, he began to cry.”

   This custom allows of no exception when an Infinitive Verb is concerned. For example, “I told you to go,” should be analysed, “I told you (that you should) go.” Likewise: “I shot the cat to (in order that I should) get rid of it.”

2. No distinction in name is made between Complex and Compound Sentences, both going by the name of Samengestelde Zin.

   The Compound Sentence, however, is sometimes called Veelvoudige Zin.
LIST OF WORDS AND PHRASES USED IN OFFICIAL CORRESPONDENCE AND DOCUMENTS, WITH THEIR DUTCH EQUIVALENTS:

Accident, 
Accordance (in — with), 
According to, 
Accordingly, 
Account, 
Accountant, 
Account (on — of), 
Accounting Department, 
Act, 
Action, 
Addition, 
Addition (in — to), 
Adjacent thereto, 
Adjournment, 
Adjoining, 
Administer (to), 
Administer an oath (to), 
Administrate (to), 
Administration, 
Administration of justice, 
Administrator, 
Admit (to), 
Admitted (to be), 
Advance (in), 
Affidavit, 
Aforesaid, 
Aforewritten, 
Agree to (to), 
Agree upon (to), 
Agreement, 
Agriculture, 
Agricultural Department, 
Aid and assist (to), 
Allen, 
Alteration, 
Allow (to), 
Allowed in law, 
Allowable, 
Alluvial, 
Amend (to), 
Amendment, 
Annex (to), 

overeenkomstig met, naar luid van, 
volgens, 
dienst, dienovereenkomstig, 
rekening, 
boekhouder, kashouder, 
op rekening van, wegens, 
departement van rekeningen, 
recht, akte, handeling, 
agerend, 
aktie, 
toevoegsel, bijvoegsel, 
behalve, 
daarvan grenzend, 
verdagen, 
verdaging, 
beheer, 
naast aanliggend, aangrenzend, 
besturen, beheren, waarnemen, 
een eed opleggen, 
besturen, beheren, administreren, 
administratie, beheer, bestuur, 
bediening van het recht, 
administrateur, 
toestaan, inlaten, toegeven, erkennen, 
toegelagen worden, 
vooruit, 
affidavit, 
voorzegd, 
voorschreven, voormeld, 
overeenstemmen, instemmen, 
overeenkomen, 
overeenkomst, schikking, 
landbouw, 
landbouw departement, 
helpen en bijstaan, 
vitland, 
verandering, 
toe staan, toelaten, erkennen, 
wettigig gangbaar, toegestaan bij de wet, 
geoorloofd, 
alluviaal, 
verbeteren, amenderen, 
amendement, wijziging, 
aanhechten, annексeren, insluiten.
Annexure,
Annual(ly),
Annul (to),
Annulment,
Annun (per),
Ante-nuptial contract,
Appeal,
Appeal (to),
Appear (to),
Apperseer,
Applicant,
Application,
Apply (to),
Apply to (to),
Appointment,
Appraise (to),
Appraiser,
Appearance,
Assembly,
Assembly (House of — ),
Assent (to — to),
Assess (to — rates),
Assets and liabilities,
Assign (to),
Assignee,
Assistant,
Association,
As such,
Assume (to),
Assumption,
Attend (to—a meeting),
Attorney,
Attorney-General,
Auction,
Auction duty,
Auctioneer,
Audience,
Audit Office,
Authorise (to),
Authority,
Available,
Ball,
Ball (out on),
Balliff,
Balance,
Ballot (by),
Ballot box,
Ballot paper,
Banns,
Bar,
Barrister,
Beacon,
Behalf (on my),
Behalf (on—of),
Be it herewith made known,
Below (the Court—),
Bequeath (to),
Best (to the) of his knowledge,
Bidder (highest),
Bill,
Board,
Bond,
Goods in—,
Borough-council,
Bound,
Boundary,
Branch,
Branch,
Bring (to—to justice),
British and Foreign,
Business,
Bye-law,

Cabinet,
Calendar (within 3-months),
Cancel (to),
Candidate,
Capacity,
Cargo,

Case (in the—of),
Case in point,
Case in point (to state—),
Cash,
Cash (to pay—),
Central,
Certain,
Certificate,
Certificate of Birth,
Certificate of Death,
Chairman,
Charges,
Charge and command (to),
Chief (adj.),
Chief of Police,
Circuit Court,
Civil,
Civil Commissioner,
Civil Imprisonment,
Civilisation,
Claim,
Claim (to),
Claimant,
Claim Inspector,
Clause,
Clear (three—days),
Codicil,
Coguissance (with),
Colonial,
Colonial Secretary,
Colony,
Commence (to),
Commissioner-General,
Commission,
Commit (to),
Committed for trial,
Committee,
Commonage,
Comply with (to),
Compromise,
Compulsory sequestration,
Concerning,
Concession,
Condition,
Conditions of sale,
Conduct (to),
Confirm (to),
Confirmation,
Conformity (in— with),
Conjunction (in— with),
Connection (in — therewith),

verband, schepenkennis.
goederen in entrepôt
stadstraad.
verplicht, gehouden.
grens.
tuk.
verbreking.
voor het gerecht brengen.
brits en buitenlands.
zaken, handel, bezigheid.
reglement, toevogsel.
kabinet, ministerraad.
binnen 3 maanden.
vernietigen.
kandidaat.
capaciteit, bevoegdheid.
lading.
in het geval van.
voorbeeld, soortgezin geval.
voorbeeld geven, geval opnoemen.
kontant.
kontant betalen.
rechtvaardig.
zeker.
certificaat, bewijs, getuigschrift.
geborenbewijs.
sterven, overlijden.
overlijden.
voorzitter.
prijs, rekoning.
gelasten en bevelen.
voornaamste, opper-, hoofd-
hoofd van de politie.
onderdeel van de politie.
civiel, burgerlijk.
civiele kommissaris.
officier van justitie.
eis, delfplek.
eis.
eis.
inspecteur van delfplekken.
klausule.
drie volle dagen.
kodicil, aansluiting.
met medeweten.
koloniale sekretaris.
koloniaal.
beoordeling, aanvangen.
kommissaris-generaal.
kommisie, opdracht.
bedrijven, zich blootstellen, in staat van
beschuldiging stellen.
naar de strafzitting verwezen.
komitee.
gemeentevede.
nakomen.
kompromis, schikking, vergelijk.
gedwongen sekwestraatie.
ioor, aangaande, betreffende.
kondsheid.
konditie, toestand, voorwaarde.
koopkonditieën.
leiden, voeren, besturen.
bevestigen, konfirmeren.
bevestiging, konfirmatie.
in overeenstemming met.
samengaande met, in verbintenis met.
verenigd met.
daarmede in verband staande.
Connection (In — with), Consent, Consent (to), Consent to (to), Consider (to), Consignee, Consignor, Consist (to — with law), Consolidate (to), Constitute (to), Constitute and appoint (to), Construct (to), Construction (for the-of), Consul, Consulate, Consul-General, Consumption, Contract, Contract (to), Contracting parties, Contract of lease, Contrary to, Contravene (to), Convenient, Convention, Conveyance, Conveyance (law), Conveyancer, Convict, Convict (to), Convict guard, Conviction (on), Corporate punishment, Council, Council (Divisional), Council (Legislative) Council (in), Councillor, Counterfoil, Court, Cover (to), Credit, Creditor, Crime, Criminal, Criminal Session, Crown Land, Crown Prosecutor, Current, Current (account), Customs, Customs duty, Custom house, Customs officer, Customs Union,

Damage, Damages, Dative, Debentures, Debt, Debtor, Deceased, Decide (to), Declaration, Declaration of Insolvency, Declare, proclaim and make known (I),
in verband met, verlof, toestemming, konsent.
toestaan, involgelen, verlof geven.
bewilligen, toestemmen in.
beschouwen, overwegen.
geadresseerde, ontvanger.
afzender.
bestaanbaar zijn met de wet.
overeenkomstig.
konsulideren, verenigen, samensmelten.
vaststellen, samenstellen, benoemen.
kijzen en aanstellen.
bouwen, oprichten.
tot het bouwen (aanleggen) van.
konsul.
konsulaat.
konsul-generaal.
verbruik.
kontract, overeenkomst.
kontrakteren, overeenkomen.
kontrakterende partijen.
huurcontract, yachtcontract.
strijdig met, in strijd met.
overtreden, inbreuk maken op.
bekwaam, betaalmelijk.
konventie, verdrag.
voortuig, rijdend, ekspeditie.
transport, overdracht.
transportbezorger.
bandid, boef.
schuldig verklaren.
bandiet-en-departement.
bandiet-oppasser, gevangenbewaarder.
schuldigverklaring (bij).
liefsstraft.
raad.
afelingsraad.
wetgevende raad.
in raad.
raadslid.
tegenblad.
hof, gerechtshof.
dekken.
krediet.
kredieteur, schuldeiser.
misdad.
krimineel.
strafzitting.
kronland.
publieke aanklager.
dezer.
rekening-kokrant.
tol, in- en uitgaande rechten.
invroerende rechten.
tolkantoor, kantoor van in- en uitgaande rechten.
tolbeambte.
tolverbond.
schade.
schadevergoeding.
datief.
schuldbrieven.
schuld.
schuldenaar, debiteur.
dood, overlijden.
overledene.
besluiten, beslissen.
verklaring, deklaratie.
insolvent verklaring.
verklaar, proklameer en maak bekend (ik).
Decree (to), Decree (to be — entitled),

Deed,

Deed of transfer,

Deeds' Office,

Default (in — of), Default (judgment by — ),

Defence Department,

Defend (to), Defendant,

Delay,

Deliver (to) up,

Delivery,

Demand,

Demand (to),

Dependency,

Deputy sheriff,

Derelict land,

Derelict (to),

Deviate (to),

Diagram,

Diggings,

Direct (to),

Directed (I am — ),

Directions,

Disallowance,

Discipline,

Discount,

Disposal,

Dispossess (to) of,

Disposing mind,

Disqualified,

Dissolution,

District,

Divert (to),

Division,

Divisional Council,

Docks,

Due (to be — and payable),

Due to (to be),

Duty,

Duly sworn,

Duly.

Dwelling-house,

Edict,

Edictal citation,

Education,

Education Office,

Effect,

Effect (to have),

Effects,

Efectual,

Ejectment (from a house),

Elaborately,

Election,

Elector,

Electoral division,

Eligible,

Empower (to),

Employ (to),

Enable (to),

Endorse (to),

Enter appeal (to),

Enter into (to — a contract),

Entitle (to),

Entitled (to),

bepalen, verordenen.
(aan iemand) toegekend worden.
akte, document.
akte van transport.
registratie kantoor.
bij gebreke van.
verdaad.
departement van landenverdediging.
verweerder.
uitstel, ophoud.
appeven, oppooven, overgeven.
levering.
eisen.
aanhorigheid.
onderhoud.
verlaten grond.
problemen van.
plan, tekening.
verzenden, afzenden.
verleggen; afslaan; uiteenlopen.
schets, figuur.
delfpiëk.
last geven, verordenen.
mij is gelast (opdragen).
aanwijzingen.
afiwerking, weigering.
tucht.
diskonto, korting.
verkoping.
vanz de hand zetten, verkopen.
wel bij — verstand.
onbevoegd.
distributie, uitdeling.
distrikt, afdeling.
von richting veranderen, afslaan.
afdeling, divisie.
afdellingsraad.
dok.
vallen en betaalbaar zijn.
belasting, inkomende rechten.
woonhuis.
edikt, bevelschrift, plakkaat.
ediktale citatie.
opvoeding, onderwijs.
onderwijs-kantoor.
gevolg, uitwerking.
uitwerking hebben.
goederen, bezitting, have.
doeltreffend.
het uitzetten (uit een huis).
uitvoerig.
verklezing, ecktie.
kiezer.
kiesafdeling.
verkiezbaar.
dienst.
gebruiken, huren, in dienst hebben.
achtigen.
in staat stellen.
bepalen, vaststellen.
endoseren.
apél aantekenen.
een contract aangaan.
achtigen.
bevoegd om (tot).
Entitled (to be — to), Entitled,
Equip (to), Equitable,
Estimate, Estimate (to),
Event (in the — of), Evidence,
Evident, Exceed (to),
Exceeding (not), Excellency (His),
Except, Except (to),
Excepting, Exception,
Exception (with the — of), Exclusive (of),
Executive Council, Executor,
Exercise, Exercise (in — of), Expectancy,
Expeditious, Expenditure,
Expense, Expiration,
Explicit, Export (to),
Export trade, Extend (to),
Extension,
Facility (greater), Falling which,
Favour (in — of), Fee,
Field cornet, Fill (to — a vacancy),
File (to), Fine,
Firm (to), First (the — dying),
Fix (to), Fix (to — up),
Force (to be in — ), Forest Department,
Forfeit (to), Frame (to),
Fulfil (to), Fulfilment,
Funds, Furnish (to — names),
Further,
Further examination, Further proof,
General (noun), General (in),
General information (for), Generally,
General Manager,
Given under my hand, God save the King,
Goods,
Government,
Government measure,
Government railways,
Joint lives,
Joint stock company,
Journal,
Judge,
Judgment,
Judicial,
Jurisdiction,
Juror,
Jury,
Justice (Court of — ),
Justice (to bring to — ),
Justice of the peace,

Know all men whom it may concern,
Knowledge (to the — of),

Lands and Mines Department,
Landlord,
Landowner,
Late,
Law,
Law agent,
Law Department,
Lawful,
Lawful (It shall not be — ),
Lawful authority,
Lease,
Leasehold estate,
Ledger,
Legislature,
Leper,
Lessee,
Lessor,
Let (to),
Letter of demand,
Letters patent,
Levy (to — taxes),
Liable (person — to pay),
Liable (shall be — to a fine),
Liberation,
License,
Licensed to,

Licensing Court,
Lien (in — of),
Limit,
Limit (of weight),
Limited,
Liquidation,
Liquidator,
Local,
Local military forces,
Location (native),
Lock-up,
Lodge (to),
Lot,
Lunacy Act,
Lunatic Asylum,
Lung sickness.

Magistrate,
Magistrate’s clerk,
Magistrate’s court,
Maintenance (the — of),
Majesty,
Majority,
Make request (to),
Management,

beider leven, gemeenschappelijk leven.
aanloze vennootschap.
joermaal, dagblad.
rechter.
vonnis, uitspraak.
gerechtelijk.
juridiek, rechtsgebied.
jurideid.
jurie.
recht, gerecht, rechter.
gerechtshof.
voor het gerecht brengen.
vrede rechter.

zij het mit deze bekend, aan allen wie
het moge aangaan.
zover het bekend is.

departement van landen en mijnen.
huisbaas.
lændebesiën.
gewassen, vorige, overleden, wijlen.
act.
wetsagent.
rechtssdepartement.
wettig, wettrlijk.
het is verboden.
wettig gezag.
huurkontrakt, paacht.
pachtgoed, pachtgoed.
grootboek.
vetgevende macht.
melatsheid.
huurdad.
verhuurder.
verhuren.
aanmaning.
ikaakboek.
belasting inuren.
aanspraakvijke persoon.
zal beboet kunnen worden.
vrijlating, vrijstelling, ontslag.
luxatie, patent, vergunning.
gepatenteerd, geschonken, gemachtigd
tot.
liscence-hof.
in plaats van.
limiete, grcns.
hoogste gewicht.
beperkt.
likwidatie, vereffening.
likwidateur, rederaar.
plaatselijk, lokaal.
plaatselijke krijgsmacht.
natuurlijke locatie.
bewaarplaats.
ingevallen, inzonden.
perrrecl.
krankzinnigewet,
krankzinnigegesticht.
longziekte.
magistraat, landdrost.
magistratsklerk.
magistratsk Hof.
het handhaven van.
majesteit.
meerderheid, meerderjarigheid.
verzoek (aanhroag) doen om.
bestuur.
Marriage,
Marriage laws,
Marriage officer,
Master of the Supreme Court,
Material (noun),
Material (adj.),
Matter,
May concern,
Mayor,
Meaning (with the — of),
Medical Board,
Medical examination,
Meet (to — an account),
Meeting,
Member,
Minor,
Minority,
Minor heir,
Minutes,
Monthly,
Mortgaged,
Mortgage bond,
Mortgagee,
Motion,
Mover,
Municipal Act,
Municipality,
Mutually,

Natives,
Native Location,
Next,
Next of kin,
Nett,
Nominate (to),
Nominate and appoint (to),
Nomination,
Nominee,
Non-fulfilment,
Notary public,
Notice,
Notice (to give —),
Notice is hereby given,
Notify for general information (to),
Notify (to),

Oath (to put on —),
Oath (on),
Obey (to),
Observance,
Observe (to),

Observation,
Occupation,
Occupier,
Occupy (to),
Offence,
Offender,
Officer,
Officer (in the army),
Official (noun),
Official (adj.),
Option,
Order,
Order (to),
Order of court,
Order (by),
Order, direct, and appoint (I),
Ordinance, 
Orphan chamber, 
Overdrawn, 

Pain (on — of), 
Parliament, 
Parliament (Act of), 
Parliamentary, 
Particularly, 
Party, 
Pass (to — a document), 
Payable in advance, 
Payment, 
Penalty, 
Penal servitude, 
Per centum, 
Period (for a —), 
Periodically, 
Permission, 
Perpetual quitrent, 
Petitioner, 
Place (of this — ), 
Plaintiff, 
Poll, 
Polling officer, 
Polling station, 
Policy, 
Possess (to), 
Post office, 
Pound, 
Pound master, 
Power of attorney, 
Power and authority vested in me, 
Preceding, 
Precisely, 
Precision, 
Premises, 
Premium, 
Prescriptive right, 
Presence (in the — of), 
Preseats (by these — ), 
Prevent (to), 
Prevention, 
Prime Minister, 
Prison, 
Prisoner, 
Private (adj.), 
Private secretary, 
Procedure, 
Proceed (to), 
Proceedings, 
Proceeds, 
Proclaim (to), 
Proclaim, declare and make known, 
Proclamation, 
Produce (to), 
Produce, 
Profits, 
Promise (noun), 
Promise (to), 
Promulgate (to), 
Property, 
Propose (to), 
Propriety, 
Prorogation (to), 
Prosecute (to), 
Provide (to), 
Provided with, 

ordinantie. 
weesklamer. 
overtrokken. 
op straffe van. 
parlement. 
weet van het parlement. 
parlementair. 
in het biezonder. 
persoon. 
pasaren (een dokument). 
vooruit betaalbaar. 
belasting. 
verbuuring. 
dwaangreep. 
percent, ten honderd. 
gedurende een tijdperk. 
periodiek. 
vergunning, verlof. 
eeuwigdurende erfreact. 
petitie, memorie. 
petitionaire, memorialist. 
athier. 
klager. 
steekbus, verkiezing. 
kiesbeambte. 
stempeld. 
polis. 
besitten. 
postkantoor. 
schatmeester. 
volmacht, prokuratie. 
macht en gezag mij verleend. 
voorgaande, vorige, tevoren. 
precies. 
naauwkeurigheid, juistheid. 
erf. 
proprie. 
verjaringsrecht. 
in tegenwoordigheid van. 
bij deze, hiernede, hieruit. 
voorkomen, verhinderen. 
voorkoming. 
 eerste minister. 
gevangenis, tronk. 
gevangene. 
privaat. 
privaat secretaaris, geheimshuw. 
procedure, rechtvervolging. 
overgaan. 
verrichtingen, proces. 
opbrengst. 
proklameren, uitvaardigen. 
proklameer, verklaar en maak bekend. 
proklamatie, kennisgeving. 
opbrengen, voorbrengen, produceren. 
opbrengst, produkten. 
profij, winst, voordeel. 
beloft. 
beloven. 
tot wel verklaren. 
eigendom. 
voorstellen. 
egemacht. 
verdagen. 
vervolgen, doorzetten. 
voorzien, verschaffen. 
voorzien van.
Provided,
Provision (to make —),
Provisionally,
Provisions,
Proxy,
Public,
Public auction,
Public seal,
Public works,
Published (to),
Published by authority,
Publisher,
Purchase (to),
Purchaser,
Purchase amount,
Purchase money,
Purchase price,
Public,
Public nutrition,
Public seal,
Public work,
Publish (to),
Published by authority,
Publisher,
Public sale,
Public service,
Public transportation,
Public utility,
Public wit,
Purchase,
Publishable,
Proxy,
Public,
Public nutrition,
Public seal,
Public work,
Publish (to),
Published by authority,
Public service,
Public transportation,
Public utility,
Public wit,
Purchase,
Purchase (to),
Purchaser,
Purchase amount,
Purchaser,
Purpose (for the — of),
Qualified,
Question (in),
Railway,
Raise (to),
Raise (to — a loan),
Raise (to — objections),
Rank (to),
Rate,
Rate (at the — of),
Rates,
Ratepayer,
Reason (by — of),
Reasonable,
Reasonable reward,
Reasonable wear and tear,
Record,
Receipt,
Reciprocally,
Recognise (to),
Recommendation,
Record,
Record (to),
Recover (to — money),
Recruiting Depot,
Reduce (to),
Reduction,
Reference (with — to),
Referring to,
Register,
Registered,
Registrar,
Registration,
Registrar of Deeds,
Regulation,
Relating to,
Relation (with — to),
Relation,
Relative,
Relief (to),
Relief,
Relative to,
Remand (prisoner was remand—ed),
Removal,
Remove (to),
Rent,
Repeal,
Report,
Report (to),
Repression,
Republic,
Republican, Request, Request (to), Required (to be), Requisition, Reserve to oneself (to), Residence (to), Resident, Resident Magistrate, Resign (to), Respect (in — of), Respect (with — to), Respectfully, Respectively, Responsible, Returning officer, Returns, Revenue, Revert (to), Rights, Same (the), Sanction (to), Sanitary (Commission), Sanitary officer, Savings Bank, Scab Act, Schedule, Seal, Second (to), Seconder, Secretary, Secretary for Agriculture, Secretary for Native Affairs, Section, Security, See fit (to), Select (to), Sequestration, Set forth (to), Share, Share (to), Sheriff, Shortcomings, Sign (to), Signatory, Signature, Signed, Signify (to), Sinking fund, Situated, Sole, Solely, Sole and universal heir, Solemn, Solemn declaration, Solemnise (to — marriages), Solemnly declare (to), Solitary confinement, Sound and disposing mind (of), Spare diet, Special, Specifications and drawings, Spouse, Stamp, State (to), Statement, republican, verzoek, aanvraag, verzoekschrift. verzoeken, aanvraag doen. nodig, benodigd. moeten zijn, benodigd zijn, verzoeken. rekwisitie. zich voorbehouden. wonen. woning, wonenplaats. wonachtig, plaatselijke magistraat. opgeven, bedanken voor, resigneren. wat betreft, ten aanzien van. ten aanzien van. met verschuldigde eerbied. respectievelijk. respectueus. verantwoordelijk. verslaggevende beamte, stemopnamer. staten, opgaven. inkosten. terugkomen, terugvallen aan. rechten. dezelfde, hetzelfde. goedkeuren, toestemmen. gezondheids (kommissie). sanitaire beambte. spaarbank. brandziektewet. schedule, bijlage. zegel. seconderen, ondersteunen. sekondant. sekretaris, schrijver. landbouwsekretaris. sekretaris voor naturellezaken. sektie, deel, afdeling, artikel. sekuriteit. gereden. kwezen. sekrestatie. onmogelijk, uiteengezet. deel, aandeel. delen, aandeel hebben (nemen). baljuw, kantonrechter. te kortkomen. tekenen, ondertekenen. ondertekenaar. ondertekening, handtekening. getekend. te kennen geven. amortisatie fonds. geleveren. elke. geheel en al. enige en algemene erfgenaam. plechtig, solennelijk. plechtige verklaring. huwelijksschotten. plechtig verklaren. eenzame opbouwing. in het genot van alle geestvermogens. water en brood, rijstwater. bijzonder, speciaal. specificatieën en tekeningen. echtgenoot. zegel. opgeven, aangeven, zeggen, te kennen geven. opgaan, verklaring.
Stationery Department,
Statistics,
Stipulate (to),
Strictly (I - charge),
Stylist (to be — ),
Subdivision,
Sub-guarantor,
Subject (noun),
Subject (to),
Subjoined,
Sublet (to),
Submit (to),
Subscription,
Subsequent,
Substitute (to),
Substitution,
Successive,
Such,
Sue (to),
Sue (law - ),
Summary,
Summon (to),
Summons,
Superintendent-General,
Supervision,
Supreme Court,
Surety,
Surrender (to),
Surrender (voluntary),
Surovation,
Survey,
Survey (to),
Surveyor,
Survivor,
Swear (to),
Swporn (duly),
Swporn declaration,
Swporn translator,
Tariff,
Tariff Act,
Taxes,
Telegraph,
Telegraph (to),
Telegraphist,
Telegram,
Tenancy,
Tenant,
Tender,
Tender (to give out by — ),
Term,
Terms (in — of),
Termiate (to),
Territory,
Testament,
Testator,
Thus done and passed,
Time table,
Times (at all — ),
Title,
Title deed,
Town,
Town council,
Trade-mark,
Tradesman,
Transfer,
Transfer (to),
Transit (tu),
Transit duty,

department van schrijfbenodigdheden.
statistiek, opgaven.
bepaling, bepaling.
vaststellen, bepalen, bedingen.
word ik volgens bepaald.
gewoon te worden.
onderverdeling, onderafdeling, subdivision.
achterwaarder.
onderwerp, onderwerp.
hier bijgevoegd, hierna volgend.
derwijsparen.
onderwerp.
inschrijving, subkriptie, abonnementsprijs.
daarna volgende.
substituieren, in de plaats stellen.
subsitutie, plaatsvervanging.
achteren volgend.
zodoanig, zuik een.
vervolgen.
rechtsgeding.
uitreelk, korte inhoud.
dagvaarden.
dagvaarding, oproeping.
superintendent-generaal.
opzicht, overzicht, supervisie.
hoogerechtshof.
borg.
zich overgeven, boedel overgeven.
vrijwillige overgave.
surrogatie, subrogatie.
opmeting.
opmaken.
lantmeter.
lengte, overlijvende.
zweren, bezweren.
bewerkelijk gezoveren (besworren, beëdigd).
beëdigde verklaring.
beëdigd vertaler (translateur).
tarief.
tariefwet.
belasting.
telegaaf.
telegafreren.
telegafrast.
telegram.
huurbezit, pachting.
huurder, pachter.
inschrijving, tender.
aanbesteden.
termijn, tijd, tijdperk.
krachtens, naar luid van.
ten einde brngen, volorneigen, afopen.
gebied, grondgebied.
testament, wilsbeschikking.
tester.
aldus gedaan en gepasseerd,
tijds, boorster.
te allen tijd.
recht, aanspraak.
grondbrief.
estad, dorp, gemeente.
estadsraad.
handelsmerk.
handwerksman.
transport, overdracht.
transporteren, overdragen.
in transitio.
donkvoorbelaasting.
Transmit (to),
Transport,
Transport (to),
Treasury,
Trial,
Trial (the — is postponed),
Trial (to be put up for — ),
Trial (to take one's — ),
Try (to),
Trustee,

Ultimately,
Ultimo (ult.),
Unempire,
Unauthorised,
Under and by virtue of,
Under provision of,
Undersigned,
Undue,
Unemployed,
Upset price,
Usher,
Usufruct,

Vacancy,
Vacant,
Valid and effectual,
Verdict,
Vest in (to),
Vested in me,
View (in — of),
View (with a — to),
Village board of management,
Virtue of the powers (by),
Void (null and — ),
Vote,
Voter,
Voucher,

Warehouse (to),
War Office,
Ward,
Warder,
Warrant,
Whereas,
Will (last),
Witness,
Witness (to),
Writ,
VOCABULARY—WOORDELIJST.

Note.—The letters S., W., M., and A., affixed to Verbs, stand for Strong, Weak, Mixed, and Anomalous.

A.

Ability, bekwaamheid (de).
Able (to be), in staat zijn.
Able, in staat, kunnen.
Aboard, aan boord.
About, van, omtrent, rond (place).
Absent, afwezig.
Accede to (to), toestaan, A.
Accept (to), aanemen, W.
Accident, ongeluk (het).
Accidentally, bij ongeluk.
Accompany (to), vergezellen, W.
Accusation, beschuldiging (de).
Accustomed, gewoon.
Accustomed (to get), gewoon worden.
Acknowledge (to), aanvaarden, W.
Account (On - of), verantwoording (het).
Acquire (to), verkrijgen, S.
Across, dwars.
Act, handelen.
Activity, werkzaamheid (de).
Add (to), bijvoegen, W.
Administration of justice, rechtbeding (de).
Admired, bewonderd.
Adventure, avontuur (het).
Advice, raad (de).
Advise (to), aanraden, M.
Advocate, advocaat (de).
Ald (to), verschaffen, W.
Aflraid, bang, bevreesd.
After, na.
Afternoon, middag, namiddag; this —, van middag.
Afterwards, daarna.
Again, weer.
Against, tegen.
Age (at the — of), in de ouderdom...
Age, euw (de).
Ago, geleden.
Agreeable, aangenaam, prettig.
Agreement, verstandhouding (de); to make an —, een verdrag sluiten.
Angry, boos, kwaad.
Air, lucht (de).

Alas, helaas.
Alive, levend.
All, al; — kinds of, allerlei.
Allow (to), toestaan, A.
Ally, bondgenoot (de).
Almighty, alomachtig.
Almond tree, amandelboom (de).
Almost, bijna.
Along, langs.
Alphabet, alfabet (het).
Already, reeds, al.
Also, ook.
Alum, aluin.
Always, altijd.
Always, altijd.
Answer, antwoord (het).
Amount, bedrag (het), mene (de).
Amuse (to), vermaak, W.
Ancestors, voorouders (de).
Animal, dier (het).
Another, een andere.
Answer (to), vermanen, W.
Annoy (to), bemoeilijken, W.
Annoyance, verveeling (de).
Applicant, aanwants (de).
Appointment, afspraak (de).
Appreciated, geacht.
Approach, naderen (het).
Arbitre, schiedsrechter.
Archangel, aartsengel (de).
Arm, arm (de).
Armour, armas (de).
Army, leger (het).
Allocate (to — for), toedelen, W.
Arrangement, schikking (de).
Arrange (to — for), toedelen, W.
Art, kunst (de).
Broom, bezem, stoffer (de).
Brother, broeder (de).
Brown, bruin.
Brushwood, kreupelhout, struikgewas, (het).
Brute, onmens (het).
Bucket, emmer (de).
Bud, knop (de).
Build (to), bouwen, W.
Bull, sner (de).
Bundle of sticks, takhebos (de).
Burden, last (de).
Butcher, burger (de).
Bury (to), begraven, S.
Bush, struik (de).
Busy, druk.
Butter, boter (de).
Calendar, kalender (de).
Cackle, kieken, W.
Calf, kalf (het).
Call (to wake), oproepen, S.; — (to), roepen, S.; — upon, opzoeken, een visite maken; — at, aankomen.
Calm, kalm; kalme (de).
Calmness, kalme (de).
Camel, kameel (de).
Camp, kamp (het).
Campfire, kamper (de).
Canal, kanaal (het).
Canary, kanarie (de).
Canoe, roeiboot (de).
Candle, kaars (de).
Candlestick, blaker, kandelaar (de).
Canoe, rotting (de).
Cannon, kanon (de).
Cap, muts (de); kluif (de). [tot.
Capable (to be) — of, in staat zijn
Capital, hoofdstad (de).
Captain, kapitein (de).
Cape, kaap (de) 

C. 

Cackle (to), kieken, W.
Cage, kooi (de).
Cake, koek (de).
Calendar, kalender (de).
Calf, kalf (het).
Call (to wake), oproepen, S.; — (to), roepen, S.; — upon, opzoeken, een visite maken; — at, aankomen.
Calm, kalm; kalme (de).
Calmness, kalme (de).
Camel, kameel (de).
Camp, kamp (het).
Campfire, kamper (de).
Canal, kanaal (het).
Canary, kanarie (de).
Canoe, roeiboot (de).
Candle, kaars (de).
Candlestick, blaker, kandelaar (de).
Canoe, rotting (de).
Cannon, kanon (de).
Cap, muts (de); kluif (de). [tot.
Capable (to be) — of, in staat zijn
Capital, hoofdstad (de).
Captain, kapitein (de).
Cape, kaap (de)
VOCABULARY

Complain (to — of), klagen over, W.
Comprehension, begrip (het).
Convert, concert (het).
Condemn (to), veroordeelen, W.
Conducive to, bevooroorlijk aan, goed voor.
Conduct, gedrag (het).
Confectionery, gebak (het).
Confess (to), bekennen, W.
Confined to, opgesloten in.
Conscientious, nauwgezet.
Consecrate (to), wijden, W.
Conscious, bewust.
Consent, toestemming (de).
Consider (to), overwegen, S.; denken, A.; houden voor; bedenken, A.; overleggen, W.; to — necessary, nodig aeken.
Considerably, aankerkelijk.
Consolation, troost (de).
Consort, gemaal (de).
Consult (to), raadplegen, W.
Consumption, verbruik (het).
Contented, tevreden.
Contents, inhoud (de).
Continually, voorzichtig.
Continue (to — to be), blijven, S.
Convent, klooster (het).
Conversation, gesprek (het).
Convey (to), brengen, A.
Conviction, overtuiging (de).
Convinced, overtuigd.
Cook, kok (de).
Cool, koel.
Copy, kopie (de).
Corn, lijdoren (de).
Corner, hoek (de).
Correct, juist.
Corrupt (to), bedorven, S.
Corset, korset (het).
Cost, kosten (de).
Costly, kostbaar.
Cotton, katoen (het).
Council, raad (de).
Counselor, raadsman (de).
Count, graaf (de).
Country, land (het).
Couple (a — of), een paar (het).
Courage, moed (de).
Courageous, moedig.
Course of time (in), van lieverlee.
Course (of), natuurlijk.
Course, loop, koers (de).
Court, hof (het).
Cow, koe (de), rund (het).
Cream, room (de).
Creation, schepping (de).
Creature (little), schepseltje (het).
Crew, manschap (de), bemanning (de).
Crime, misdadig (de).
Criminal, misdadder (dc).
Crow, kraai (de).
Cross, kruis (het).
Cross (to), oversteken, S.
Crow, kraai (de).
Crowd, schaar (de).
Crow, kraai (de).
Cry (to), roepen, S.
Cunning, looa.

Cup, kop (de), kopje (het).
Cupboard, kast (de).
Cure (to), genezen, S.
Curios, merkwaardigheden.
Curtain, gordijn (het).
Custard, vla (de).
Customs, gewoonten, zeden.

D.

Dainties, lekkernijen (dc).
Dance (to), dansen, W.
Danger, gevaar (het).
Dangerous to, gevaarlijk voor.
Danish, deens.
Dare (to), durven, A.
Dark, donker (het).
Darling, lieveling (de).
Date, datum (de); to —, dateren, W.
Dawn (to), aanbreken, S.
Day (24 hours), elmaal (het), dag (de).
Deacon, deken (de).
Dead, dood.
Deal, doof.
Deal (a good — ot), heel wat.
Dear, dierbaar.
Death, dood (de).
Deceit, bedrog (het).
Decide (to), bedriegen, S.
Decide (to), beslissen, W.
Decidedly, beslist.
Decisive, afdoend.
Deck, dek (het).
Decline (to), weigeren, W.
Deed, daad (dc).
Deep, diep.
Defence, verdedigingsrade (da).
Defend (to), verdedigen, W.
Deformed, wanstellig.
Delightful, verrukkelijk.
Delighted, verrukt.
Demand, eis, pl. eisen.
Den, hol (het).
Depart (to), heengaan, A., vertrekken, S.
Departure, vertrek (het).
Deposit, inleg, inlage (de).
Depth, diepte (de).
Descendant, afstammeling (de).
Desert region, woestijnstreken.
Desolate, verlaten.
Desire, begeerte (de).
Desirous, verlangend.
Desk, lessenaar (de).
Despair (to — of), wanhopen aan, W.
Despair (to — of), wanhopen aan, W.
Despire (to), verachten, W.
Destroy (to), vernietigen, verwoesten, W.
Development, ontwikkeling (de).
Devote (to oneself to), zich toewijzen aan, W.
Dexterous, behendig.
Diamond, diamant (het en de).
Dietation, diktaat (het).
Dictionary, woordenboek (het).
Dle (to), overiJiden, S.
Differ (to), verschil len, W.
Dine of, verschil len, onderscheid (het).
Different, anders, verschil lend.
Difficult, moeilijk; —r, moeite (de).
Dig (to — up), opruimen, S.
THE STANDARD DUTCH GRAMMAR

Digestible, verterbaer.
Dillgant, vlijtig.
Dim, dof.
Dining-room, eetkamer (de).
Dinner, maandmaal, dínce (het).
Dirt, vuilnis (het).
Dirty, vuil, etc.
Disagreeable, onegunaam, waar.
Disappointed, teleurgesteld.
Disc, schijf (de).
Discharge (to), ontslaan, A.
Discover (to), ontdekken, W.
Discuss (to), verhandelen, W.
Disgrace (to bring — to), schande brengen over, A.
Disheartening, onmoedigend.
Dismal, akelig.
Dismiss (to), wegsturen, W.
Dismount (to), van een paard stijgen, S.

Disobey (to), ongehoorzaam zijn aan.
Disorder, wanorde (de).
Disperse (to), voorwouden, W., uitcyaan, A.
Disrespectfully, oneerbiedig.
Disssembler, vinaardag (de).
Distance, afstand (de).
Distinction, onderscheiding (de).
Distress, nood (de).
Distressed, beangstigd.
District, distrik (hrt).
Distrust, wantrouwen (het).
Disturbant, onlasten (de).
Divé (to), duiken, S.
Divide (to), verdelen, W.
Dizzy, duizelig.
Doctor, dokter (de).
Doctrine, leer, leerstoelling (de).
Document, stuk, document (het).
Door, hinde (de).
Dog, hond (de).
Dollar, duiider (de).
Dolphin, dolfijn (de).
Doll, pop (de).
Dominion, gebied (het), hervenschap (de).
Done, op.
Donkey, ezelt (de).
Donor, giver (de).
Door, deur (de).
Doubt (to), betwijfelen, W.; twijfelen (de).
Double (to), verdubbelen, W.
Dove, duif (de).
Down, dán (helt).
Dozen, dozijn (het).
Drag (to), slepen, W.
Drake, woerd (de).
Draught, drank (de).
Draw (to), trekken, S., — near, onderen, W.
Drawing, tekening (de).
Drenched, doornat.
Dress, spaces (dc).
Dress (to—one self), zich aankleden, W.
Drink (to), drinken, S.
Drift (to — drinken), rouddrijven, S.
Droll, boor (de).
Drive (to), rijden, S.; — rijtoer (de).
Driver, koetsier (de).

Drop (to), laten vallen, S.; — asleep, in slaap vallen; — down, neer-
vallen, S.
Drop, droppel (de).
Dry, droog.
Duck, eend (de).
Due west, vlak west.
Due (time), bepaald.
Duke, hertog (de).
Dukedom, hertogdom (het).
Duly, naar waarde.
Dumb, ston.
Dune, stoomerijk, domoor (de).
During, gedurende, tijdens.
Dutch, hollands.
Dutiful, oppassend.
Duty, plicht (de).
Dwellinghouse, woonhuis (het).

E.

Eagle, adelaar (de).
Ear, oor (het).
Earth, graven (het).
Early, vroeg.
Early morning, de vroege morgen, 's morgens vroeg; — this morning, 's morgens vroeg.
Earn (to), verdienen, W.
Earth, aarde (de).
Earthly, aardig.
Eastern, oostelijk.
Eat (to), eten, S.
Echo, echo (de).
Edge, rand (de).
Effort, poging (de).
Egg, ei (het); — basket, eiermand (de).
Egyptian, egyptisch.
Elaborate, zorgvuldig bewerkt.
Elastic, werkzacht.
Eldest, oudste.
Elephant, olifant (de).
Elsewhere, ergens anders.
Embassy, gezantschap (het).
Embitter (to), verbitteren, W.
Embrace (to), omhelzen, W.
Emunence, hoogte (de).
Emotion, woeling (de).
Empire, rijk (het).
Employer, baas (de).
Empress, keizerin (de).
End, eind (het).
Enemy, vijand (de).
English, engels.
Enjoy (to), genieten van, S.
Enter (to), binnenkomen, S.
Entertainment, voorstelling (de).
Entirely, volkomen.
Entreat (to), smeken, W.
Entrust (to), toevertrouwen, W.
Equal, gelijk; — ly, even.
Equanimity, gelijkmoedigheid (de).
Escape (to), ontkomen, A.
Escort, geleide (het).
Especially, voornamelijk, bijzonder.
Eternal, eeuwig.
Eternity, eeuwighheid (de).
Europe, Europa (het).
VOCABULARY

Even, zelfs, gelijk.
Evening, avond (de).
Events (at all — ), in alle gevallen.
Ever, ooit.
Every one, iedereen.
Everywhere, overal.
Eye, oog (het).
Exactly, juist, precies.
Exaggerated, overdreven.
Examination, eksamen (het).
Exceedingly, uitmarge.
Exclaim (to), uitroepen, S.
Explanation, verklaring, uitlijging (het).
Exist (to), bestaan, A.
Existence, bestaan (het).
Expect (to), verwachten, W.
Expense, onkosten.
Expensive, duur.
Experience, belering (de).
Expert, deskundige (de).
Explain (to), verklaren, W.
Explanation, verklaring, uitlegging (de).
Explosion, ontploffing (de).
Exquisite, uitgeschotst.
Extend (to), uitbreiden, W.
Eye, oog (het).
Eyelid, ooglid (het).
F.
Face, gezicht (het).
Fact, feit (het); in — , inderdaad, feitelijk.
Failed, vertoefd.
Fall in business (to), bankroet gaan, A.
Fall (to), niet slaan, W.; druipen (ex.)
Paint (to), in zwijn (flouw) vallen, S.
Fair, kermis (de).
Fall, ninnif (de).
Faithful, trouw.
Fall (to, of prices), dalen, W.
Val (to), val (de).
False, vals.
Falsehood, leugen (de).
Family, familie (de).
Fancy (to), zich voorstellen, W.
Far and wide, wijd en zijd.
Farmer, boer (de).
Far off, verafgelogen.
Far, ver.
Fatal, noodlottig, dodelijk.
Fat, lot (het).
Fatigue, moeheid, vermoeiend.
Fault, gebrek (het).
Fainting, zonder fonkel.
Fear, vrees (de); — ful, vreeslijk.
Fear (to), vrezen, W.
Female, wijfje (het).
Fertility, vruchtbaar.
Fetter (to), boelen, W.
Fever, koorts (de).
Few, weinig.
Field, veld (het).
Fierce, vuil (of dogs), kwaad.
Fight, gevecht (het).
Figure, figuur (het); eijfer (het).
File, vijl (de).
Find fault with (to), aanmerking maken op, W.
Find out (to), ontdekken, uitvinden, S.
Find (to), vinden.
Fine, mooi.
Finished, af, klaar.
Fix, den (de).
Fire, brand (de).
Firm, vastberaden, stevig, kras.
First, eerst, 't eerst.
Fit, geschikt.
Fifty, vijf.
Flag, vlag (de).
Flatter (to), wiegen, W.; to — vanity, strelen, W.
Flash, viss (het).
Flea, vlo (de).
Flee (to), vluchten, W.
Fleet, vloot (de).
Flemish, vlams.
Flight, vlucht (de).
Floor, vloer (de).
Florin, gulden (de).
Flower, bloem (de).
Fly (to), vliegen, S.
Fold, kruil (de).
Follage, gebladerte (het).
Folio, foliant (de).
Follow, volgelint (de).
Fund (to be — of), houden van, A.
Foot, voet (de); on — , te voet.
For, voor; — aanzien, aangezien.
Forget (to), vergeten.
Forbid (to), verboden, W.
Force, kracht (de).
Forest, woud, bos (het).
Foreign, vreemd, uitlands.
Forget (to), vergeten, S.
Forgive (to), vergeven, S.
Former, oud; in — times, in vroegere tijden.
Formulary, formueir (het).
For sale, veil, te koop.
Fortnight (a), een veertiende dagen.
Forward, voorwaarts.
Fought, gekoerd.
Found (to), oprichten, W.
Fowlhouse, hoenderhok (het).
Fowl, hoenders (het).
Fox, vos (de).
Frail, broos.
France, Frankrijk (het).
Frankly, openhartig.
Frankness, vrijmoedigheid (de).
Frenemy, vreemde.
Fresh, fris, verse.
Friend, vriend, vriendin (de).
Frigate, fregat (het).
Frighten (to), verschrikken, W. & S.
Frightful, ijdel; — ly, verschrikkelijk.
Frill, glovisel (het).
Fringe, franje (de).
Front door, voordeur (de).
Fractious, doodgerijpt.
Prozen over, bevroren.
Fruit, vruchten; — thee, vruchtboom (de).
Frightful, vluchteling (de).
Full subject, algemene onderworpenheid.
Funeral, begrafenis (de).
Furniture, huisraad (het).

G.

Gallipot, galjoot (het).
Galleys, galieren (de).
Gang, spel (het).
Games (to play — ), spellen doen, S.
Gander, ganzen (de).
Garden, tuin (de).
Gardener, tuinman, hovenier (de).
Gaudy, bont.
General, algemeen; in — , in 't algemeen.
Generation, geslacht (het).
Genius, genie (het).
German, geranium (de).
Germ, kiem (de).
German, duits.
Germany, Duitsland (het).
Get (to), worden, S.; krijgen, S.; to — on, vooruitkomen, A.; to — into trouble, in moeilijkheid raken, W.
Gimlet, boor (de).
Giraffe, giraffe (de).
Girl, meisjes (het).
Give (to), geven, S.
Glass, glas (het).
Glimmer, schijnsel (het).
Glitter (to), glinsteren, W.
Globe, bol, aardbol (de).
Glitterous, roermijt, luisterrijk, verrukkelijk.
Glossy, glanzig.
Glove, handschoen (de).
Glove, ijskrachtig (het).
God, god (de).
God, god (het).
Gone, weg.
Go out, uitgaan, A.; — with, mede-
gaan met; — to war, ten strijde
uittrekken, S.; to — on repeating,
gedurig herhalen, W.
Good, good; the — welzijn (het);
— hearted, goedhartig; — looking,
knap.
Goodbye, vaarwel.
Goodness, goedheid (de).
Goods, goederen (de).
Goose, gans (de).
Gorge, kloof (de).
Gospel, evangelie (het).
Government, regering (de), governe-
ment (het).
Gown, tabbërd (de).

Graces, bevaltigheden (de).
Gradually, langzamerhand.
Train, graan (het).
Grand, groot.
Grandfather, grootvader (de).
Grant (to), schonken, S., toestaan, A.
Grapple, druijf (de).
Grapes (to), grippen, S.
Grass, gras (het); — border, grasrand
(de).
Gratitude, dankbaarheid (de).
Grave, graf (het); ernstig.
Grass (to), weiden, W.
Greatest quantity possible, grootst moge-
lke hoeveelheid.
Greece, Griekenland.
Greek, grieeks.
Green, groen.
Grey, grijs.
Grieve (to), verdriet doen, A.
Grim, grijnzend (de).
Grip (to), grippen, S.
Ground, grond (do).
Grown to manhood, man geworden.
Growth, wassen (de).
Guard (of a train), conducteur (de).
Guess (to), raden; (to surmise) gissen,
W.
Guest, gast (de).
Guide, gids (de).
Gum, gom (de).
Gipsy, heiden, Zigruner (de).

H.

Haar, harig, behaard.
Hall, zaal (de).
Hammer, hamer (de).
Hand (to), overgeven, S.; to — back,
teruggaan, S.; to — over, over-
handigen, W.
Hand (at), bij de hand.
Hand, wijzer, hand (de).
Handle, handvat (het).
Handsome, mooi, knap.
Happen (to), gebeuren, W.
Happiness, geluk (het).
Happy, gelukkig.
Hardly, bezwaarlijk.
Hart, ontbering (de).
Hare, haas (de).
Harmonium, harmonium (het).
Harness (to — to), voorspannen, W.
Harp, harp (de).
Harpoon, harpoen (de).
Harvest, oogst (de).
Hastily, haastig.
Hat, hoed (de).
Hatred, bijl (de).
Hawk, havik (de).
Hazardous, gewaagd.
He, hij.
Head, hoofd (het).
Health, gezondheid (de).
Hear (to), horen, W.
Heart, hart (het).
Hearth, haard (de).
Heat, hitte (de).
Teeth, het, heide (de).
Heathen, heiden (de).
Heaven, hemel (de).

Heavy, zwaar.

Heed (to), luisteren naar, W.

Heel, heel (de).

Heels, verzenen (de).

Height, hoogte (de).

Heir, erfgenaam (de).

Hellas, Hellas (het).

Helm, roer (het). ....

Help, help (de).

Hen, hen (de).

Henceforward, voortaan.

Here, hier.

Hereupon, hierna.

Hesitate (to), aarzelen, W.

Hewn, gehouwen.


Hiding place, schuilplaats (de).

High, hoog.

Hill, heuvel (de).

Hindleg, achterpoot (de).

Hipp, heup (de).

History, geschiedenis (de).

Hoarse, schor.

Hoe, schoofel (de).

Hole, raam (het).

Hole, gat (het).

Hollander, Hollander (de).

Home, thuist: (noun) thuist (het),

(adv.) naar huis,

Honest, braaf.

Honesty, eerlijkheid (de).

Honj, hongerig (de).

Honeycomb, honingraat (de).

Honour, eer (de).

Honoured, gelast.

Horizon, horizont (de).

Horrible, gruwelijk.

Horse, paard (het).

Horseshoe (en), te paard.

Hospital, hospitaal (het).

Hot, heet.

Hour (en — and a half), anderhalf uur.

House, huis (het).

How, hoe; however, hoe . . . ook.

Human, menselijk.

Human being, mens (de); — race, mensenras (het).

Humility, nederigheid, dermoed (de).

Hundred, honderd.

Hunger, honger (de).

Hungry, kampioen.

Hurricane, orkaan (de).

Hurry (to), zich haasten, W.

Hurt (to), bezoenen, W.

Husband, man (de).

Hit, hout (de).

Hypocrite, verraarder (de).

I.

Idea, idee, denkbeeld (het).

Idol away (to), verbannen, W.

Idler, luidraad (de).

Ignorance, onkunde (de).

Ill, ziek; (noun) kwaa\d (het).

Image, beeld (het).

Imitate (to), naa\digen, W.

Impartial, onpartijdig.

Impatient, ongeduldig.

Important, belangrijk.

Imposing, indrukwekkend.

Improve (to), ontwikkelen, W.; ver-

beteren, W.

Impulse (to), stimuleren, S.

Incest, inwrok (de).

Insensitively, onhoorbaar.

Inclination, neigung (de).

Indeed, inderdaad, waarlijk.

India, Indië.

Indian, Indiaas.

Indignant, verontwaardigd, gebelgd.

Induce (to), bewegen, S., eerst brengen, A.

Infant, w\d (het).

Inferior (to be — to), achterstaan bij, A.

Inform (to), mededelen, W.

Inhabitant, inwoner (de).

Injury, kwaad (het), beschadiging (de).

Inkpot, inktpot (de).

Inn, herberg (het).

Inquire (to), vragen, M.

Inquiring (noun), onderzoeken (het).

Inspird, lief.

Instance (for — ), bij voorbeeld,

Instead of, in plaats van.

Instruct (to), bevelen, S.

Instructed, opgedragen.

Intructive, leerzaam.

Instrument, instrument (het).

Intelligent, verstandig.

Intend (to), van plan zijn,

Intention, voorzien (het).

Interest (to), interesseer, W., belang

inboezemen, W.

Interpreter, tolk (de).

In the evening, 's avonds.

Introduce (to), invoeren, W.

Inward, innerlijk.

Irishman, Ier (dc).

Iron, ijzer (het).

Italian, Italiaans.

J.

Jailer, cijfer (de).

Jane, Janne (je).

Japanese, Japanse.

Jasmin, jasmijn (de).

Jewel, juweel (het).

John, Jan.

Journey, reis, tocht (de).

Joy, vreugde, blijdschap (de).

Judge, rechter (de).

Judgment, oordeel (het).

Jug, kan (de).

Jump (to), springen, S.

June, Juni.

Just, rechtsvaardig, juist.

K.

Kaffir War, Kafferoorlog (de).

Keel, keel (de).

Keep (to), bewaren, W.

Keep (to — down), bedwingen, S.

Key, sleutel (de).

Kill (to), doden, W.
THE STANDARD DUTCH GRAMMAR

Kind, soort (de).
Kind, vriendelijk.
Kindness, vriendelijkheid (de), vriendelijk (de).
King, koning (de).
Kirchen, kuren (de).
Kneen, kneeg (de).
Kneel down (to), neerknielen, W.
Knife, mes (het).
Knock (to), kloppen, W.
Know (to), kennen, W.; weten, S.
Knowledge, kunde, Kennis (de), Known, bekend.

L.
Label (to), adresseren, W.
Lady, heet (de); boot, hence, vreter (de).
Ladder, ladder (de).
Lady, dame (de).
Lamb, lam (het).
Lamp, lamp (de).
Language, taal (de).
Laplog, schoothondje (het).
Lapse, verloop (het).
Large, groot.
Last, laatst (adv.), 't laatst; — night, latenavond.
Late, laat, is laat; of — years, in de laatste jaren; — at night, 's avonds laat.
Lately, in de laatste tijd, onlangs.
Later (the), laatstgenoemde.
Laugh (to), lachen, M.
Law, wet (de).
Lay flat (to), blijven, W.
Lay out (to), aanleggen, W.
Lay to rest (to), te rusten neerleggen, W.

Lay, lat.
Lead (to), leiden, W.
Leading strings, leiband (de).
Leaf, blad (het). Learn (to), leren, W.
Learned, geleerd.
Least, minst.
Leave, verlof (het).
Leave (to), nalaten, S.; to — for, vertrekken naar, S.
Leg, been (het).
Legible, leesbaar.
Lead (to), lenen, W.
Lens, lens (de).
Less, minder.
Lesson, les (de).
 Least, opdat. niet.
Letter (to), laten, S.
Letter, brief (de).
Level, vlak.
Level at (to), aanleggen op, W.
Liar, leugenaar (de).
Library, bibliotheek (de).
Lie (to), liggen, W.
Lid, deksel (het).
Lie (to), leggen, S.
Lie down (to), liggen neerleggen, W.
Life, leven (het).
Lifeless, levenloos.
Lift (to), ophalen, W.
Light, licht (het).
Lighting, bliksem (de).
Like (to), lust hebben in; — best, 't liefst hebben.
Likely, waarzichelijk.
Likewise, ook.
Lily, lelie (de).
Limb, ledemaat (het).
Lime, kalk (de).
Line tree, linde (de).
Linen, linnen (het).
Linen, vlasvlak (de), Lion, leeuw (de).
Listen (to), luisteren naar, W.
Lit, aantrek.
Little, klein; (quantity), winig.
Live (to), leven, W.
Lively, levendig, speels.
Look, oog (de).
Lookstone, maansteen (de).
Lobby, portaal (het).
Lock (to), sluiten, S.
Lock, slot (het).
Lardy, verharen.
Lonely, eenzaam, afgelegen.
Long, lang; as — as, zolang; — since, reeds lang.
Look (to), or uitzien A.; — up, opzoeken, A.; — for, zoeken naar.
Looked on, aanschouwen, W.
Loose (to), losmaken, berijden, W.
Loss (to), verliezen, S.
Lot, hoop (de); lot (het).
Loud, laag.
Lois, Lodewijk.
Love of truth, waarheidsliefde (de).
Low, laag.
Lung, long (de).
Lyddian, luids.
Lyons, Lyon.

M.
Mad, gek.
Madam, mevrouw (de).
Madness, raarheid (de).
Magnanimity, grootmoedigheid (de).
Main road, hoofdweg (de).
Maintain (to), handhaven, W.
Majesty, majesteit (de).
Make (to), maken, W; — sure (to), zich vergewisren.
Male, mannetje (het).
Manage (to), erin slagen, W.
Manager, directeur (de).
Mane, manen (de).
Manifest, openbaar.
Mankind, mensdom (het).
Manners, gedrag, manieren (de).
Many, veel.
Marble, knikker (de).
 Mare, merrie (de).
Market, markt (de).
Market house, markthuis (het).
Market place, markt (de).
Martyr, slachtoffer (het).
Mask, mombaak (het).
Mason, metselaar (de).
Mass, massa (de).
Mast, most (de).
Match, luister (de).
Material, stof (de), materiaal (het).
Mathematics, meetkunde (de).
Matter, zaak (de).
Mattress, matras (de).
May, mei.
Me, mij.
Meadow, weil, weide (de).
Meaning, bedoeling (de).
Measles, nieselen (de).
Measure (to), meeten, S.
Measured, gemeten.
Meat, vlees (het).
Medicine, medicijn (de).
Meet (to), ontmoeten, W.; - demands, vöden aan de elen.
Member, lid, lidmaat (de).
Memory, geheugen (het).
Menagerie, menagerie (de).
Mind, geest (de), gemoed (het).
Mere, meer: -ly, slechts alleen.
Merchant, koopman, handelaar (de).
Merrily, eufhik.
Merry, trotk, levenslustig.
Message, boodschap (de).
Messenger, gezant, boodschapper (de).
Microscope, microscoop (de).
Mighty, machtig.
Military, militair (de); (adj.) krijgs-
Milk, melk (de).
Muse, mijn (de); de mijne.
Minute, minuut (de).
Misapplication, verkeerde toepassing.
Missed, verkeerde handeling, wandaad, misdaad (de).
Misritable, waar, ellendig.
Misery, ellende (de).
Mislead (to), misleiden, W.
Miss, Juffrouw (de).
Miss (to), missen, W., verliezen, S.
Mistake, fout (de).
Mistaken (to be), zich vergissen, W.
Misty, mistig.
Mite, mijl (dt).
Mocking, spot (de).
Model, voorbeeld (het).
Modesty, zedigheid (het).
Mole, moll (de).
Money, geld (het).
Monk, monnik (de).
Mouth, mond (de).
More, meer.
Moreover, bovendien.
Morning, ochtend (de), morgen (de).
Moved, sterveling (de); (adj.) stervelk.
Mother, moeder (de).
Mother of pearl, pauwelsmoer (het).
Motto, leus (de).
Mount, berg (de); -range, berg-
te (het).
Moved at heart, diep geroerd.
Mouse, muis (de).
Mouth, mond (de).
Murderer, moordenaar (de).
Music, muziek (de).
Musket, musket (het).
Muse, zanger (de).
Mustard, mosterd (de).
Nail, spijker (de).
Name, naam (de); by — , met name.
Nation, volk (het).
Native country, gebouwland (het).
Naturally, van nature.
Nature, natuur (de).
Naughtily, ondergrond, stoot.
Navy cadet, adelsborel (de).
Near, nab.
Neared, naderden.
Nearly, bijna.
Necessary, nodig.
Neck, nek, hals (de).
Needlewoman, naaister (de).
Neglect (to), verwaarlozen, W.
Neighbour, naaste, buurman (de).
Nervous, zenuwachtig.
Nestling, nesteling (de).
Never, nooit.
Nevertheless, toch, niettemin.
New, nieuw.
News, tijding (de), nieuws (het).
Next, volgend; — to, naast.
Niece, nicht (de).
Night (ut — ) de avond.
Nine, negen.
Nobility, adelheid (de); — of heart,
zijleedel (de).
Noble, edel.
Noise, geluid (het).
North (the), Noorden (het).
Norwegian, noor.
Nose, neus (de).
Not, nieuw; — a, gcn; — yet, nog niet.
Nothing, niets.
Notice (to), bemerken, opletten, W.
Number of, aantal (het).
Nurse, kindermiide (de).
Nymph, nimf (de).
Oaktree, eikboom (de).
Oats, haver (de).
Obedience, gehoorzaamheid (de).
Obedient, gehoorzaam.
Oblique, schuin.
Oblige (to), dwingen, S.
Obliged (to be — ), verplicht zijn.
Ocean, oceaan (de).
O’clock, uur (het).
Occupation, bezig zijn (het).
Occur (to), gebeuren, W.
Offended (to be — nt), zich ergeren
over.
Offer, aanbod (het).
Offer (to), aanbieden, S.
Office, kantoor (het).
Offerer, offieier (de).
Official, beambte (de).
Often, dikwijls.
Oftener, meer.
Old, oud.
Old age, ouderdom (de).
Olympian games, olympische spelen.
Once, cenmaal, eens; — more, nog cenmaal.
Only, slechts, maar.
On the sly, achterbaks.
Open (to), open doen.
Openly, openlijk.
Opinion, opinie (de), oordeel (het).
Opponent, tegenstander (de).
Opportunity, gelegenheid, kans (de).
Oracle, orakel (het).
Orchard, boomgaard (de).
Ordinary, gewoon.
Organ, orgel (het).
Oriental, Oosterling (de).
Origin, oorsprong (de).
Originate, bijzonder.
Origin (to), ontstaan, A.
Orphan, wees (de).
Oser, tien (de).
Ostrich, striuwe (de).
Other, ander.
Our, behoorden.
Ourself, onselen.
Outmost, uiterst.
Outside, buiten.
Oven, oven (de).
Ovulation, overolutions.
Overall (to), over 't hoofd zien, A.
Overtake (to), inhalen, W; overvallen, S.
Ovulate, te zwaar.
Owa, eigen.
Ox, os (de).

P.

Page (to), op een nieuw lopen, S.
Pack (to), pakken, W.
Page, bladzijde (de).
Paint, schilderen.
Painter, schilder (de).
Palatable, smakelijk.
Pale, bliek.
Pane, plaat (de).
Paper, papier (het).
Paper (to), behangen, S.
Pawel, pak (het).
Pavilion (to), vergoed, S.
Pavement, Parlement (het).
Pavements, onder (de).
Pause, pauze (de).
Part, deel (het).
Part (to), scheiden, W.
Part (to take - in), deelnemen aan, S.
Part (to, of clouds) zich verdiepen, W.
Particularly, bijzonder.
Parting words, afscheidswoordend.
Party, walschap (het).
Pass (to), voorbijkomen, A; vertrekken, S.
Passage, gang (de).
Past, voorbij, verleden (het).
Path, pad (het).
Patrician, patricier (de).
Paw, klauw (de).
Peach, perzik (de).
Pear, peer (de).
Peasant, boer (de).
Pedestrian, voetganger (de).
Peel, schil (de).
Pond, slinger (de).
Perjury, meeneed (de).
Persian, persica.
Photographer, fotograaf (de).
Physician, dokter (de).
Physics, echtekunde (de).
Piano, piano (de), klavier (het).
Nig, warken (het).
Pine, doffer, duij (de).
Pincers, nijlpaad (do).
Pions, croom.
Pitchblack, pikzwart.
Pitchfork, gaffel.
Plantation, plantage (de).
Plate, bord (het).
Playfellow, speelgenoot (dc).
Plot, perk (het).
Humble, schielood (het).
Pointed, spits.
Poll, pal (de).
Politician, staatsman (de).
Poor (noun), armen (de).
Portal, portaal (het).
Portuguese, portugees.
Pope, paus (de).
Positively, bestaat.
Possession, bezit (het).
Possible, mogelijk.
Post, post (de).
Postman, briefwacht (de).
Post Office, postkantoor (het).
Potato, aardappel (de).
Pound, pond (het); — sterling, pond sterling (het).
Poverty, armoede (de).
Powder, kruit (het).
Power, macht (de).
Practice, beoefening; praktijk (de).
Practise (to), zich oefenen, W.
Praise (to), prijzen, S.
Prayer, gebed (het).
Precious, kostbaar.
Prefer (to), voorbrengen, S; to — to, verkopen boven, S.
Preparations, voorbereidingen.
Prepare (to), bereiden, W.
Present, tegenwoordig; at — , op tegenwoordig; — dag, huidige dag, tegenwoordig tijd.
Present, cadeau, geschenk (het).
Preserve, konij (het).
Pretty, mooi, fraat, schoon.
Prevent (to), voorkomen, A.
Price, prijs (de).
Price, koopgoed (de).
Priest, priester (de).
Priestess, priesteres (dc).
Priesthood, priesterchap (het).
Priory, gevangenis (de).
Private house, woonhuis (het).
Price, prijs, buit (de).
Profession, ambt (het).
Professor, leraar (de).
Profit, winst (de).
Profitable, nuttig.
Profound, diep.
Promise, belofte (de).
Promise (to), beloven, W.
Promoting (in), met 't bevorderen.
Proof, bewijjs (het).
Properly, behoorlijk.
Property, eigenschap (het).
Prosecute (to), vervolgen, W.
Protest (to), beschermen, W.
Protector, schutheer (de).
Provide for (to), zorgen voor, W.
Province, provincie (de), landschap (het).
Prudent, voorzichtig.
Public, openbaar; (noun) publiek (het).
Pull (to), trekken, S.
Punish (to), straffen, W.
Punished (to be), gestraft worden.
Pupil, leerling (de).
Pure, rein.
Purity, reinheid (de).
Purpose, doel (het).
Purse, beurs (de).
Put down (to), opschrrijven, S.
Put right (to), in orde maken, W.

Q.
Quarrel, twist (de).
Quarter (of an hour), kwartier (het).
Queen, koningin (de).
Quench, quencht de.
Quick tempered, gauw (de).
Quit, rustig, stil.
Quite, heel; geheel en al.

R.
Rabbit, konijn (het).
Race, wedren (de).
Radish, radis (de).
Rail (by), per spoor.
Railway accident, spoorwegongeluk (het).
Rain, regen (de); — clouds, begregen wolken (de); — water, regenwater (het).
Raise (to — un army), een leger op de been brengen, A.
Raise (to — wheat), graan verbouwen, W.
Raised, verheven.
Rake, hark (de).
Rant, rum (de).
Rank, gelid (het).
Rape, zelden.
Rat, rat (de).
Rather, liever.
Reach (to), reiken, bereiken, W. — home, thuis komen, A.
Read (to), lezen, S.; — out, voorlezen, S.
Reading room, leeskamer (de).
Ready, klaar.
Real, echt.
Really, waarlijk.
Reason, reden (de).
Reassemble (to), zich herenigen, W.
Reassuringly, geruststellend.
Rebel (to), in opstand komen.
Receive (to), ontvangen, S.
Recite (to), reciteren, W.

Reckless, roekeloos.
Recognise (to), herkennen, W.
Recollect (to), zich herinneren, W.
Red, rood.
Refi, rif (het).
Reflect (to — great credit on), veel eer aan doen, A.
Refuse (to), weigeren, W.
Rein, leeg (de).
Relapse, instorting (de).
Relative, verwante (de).
Relieve (to), loslassen, W.
Religion, godsdienst (de).
Remain (to), blijven, S.
 Remarkable, merkwaardig.
Remind (to — of), herinneren aan, W.
Rendering of account, rekening (de).
Renowned, beroemd.
Repeat (to — of) berouw hebben van.
Reply, antwoord (het).
Report, bericht (het).
Request, verzoek (het).
Require (to), nodig hebben; — d, nodig.
Rescue, verlossen (de); for the — , tot ontzet.
Resemble (to), gelijken op.
Resin, heerm (de).
Resolve (to), besluiten, S.
Resource, toerlucht (de).
Respectable, opvallend.
Responsible, verantwoordelijk.
Rest, rust (de).
Result, uitslag (de), gevolg (het).
Return (to), teruggeven, S., terugkeren.

Ravage (to), wreken, M.
Revenge, inkomsten (de).
Revise (to), nissen, A.
Revolver, revolver (de).
Reward (to), belonen, W.; (noun) be- loving (de).
Rhine, Rijn (de).
Rice, rijst (de).
Rich, rijk.
Riches, rijkdom (de).
Riddle, raadsel (het).
Ride (to), rijden, S.; berijden, S.; to take a — , een rit maken.
Right, recht (het); to do — , recht handelen; to be —, gelijk hebben; — minded, rechtvaardig, weidend.
Ring, ring (de).
Rising, opstaan (het); — generation, opkomen geslacht (het).
Risk, gewaagd.
River, rivier (de).
Robbery, roof (de).
Roe, ree (de).
Roof, dak (het).
Room, ruimte, plaats, kamer (de).
Root, wortel (de).
Rust, rustig (de).
Rustless, geruststellend.
Round, rond; — about, in de omtrek, in de rondle.
Rouse (to), wakker maken, W.
Row, rij (de).
Rubbish, vuilnis, vuil (het).
Rumbling, rommelend.
Humour, gerucht (het).
Run (to), lopen, S., — up to, toen lopen, naar, S.; — off, vloopen, S.

Rural, landelijk.

Rush (to), springen, S.; (noun), bies.

Russian, rusies.

Rusty, verroest.

Rye, rogge (de).

S.

Sacrifice, offer (het).

Sad, treurig.

Saddle (to), zadeln, W.

Sadness, droefenis (de).

Safely, veilig.

Sage, rijze (de).

Sal, zee of zeeide.

Salt, ze (het).

Same (for the — of), om, ten einde.

Salary, salaris (het).

Sale, verkoop (de).

Salmon, zalum (de).

Sample, monster (het).

Sandal, sandaal (de).

Sandhill, zandhekjevel (de).

Satisfied, tevreden, voldaan.

Save (to), redden, W.; — oneself trouble, zich morite bescharen.

Savour, heiland (de).

Saw, zaag (de).

Scaffold, zatm (de).

Sew (to), bezijken, S.

Scur, lichten (het).

Scene, tuintje (het); — of the fire, plaats van de brand.

Scenery, landschap (het), natuur (de).

School, school (de).

Schoolmaster, schoolsheister (de).

Scotch fir, spar (de).

Scotchman, schot (de).

Scissors, schaar (de).

Scoot (to), berijpen, W.

Scream, schreeuwen (de).

Screen, scherm (het).

Screen, scherm (het).

Screw, schroef (de); — driver, schroef-

draaier (de).

Sculptor, beeldhouwer (de).

Sea, zee (de).

Sear (to), bezigen, W.

Search (to), doorzoeken, A.

Send (to), zenden, S.

Sentence, vonnis (het).

Serious, ernstig, gvaarlik.

Sermon, precel (de).

Servant, meid, bediende; knecht, dienaar.

Service, dienst (de).

Seven, zeven.

Several, verscheidhen.

Severe, hevig.

Shackle, boel (de).

Shadow, schaduw (de).

Show, schapen (het).

She-goat, schaap (de).

Sheep, schapen (het).

Shep, schelp (de).

Shelled (to — from), beschutten voor, W.

Ship, schip (het).

Show, toont, W.; laten zien, A.

Showy, neusl, kust (de).

Show, blik (de); — keeper, winkelier (de).

Shower, bui (de).

Shun (to), schuilen, S.

Shy, schuwer (de).

Sieve, bezegelen.

Slipper, sloep (de).

Sleep, slaap (de).

Sleight, gezicht (het).

Slippery, grijper (de).

Smith, smid, bediende.

Smother, smelken (de).

Snow, sneeuw (de).

Snoop, snuff (het).

Soap factory, zeepfabriek (de).

Sober, nuchter.

Soberness, matigheid (de).
Society, maatschappij (de), genootschap (het).
Sod, za (de).
Soil, grond (de).
Soldier, soldaat (de).
Sole, zool (de).
Solomon, Salomo.
Some, een paar, wat; eng; — or other, de een of andere.
Somehere, ergens.
Son, zoon (de).
Song, lied (het).
Soon, weldra.
Sore, zoor.
Sorrow, verdriet (het).
Sorry (to be — ), spijten, S.
Sound wisdom, dirre wijsheid (de).
South (the), zuiden (het); — Africa, Zuid-Afrika.
Southerly wind, zuidwind (de).
Sovereign, koning (het).
Sow, zeeg (de).
Sow (to), zaaien, W.
Spacious, ruim.
Spade, graaf (de).
Spanish, spanja.
Sparrow, mus (de).
Spelers, spelers (de).
Spelt, spelende (de).
Spent (to), doorbrengen, A.; besteden W.; — one's life, zijn leven stij- len, S.
Spider, spin, spinnekop (de).
Spirit, geest (de).
Splendour, pracht (de).
Split (to), slijten, S.
SPOOL, roef (de).
Spot, plek, plaats (de).
Spout, put (de).
Spring, lente (de), voorjaar (het).
Spring (to), springen, S.
Sprinkle (to), sprenkelen, W.
Sprung from, ontstaan uit.
Square, haak (de).
Stable, stal (de).
Staff, staf (de).
Staircase, trap (de).
Staff, punt (de).
Stallfed calf, hakkeling (de).
Stalk, helm (de).
Stallion, hengst (de).
Stamp, postzegel (de), fiskaal (de).
Standar , standaard (de).
Standing (of long — ), oud.
Starch, stipfel (de).
Start (to) — on, beginnen, S.
Start for (to), vertrekken naar, S.
Startle (to), opschrillen, S.
State (to), verklaren, W.
State, toestand, staat (de).
State, statig.
Statement, bewering (de); gezegde (het).
Station, station (het).
Stay (to), blijven, S.; — away, wegv.
Stellink, S.
Steal (to), stelen, S.; — away, kruijen naar, S.
Steamer, stoomboot (de), boot (de).
Steep, steil.
Step, stap (de).
Stick, stok (de).
Stiff, stijf.
Still, nog.
Sting (to), steken, S.; — by pride, prikkelen, W.
Stocking, kous (de).
Stomach, maag (de).
Stop (to), ophouden, A.
Stork, oceaanvogel (de).
Storm, storm (de).
Story, verhaal (het); geschiedenis (de).
Stove, kachel (de).
Straightway, regelrecht.
Strand, strand (het).
Stranger, vreemdeling (de).
Strength, kracht (de).
Street, straat (de).
Strictly, stipt, strengh.
Strike (to), opvallen, S.
Strong, sterk.
Study, studie (de); studie (de).
Study (to), bestuderen, W.; (to — on), doorgaan met studeren.
Study, ongezu.
Style, stijl (de).
Succeed (to), slagen, W.
Such, zulk.
Suddenly, eensklaps.
Suffer (to), lijden, S.
Sum, som (de).
S. Success, succes (de).
Sun, zon (de).
Summer, zomer (de).
Summerhouse, priek (het).
Summit, zomertop (de).
Sunrise, zonsopgang (de).
Sunset, zonsondergang (de).
Support (to), onderhouden, A.
Suppose (to), veronderstellen, W.
Sure (to make), zich vergewissen.
Surely, waarlijk, voorzeker.
Surpass (to), oevertreffen, S.
Surprising, verwonderd.
Sustain (to), onderhouden, A.
Swallow, zwaluwe (de).
Swamp, moeras (de).
Swarm, zwerm (de).
Swedish, zweds.
Sweep (to), vegen, W.
Swell (to), stijgen, W.
Syllable, letterreep (de); (here) woord (het).
Syrup, stroop, stroop (de).
T.
Table, tafel (de).
Tall, sterk (de).
Take back (to), terugbrengen, A.
Take care (to), zorgen (sorg dragen) voor, W.
Take into consideration (to), in aan-
merking nemen, S.
Take down (to), afnemen, S.
Take food (to), voedsel gebruiken, W.
Take leave (to), afscheid nemen van.
Take a ride (to), een rit maken.

VOCABULARY 399
Tournament, toernooi (het).
Towards, naar toe.
Town, stad (de); — hall, stadhuis (het).
Trade, ambacht (het).
Tradition, overlevering (de).
Train, trein, stoet (de).
Tram fare, tramgeld (het).
Translate (to), vertalen, W.
Translation, vertaling (de).
Trap, val (de).
Travel (to), reizen, W.
Traveler, reiziger (de).
Treason, schat (de).
Treat (to), behandelen, W.
Treatment, behandeling (de). ..
Treaty, vrede (het).
Tree, boom (de).
Tremble (to), beven, W.
Trench, schacht (de).
Triangle, triangle (de).
Try, beproefd.
Triumph, triomf (de).
Trip, reis (de).
Trophy, trofee (de).
Trouble, moeite (de).
Trousers, broek (de).
Trowel, troef (de).
True, waar; to remain — , trouw blijven, S.
Trumpet, trompet (de).
Trunk, kist, krat (de).
Trust (to), vertrouwen, W.
Truth, waarheid (de).
Try (to), proberen, W.; beproeven, W.; — one’s hand, de hand leggen aan.
Tub, tob, tobber, tobbeplek.
Turbine, tolhoop (de).
Turn (to), keren, W.
Twelve, twaalf.
Twenty, twintig.
Twig, twijg (de).
Two, twee.

U.

Umbrella, paraplu (de).
Unbelief, ongelooïf (het).
Uncle, oom (de).
Underground, ondergronds.
Underground, onderwaarts.
Undertake (to), ondernemen, S.
Undisturbed, onverbouwd.
Undo (to), ongedaan maken, W.
Undoubtedly, ongetwijfeld.
Unexpected, onverwacht.
Unfailing, onzelfblijvend.
Unfortunate, ongelukkig.
Ungrateful, ondankbaar.
Unite (to), verenigen.
United, vereenigd.
Uninterrupted, onverstoord.
Unless, tenzij.
Unmanly, onmannelijk.
Unshaken, onwrikbaar.
Up and down, op en neer.
Upright, oprecht.
Upset (to), omgooien, W.
Urgent, dringend.
Use, nut (het); gebruik (het).
Used to say, plaats te zeggen.
Useless, onnut, nutteloos.
VOCABULARY

Usually, gewoonlijk.
Utter (to), uiten, W.; — in reply, antwoorden, W.

V.

Vain (in), tevergeefs.
Valley, dal (het).
Value, waarde (de).
Vanity, ijdelheid (de).
Various, verscheidene; — kinds, allerlei.
Vehicle, voertuig (het).
Venture, wagen, W.; — out, zich buiten wagen.

Veranda, waarande (de).
Verse, vers (het).
Very, zeer, heel, erg.
Victory, overwinning (de).
View, fotografie (de).
Vile, laag.
Village, dorp (het); — church, dorpskerk (de).

Vine, wijnstok (de).
Violence, geweld (het), hevigheid (de).
Violent, hevig.
Violin, viool (de).
Virtue, deugd (de).
Visit, bezoeken (het).
Visit (to), bezoeken, A.
Viz., n.l. (namelijk).
Voice, stem (de).

Vocabulary, woordenlijst (de).
Voyage, reis (de).

W.

Wadding, watten (de).
Wade (to), waden, W.
Wages, loon (het).
Wagonhouse, wagonhuis (het).
Waiter, bediende (de).
Wake up (to), wakker maken, wekken, W.
Walk, wandeling (de).
Walk (to), wandelen, W.
Walk about (to), rondlopen, S., — off, heen en weer.
Wall, muur (de).
Want, behoefte (de); — of, gebrek aan.
Want (to), willen, A.; nodig hebben; hebben willen.
War, oorlog, krijg (de).
War (to make — on), oorlog aanvoeren.
Warm, warm.
Warn (to), waarschuwen, W.
Warning, waarschuwing (de).
Washerwoman, wasvrouw (de).
Watch, horloge (het).
Water level, watervat (het).
Water mark, vlek (het).
Way, weg (de).
We, wij.
Weapon, wapen (het).
Weary, moe.
Weather, weer (het).
Web, webbe (het).
Wedge, keil (de).
Week, week (de).
Weigh (to), wegen, S.
Well, bron, gut (de).
Well, goed, wel; as ... as, even goed. Zoro, nul (de).

Were, warren.
Whatever, wat ook.
Wheat, koren (het), witten, tarwe (de).
Wheel, wiel, rad (het).
Wheelbarrow, kraaiwagen (de).
Whelp, welp (het).
When, wanneer, als, toen.
Whichever, wanneer ... ook.
Where, waar.
Whereby, waardoor.
Whether, of; — or, of ... of.
While (in), tijd; for a —, een poosje.
Whisper (to), fluisteren, W.
Whistle (to — to a bird), een vogel te fluiten.

White, wit.
Whitewash (to), witten, W.
Whither, waarheen.
Whitlow, kijt (de).
Whole (on the —), over 't geheel.
Wholesome, gezond.
Whose, welks, wiens.
Why, waarom.
Wild, wild, in 't wild; woest.
Will, testament (het); to —, willen, A.
Willow, wilg (de).
Win laurels (to), lauweren behalen W.
Wind, wind (de).
Window, vensterram (het).
Windy, windig.
Wine, wijn (de).
Wing, vleugel (de).
Winter, winter (de).
Wire, draad (de).
Wisdom, wijsheid (de).
Wise, wijs.
Witness, getuige (de).
Witnessed, getuigd.
Witness, getuig (de).
Witness, getuig (de).

Y.

Yacht, jacht (het).
Yard, achterplaats (de); ra (de).
Year, jaar (het).
Yesterday, gisteren.
Yet, nog, toch.
Youder, ginds.
Young, jong.
Your, uw.
Youth, jongeling (de); jeugd (de).
Z.

Zeal, ijver (de).